DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 348 259	SO 021 624

TITLE	The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies with Student Answer Key. Third Edition.
INSTITUTION	Close Up Foundation, Arlington, VA.
REPORT NO	ISBN-0-932765-31-9
PUB DATE	90
NOTE	252p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Close Up Foundation, 44 Canal Center, Alexandria, VA 22314.
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Instructional Materials (For Learner) (051) -- Guides - Classroom Use - Teaching Guides (For Teacher) (052) -- Tests/Evaluation Instruments (160)
EDRS PRICE	MF01 Plus Postage. PC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	*Citizenship Education; Economics Education; Geography Instruction; High Schools; Social Studies; *Test Items; *United States Government (Course); *United States History

ABSTRACT

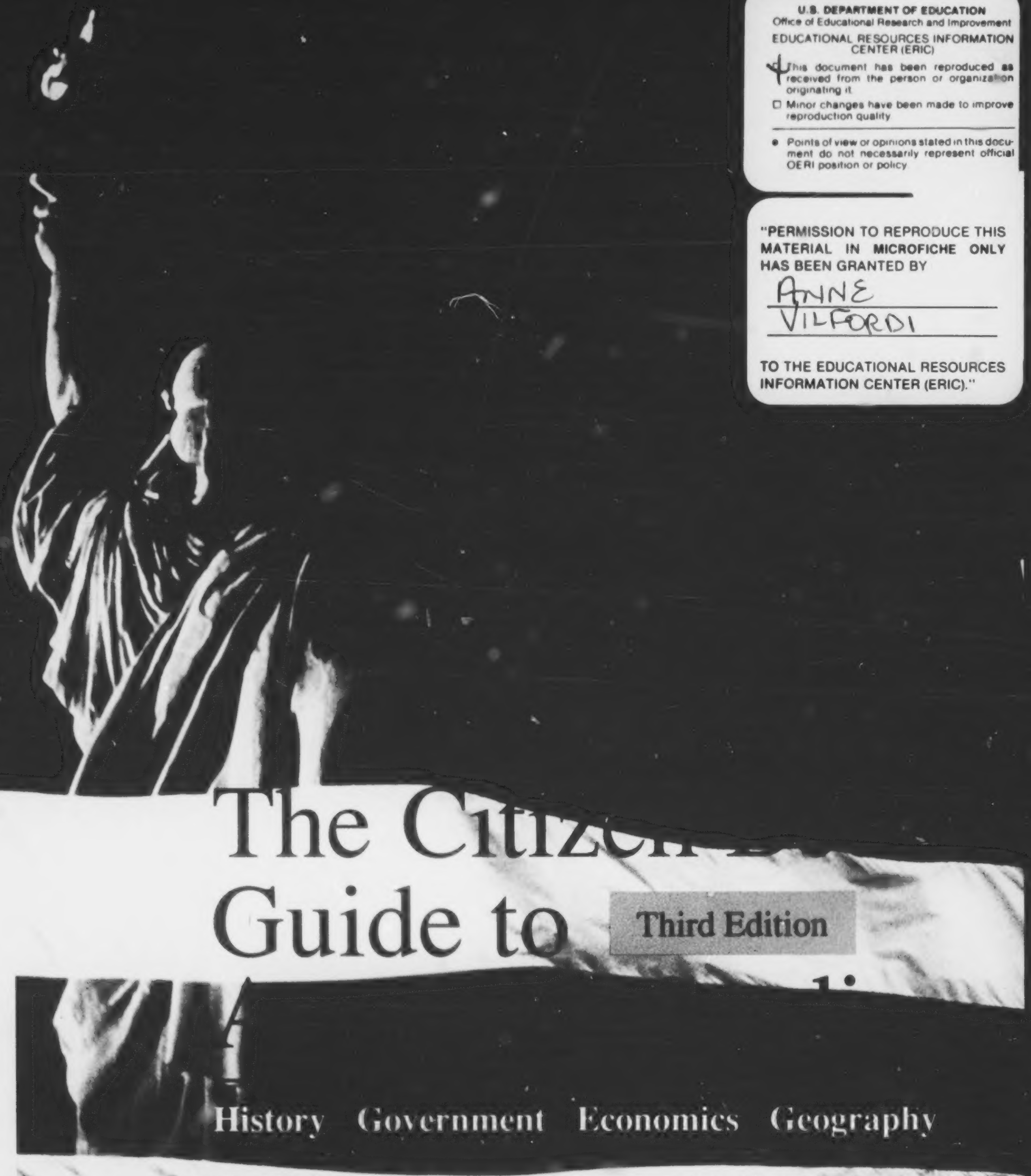
Designed for students, this survey of American history, culture, government, economics, and geography tests their knowledge in these areas through a variety of questions. The questions are organized into 12 subtopics divided among 4 major categories: 5 topics under History, 5 under Government, 1 under Economics, and 1 under Geography. The topic areas are: (1) a new world, a new nation (1492-1783); (2) nationalism and sectionalism (1783-1865); (3) industrializing America (1865-1919); (4) democracy and adversity (1919-1945); (5) emergence as a world power (1945-1989); (6) the living Constitution; (7) the legislative branch; (8) the executive branch; (9) the judicial branch; (10) state and local governments; (11) dollars and sense; and (12) America's land and people. Three appendices are included: (1) "The Declaration of Independence"; (2) "The U.S. Constitution"; and (3) "Great Issues in U.S. History." A glossary and a 31-item selected bibliography are also included. The attached student answer key provides answers to most of the questions, but contains some blanks for students to complete. (DB)

****
* Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made *
* from the original document. *
****

ED348259

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
Office of Educational Research and Improvement
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)
☑ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.
● Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official OERI position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL IN MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY
ANNE VILFORDI
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."



The Citizen
Guide to

Third Edition

History Government Economics Geography

The Citizen Bee is a civic education program of the Close Up Foundation

SO 021 624

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies

Third Edition

Close Up Foundation

THE CITIZEN BEE ®

Director, Outreach Planning and Evaluation
Bert Cieslak

Director, Community Outreach
Barbara Krebs

Curriculum Specialist
Jeffrey J. O'Malley

PUBLICATIONS STAFF

Director of Publications
Lynn Page Whittaker

Managing Editor, Academic Publications
Joellen M. Fritsche

Supervising Editor
Linda R. Monk

Writers/Researchers
Veronica Scarborough
Shelley L. Sperry

Supervisor, Editorial Support
John McDuffie

Assistant Manager, Art and Production
Shelly Sousa

Graphic Designers
Steven Waxman
Brenda Nowlan

Photographers
Renee Bouchard
Sandy Barnes

Copyright 1990
Close Up Foundation

All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

For discount rates on quantity purchases, contact the Close Up Foundation. Schools participating in the Citizen Bee competition automatically receive copies of the book when they register. For further information, contact:

The Citizen Bee
1235 Jefferson Davis Highway
Arlington, Virginia 22202

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

The Citizen Bee guide to American studies
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references.
Summary: A compendium of questions, essays, charts, maps, etc., on American government, history, culture, economics, and geography covering the years 1492-1989.
ISBN 0-932765-31-9
1. United States—History—Examinations, questions, etc. 2. Civics—Examinations, questions, etc. 3. Economics—Examinations, questions, etc. 4. United States—Geography—Examinations, questions, etc. [1. United States—History—Examinations, questions, etc. 2. United States—Geography—Examinations, questions, etc. 3. Civics—Examinations, questions, etc.]
I. Close Up Foundation.
E178.25.C56 1990
973'.076—dc20
90-1689
CIP
AC

Cover Photo: Grant V. Faint
The Image Bank

CLOSE UP

Close Up Foundation
Stephen A. Janger, President

The Close Up Foundation was established in 1970 to encourage a better understanding of our government. Since that time, Close Up has engaged in a variety of activities, from bringing students and teachers to Washington for weeklong government studies programs to sponsoring programs such as the Citizen Bee. The Foundation is nonprofit and nonpartisan. It has no affiliation with any branch of government, political party, or interest group.

OFFICIALLY RECOGNIZED BY THE COMMISSION ON THE BICENTENNIAL OF THE UNITED STATES CONSTITUTION

Contents

TO THE STUDENT v

WHAT YOU NEED TO KNOW vi

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS vii

HISTORY

1. A New World, A New Nation (1492-1783) 1
2. Nationalism and Sectionalism (1783-1865) 15
3. Industrializing America (1865-1919) 35
4. Democracy and Adversity (1919-1945) 55
5. Emergence as a World Power (1945-1989) 71

GOVERNMENT

6. The Living Constitution 87
7. The Legislative Branch 101
8. The Executive Branch 115
9. The Judicial Branch 129
10. State and Local Governments 139

ECONOMICS

11. Dollars and Sense 147

GEOGRAPHY

12. America's Land and People 163

APPENDIX 1

The Declaration of Independence 183

APPENDIX 2

The U.S. Constitution 185

APPENDIX 3

Great Issues in U.S. History 195

GLOSSARY 207

SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY 211

PHOTO CREDITS 212

To the Student

> *Knowledge will forever govern ignorance; and a people who mean to be their own governors must arm themselves with the power which knowledge gives.*
>
> —James Madison

Welcome to the Citizen Bee, a national educational program sponsored by the Close Up Foundation. The purpose of the Citizen Bee, whether you participate in the various levels of competition or use this book to supplement your education, is to help you acquire the power Madison describes—the power to be a more effective citizen. By learning about U.S. history, government, geography, economics, culture, and current events, you will develop a base of knowledge that will help you better exercise your rights and responsibilities as a citizen of the United States.

A "bee" is a gathering together of people working toward a common purpose, while having some fun in the process. Bees have a long and honorable tradition in American history. Through quilting bees and spelling bees, early Americans built a sense of community by working and competing together. By participating in the Citizen Bee, you will be carrying on that tradition by studying along with your classmates and enjoying the fun of competition.

To fulfill your role as citizen, you must know your government and how it works. It is an enlightened citizenry that makes democracy viable. With the *Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies*, you are acquiring the skills to take your place as an informed, effective—and powerful—citizen.

What You Need to Know for the Citizen Bee

The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies (third edition) is a survey of American history, culture, government, economics, and geography. For the Citizen Bee competition, you will be responsible for knowing all the information presented in this book, including the chapter essays, questions and answers, photos and photo captions, cartoons, charts, graphs, and maps. In addition, you will be responsible for understanding all vocabulary terms used in the text and in the glossary. Terms that appear in boldface are defined in the glossary, but you should consult a dictionary or textbook for other unfamiliar terms.

Questions may be asked in a different form in the competition than they are presented in the book. For example, one part of a matching question in the book may be used as a separate question in the competition. Competition questions will also draw relationships between information contained in separate sections of the book, such as government and economics. You will be asked to apply information contained in this book to new situations, both real and hypothetical. Questions using hypothetical situations are included to help you become familiar with this format.

Students enrolled in the Citizen Bee are also required to:

- read and understand *Appendix 1: The Declaration of Independence*
- read and understand *Appendix 2: The U.S. Constitution*
- read and understand *Appendix 3: Great Issues in U.S. History*
- locate all nations mentioned in the book on a map of the world
- be familiar with the most current version of the rules of the competition

In addition to the information contained in this book, participants in the Citizen Bee should be able to:

1. Give the name, political party affiliation, and state represented by each of the following congressional leaders.

Senate	**House of Representatives**
president	speaker
president *pro tempore*	majority leader
majority leader	minority leader
minority leader	majority whip
majority whip	minority whip
minority whip	

2. Give the name, political party affiliation, and state represented by the chairperson of each of the following congressional committees.

Senate	**House of Representatives**
Appropriations Committee	Agriculture Committee
Armed Services Committee	Appropriations Committee
Budget Committee	Armed Services Committee
Finance Committee	Budget Committee
Foreign Relations Committee	Judiciary Committee
Judiciary Committee	Ways and Means Committee

3. Name the following current executive branch officials.

all cabinet department secretaries
White House chief of staff
National Security Council adviser
Office of Management and Budget director
White House press secretary
Federal Bureau of Investigation director
Central Intelligence Agency director
Federal Reserve Board chairman
U.S. ambassador to the United Nations

4. Name the current Supreme Court justices.

Acknowledgments

The Close Up Foundation would like to express particular thanks to the following consultants who provided important insights and ideas for the third edition of *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies*.

Jeanne Clare Blamey, Ph.D., Educational Consultant, Washington, D.C., and Congressional Fellow, American Political Science Association

Rose Marie Cipriano, Principal, Cumberland High School, Cumberland, Rhode Island, and 1985 Outstanding Social Studies Teacher in the United States, sponsored by Time Magazine and the National Council for the Social Studies

James A. Henretta, Ph.D., Burke Professor of History, University of Maryland, College Park, Maryland, and Co-author, *America's History*

Margaret M. Murphy, Ph.D., Associate Professor of Economic Education, The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, Maryland, and Executive Board Member, National Association of Economic Educators

Salvatore J. Natoli, Ph.D., Director of Publications, National Council for the Social Studies, Washington, D.C., and Chair, AAG/NCGE Joint Committee on Geographic Education, which developed *Guidelines for Geographic Education: Elementary and Secondary Schools*

Norman Ornstein, Ph.D., Resident Scholar, American Enterprise Institute, Washington, D.C., and Series Editor, "Congress: We the People," a 26-part award-winning public television series

C. Frederick Risinger, Associate Director, Social Studies Development Center, Indiana University, Bloomington, Indiana, and 1990-91 President, National Council for the Social Studies

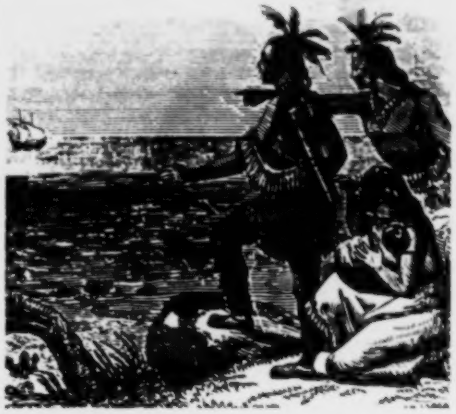
1. A New World, A New Nation (1492-1783)

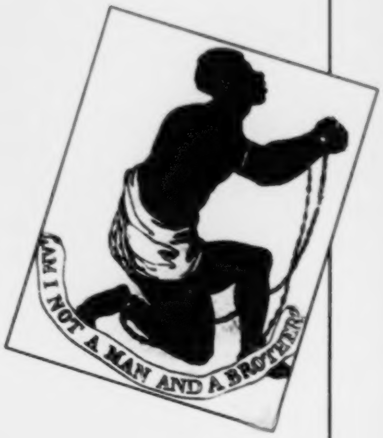
The history of the United States begins with the people of Asia, Europe, and Africa. Asiatic hunters became the first inhabitants of North America when they tracked their prey into the continent. Over thousands of years, these first Americans developed diverse cultures adapted to the natural environment. But by 1783, when cartographers drew the borders of a new nation on the globe, much of the native population had been destroyed by disease and warfare with European settlers. The native cultures that were not destroyed were transformed forever.

Europeans came to America for many reasons. They hoped to find riches, religious freedom, and adventure. The Africans who came to America left their homes not out of choice, but in bondage. Both Europeans and Africans transplanted some of the Old World to the New World, but they reshaped their economic, political, and social structures to meet the demands of the varied landscape. In a vast wilderness that seemed to offer freedom and opportunity for all free white men, the Europeans replaced traditional notions of hereditary monarchy and nobility with greater democracy and equality. Africans extended their family networks in America to ease the pain of slavery.

Europeans survived in America with the help of native people who introduced them to new crops such as corn and squash and to new ways of using the resources of the land. These settlers prospered in part because of the labor of Africans in the tobacco and rice fields of the South and the commercial success of the slave trade for northern merchants. Yet in 1783, the new nation's stated principles of democracy and the right to "life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness" were not yet extended to slaves and "noble savages."

A clash of cultures occurred in North America in the centuries following Columbus's "discovery" of the New World. Native Americans, Africans, and Europeans began creating a new nation, and in the process all three were transformed. To understand how and why these changes occurred, historians study geography, economics, politics, religion, literature—every aspect of people's lives in the past. Historians must consider all the threads of human life that are woven together to create the colorful fabric of the past. What impact did geography and climate have on the economic and social life of the Chesapeake colonies? How did religious, political, and demographic factors interact to create the unique social structure of New England? While studying the questions in this chapter, try to make connections among the many different threads of history that made up the rich texture of early American life.




AM I NOT A MAN AND A BROTHER?

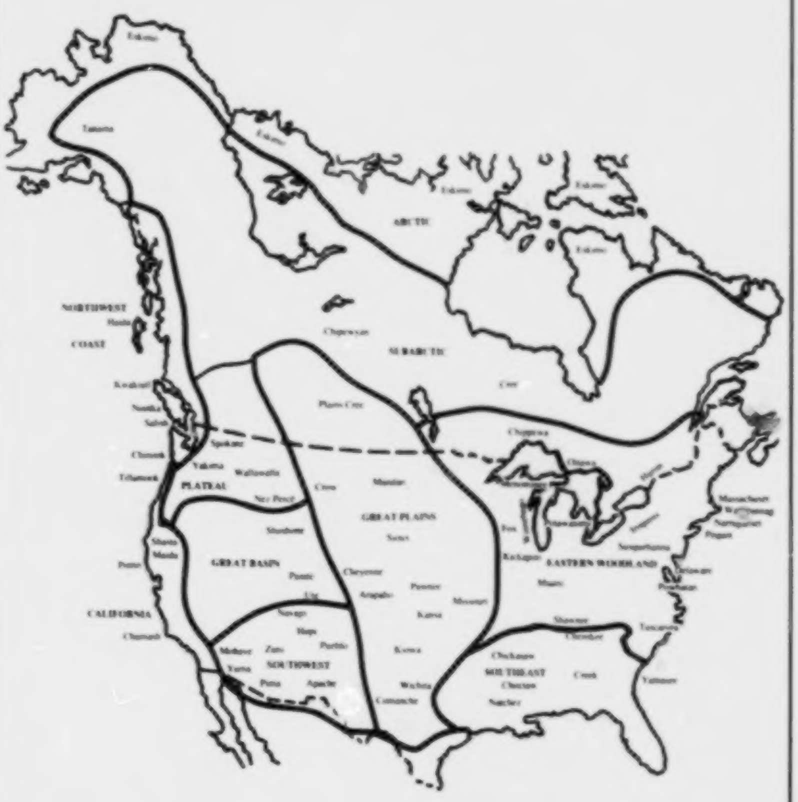
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The First Americans

1. Across what route did the ancient ancestors of Native Americans migrate from Asia perhaps 30,000 years ago?

Answer questions 2-10 using the map below.

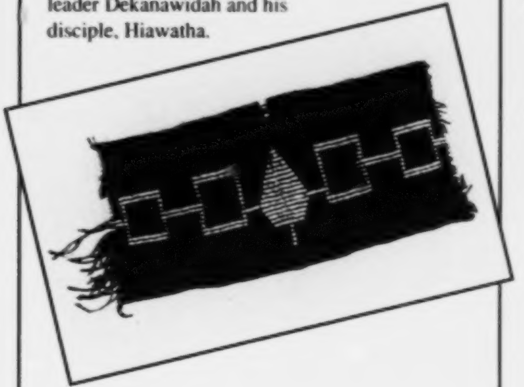
Major Culture Areas and Tribes of North America, circa 1500


Eskimo
Tanaina
Eskimo
Eskimo
ARCTIC
Eskimo
NORTHWEST
Haida
COAST
Chipewyan
SUBARCTIC
Cree
Kwakiutl
Nootka
Salish
Plains Cree
Chippewa
Spokane
Chinook
Yakima
Walla Walla
Tillamook
PLATEAU
Ottawa
Huron
Nez Perce
Crow
Mandan
Massachusett
Wampanoag
Narragansett
Pequot
GREAT PLAINS
Sioux
Shoshone
Fox
Shasta
Maidu
Susquehanna
Pomo
GREAT BASIN
Kickapoo
EASTERN WOODLAND
Delaware
Paiute
Cheyenne
Powhatan
Ute
Arapaho
Pawnee
Miami
CALIFORNIA
Missouri
Kansa
Navajo
Shawnee
Tuscarora
Chumash
Hopi
Cherokee
Mohave
Zuni
Pueblo
Kiowa
Chickasaw
Yuma
SOUTHWEST
SOUTHEAST
Creek
Yamasee
Pima
Apache
Wichita
Choctaw
Comanche
Natchez

2. What native people in which culture area built multistory dwellings of adobe, or sun-dried clay, and grew corn, beans, and squash in irrigated fields?

3. In this area, where the marine climate was mild and food was abundant, the native people developed the art of carving totem poles and intricate wooden masks.

A wampum belt commemorates the creation of the Iroquois Confederacy, which united the Seneca, Cayuga, Onondaga, Oneida, and Mohawk tribes in the 1500s. In the 1700s, the Tuscarora became the sixth member tribe. The Confederacy was founded by the religious leader Dekanawidah and his disciple, Hiawatha.



4. Native Americans in this region combined hunting and farming. Women cultivated crops in villages along the rivers, and during the summer men lived in portable teepees and hunted buffalo.

5. A harsh, dry climate forced the people of this area to live in very small bands, seeking scarce food, which they stored in finely crafted baskets.

6. Few plants can endure in this region, so the native people living here survived by fishing and hunting animals such as walrus, seals, and caribou.

7. The natives of this culture area subsisted on salmon from the rivers and on animals and plants of the forests. After the horse was introduced to the area by the Spanish, many natives joined the buffalo hunts on the Great Plains.

8. What tribe in which culture area lived under a highly structured class system and worshiped its ruler as a sun god?

9. By about 1500, this culture area probably had the densest population of any area north of what is now Mexico.

10. Native Americans in this area relied heavily on products of the forest. They hunted its animals and used tree branches and bark to build their wigwams and longhouses.

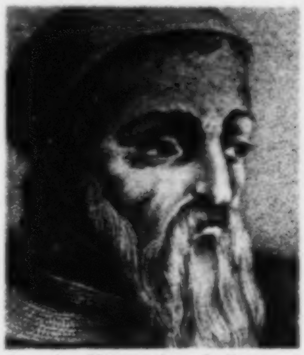
European Exploration and Colonization

11. Name the Viking explorer who is credited as the first European to reach North America, circa A.D. 1000.

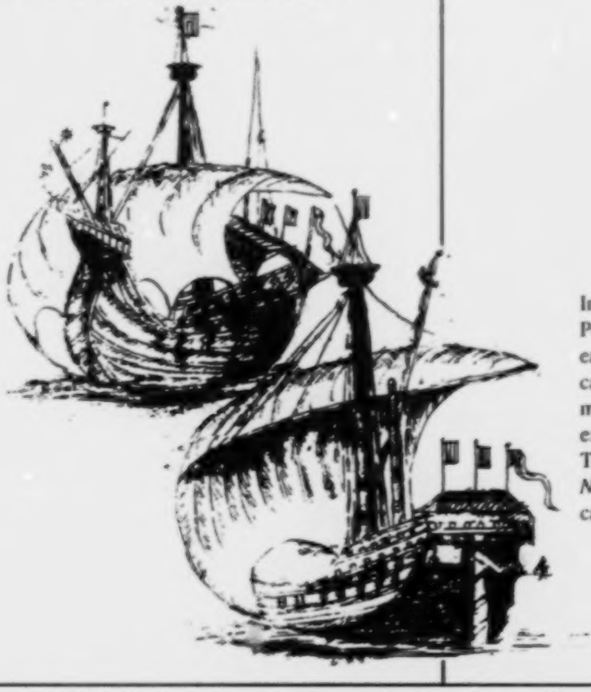
12. Spanish monarchs Ferdinand and Isabella financed explorer Christopher Columbus's search for a western route to the Far East, which resulted in his "discovery" of the New World in 1492.

    A. What goods did Europeans seek in the Far East?

    B. Why did the Spanish want to find a new route to the Far East?

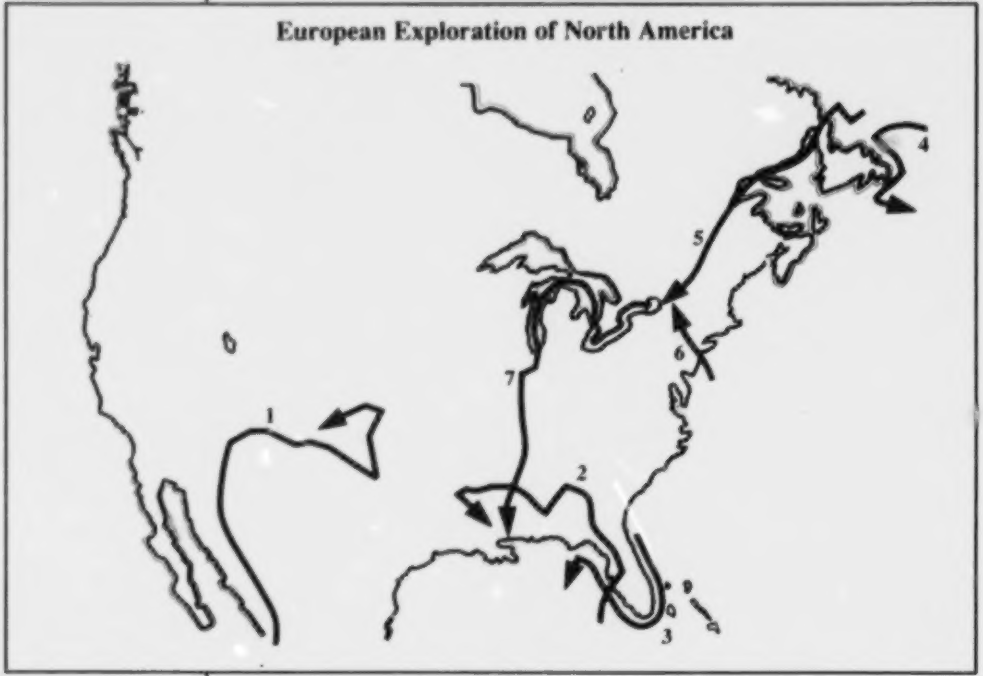


Amerigo Vespucci, an Italian explorer who sailed under both the Spanish and Portuguese flags, claimed to have made four trips to the New World between 1497 and 1504. In 1507, a German cartographer bestowed the name "America" on the continents of the Western Hemisphere in honor of Vespucci.



In the fifteenth century, the Portuguese developed a swift, easily maneuvered ship called a caravel. The caravel's design made it possible for Portuguese explorers to sail into the wind. Two of Columbus's ships, the *Niña* and the *Pinta*, were caravels.

Answer question 13 using the map below.



European Exploration of North America

13. Match the following explorers of North America with their major areas of exploration.

    A. Venetian Giovanni Caboto is better known by his English name, John Cabot. In 1497, employed by the English government, he became the first to claim land in North America for England.

    B. In 1513, Juan Ponce de León, conqueror of the island of Puerto Rico for Spain, searched in vain for the legendary fountain of youth.

    C. From 1534 to 1536, Jacques Cartier explored the Saint Lawrence River for France, hoping to find a Northwest Passage to the Far East.

    D. Hernando de Soto, "discoverer" of the Mississippi River for Spain, explored North America from 1539 to 1542.

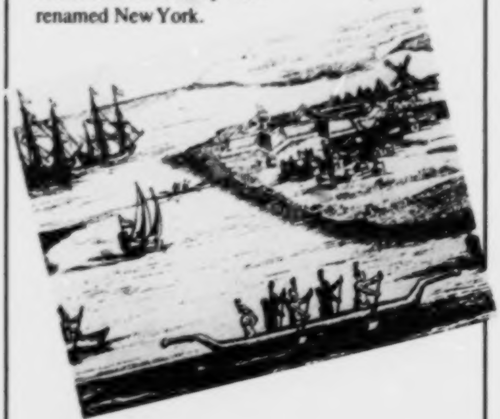
    E. From 1540 to 1542, Francisco Vasquez de Coronado led a Spanish search for the mythical "seven cities of gold."

    F. Henry Hudson explored for the Dutch East India Company in 1609, searching for a Northwest Passage via the Hudson River.

    G. From 1679 to 1682, René Robert Cavelier, Sieur de La Salle, explored and claimed for France the land he named Louisiana.

14. Bernal Díaz, a Spanish conquistador, described his reasons for coming to the New World as follows: "to serve God and His Majesty, to give light to those in darkness, and to grow rich." What three objectives drove the conquistadors?

The settlement of New Amsterdam in the colony of New Netherland was founded as a trading post by the Dutch West Indies Company in 1624. In 1664, the Dutch surrendered to an invading English fleet, and the settlement and colony were renamed New York.



15. Missionaries accompanied many Spanish explorers into the American Southwest.

    A. Name the Franciscan friar who built a chain of missions along the California coast, starting with San Diego in 1769.

    B. Name the Jesuit priest who mapped much of southern Arizona while establishing missions there in the late 1600s.

16. In 1680 a group of Native Americans revolted against their Spanish conquerors and drove them out of New Mexico. Name the tribe and its leader.

17. Unlike the French, the Spanish colonial system subjected native peoples to forced labor. What features of early French colonial life contributed to cooperation with Native Americans?

England's New World

18. Name the English nobleman who claimed the mid-Atlantic coast for England and in 1587 sponsored the colonization of Roanoke Island, a colony that survived less than five years before its residents mysteriously disappeared.

19. Name the **joint-stock company** that in 1607 founded Jamestown, the first successful English colony in North America.

20. Name the English adventurer who saved the Jamestown colony from collapse in 1608 by instituting military discipline and forcing the colonists, who were not used to physical labor, to work.

21. Virginia's early settlers were expected to make a profit for the company that sent them. In 1612, colonist John Rolfe found that Jamestown was an ideal place for growing what valuable cash crop?

22. Some English colonies were founded by people who wished to practice their religion freely. Identify the religious groups described below.

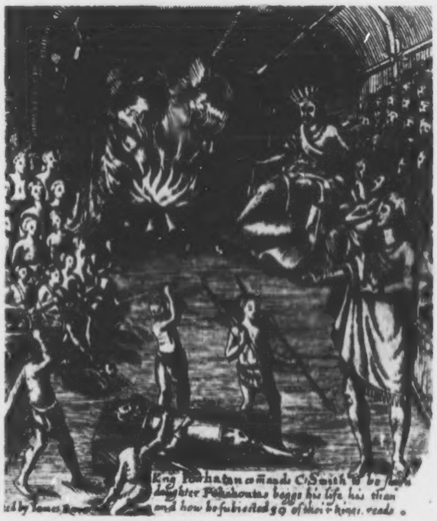
    A. Members of this group broke away from the Church of England and founded Plymouth Colony in Massachusetts in 1620.

    B. Members of this group disagreed with policies of the Church of England but chose to try to change it from within. They founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony in 1630 and based the right to vote on church membership.

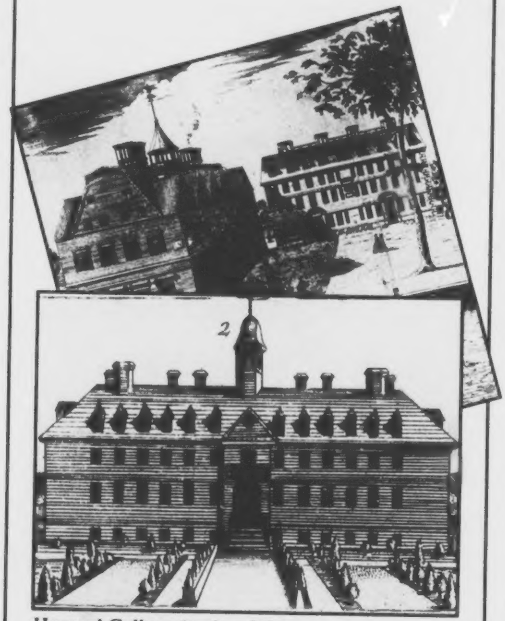
23. In spite of their own struggle for religious freedom, leaders of the Massachusetts Bay Colony dealt harshly with those whose beliefs differed from their own. Identify the following dissenters, who were banished for their beliefs:

    A. Banished in 1635, he established the settlement of Providence and in 1644 chartered the colony of Rhode Island. He believed that colonists had no right to take the Native Americans' land without their agreement, that political leaders should have no authority over religious matters, and that each individual should be free to worship God as his or her conscience directed.

    B. Banished in 1638, she also fled to Rhode Island. She was a midwife and religious leader who asserted that a direct spiritual relationship between the individual and God was more important than following the teachings of Boston's church leaders.


King Powhatan cōmands C. Smith to be [illegible]
daughter Pokahontas beggs his life his [illegible]
and how he subiected [illegible] of their kings. reade

Pocahontas prevented her father, Chief Powhatan, from executing Jamestown leader Captain John Smith, as shown in the picture above, taken from Smith's *Generall Historie of Virginia* (1624). Pocahontas later married colonist John Rolfe, cementing an alliance between her people and the Virginia colonists.



Harvard College (top) and the College of William and Mary were the first two institutions of higher learning established in the English colonies. Harvard was founded in the Massachusetts Bay Colony in 1636, and William and Mary was founded in the Virginia Colony in 1693.

24. In Salem Village, Massachusetts, 20 people were convicted of witchcraft and put to death in 1692. The young girls who identified some of their neighbors as witches may have done so to get attention from their elders. Which of the following primary sources would be the best to use to evaluate this claim?

    A. the diary of a woman accused of witchcraft

    B. the diary of a girl who accused a person of being a witch

    C. a newspaper account of the incident

    D. a record of the court proceedings

25. The New England settlers did not arrive on an empty continent. Native people met them—sometimes in peace, sometimes in conflict. Identify the following Native American leaders.

    A. As leader of the Wampanoags, he forged an alliance with the Pilgrims in 1621, helping them survive their first years in America.

    B. After escaping enslavement by the English in 1619, this member of the Pawtuxet tribe acted as an interpreter for the Pilgrims.

    C. In 1675-76, this Wampanoag chief, called King Philip by colonists, led New England tribes in a war against settlers who were encroaching on Native American territory. In proportion to population, this war inflicted the greatest casualties of any war in American history.

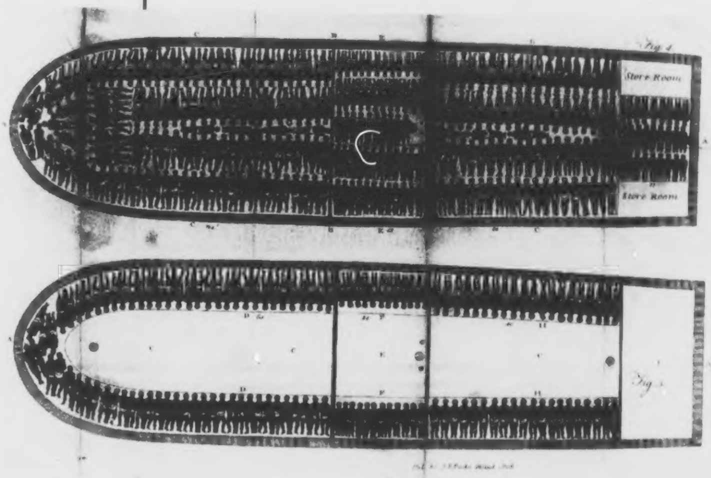
26. The colonies of New England and the Chesapeake region were very different. Identify the regions described below.

    A. Most early settlers came here as **indentured servants.**

    B. Most early settlers came here as family or religious groups.

    C. Life expectancy here was high due to the availability of pure drinking water and the absence of diseases such as malaria. Both men and women often lived past age 60, long enough to know their grandchildren.

    D. Life expectancy here was low due to contaminated water and hot, marshy surroundings in which malarial mosquitoes thrived. Men and women rarely lived to the age of 50.



In the crowded conditions of slave ships, about 10 to 20 percent of Africans aboard died. Some 10 million Africans were brought to the New World, but only 5 percent to the United States.

Answer questions 27-30 using the chart below.

Founding of the Colonies

	COLONY/DATE FOUNDED	FOUNDERS	MAJOR REASONS FOUNDED
New England	Massachusetts		
	Plymouth/1620	William Bradford	Religious freedom
	Massachusetts Bay/1630	John Winthrop	Religious freedom
	New Hampshire/1623	Ferdinando Gorges John Mason	Profit
	Connecticut		
	Hartford/1636	Thomas Hooker	Profit
	Rhode Island/1636	Roger Williams	Religious freedom
Middle	New York/1624 (originally New Netherland)	Peter Minuet (Dutch)	Profit
	Delaware/1638 (originally New Sweden)	Swedish settlers	Profit
	New Jersey/1664 (originally part of New Netherland and New Sweden)	John Berkeley George Carteret	Profit
	Pennsylvania/1681	William Penn	Profit; religious freedom
Southern	Virginia/1607	John Smith	Profit
	Maryland/1632	George Calvert	Profit; religious freedom
	The Carolinas/1663	Group of eight proprietors	Profit
	Georgia/1732	James Oglethorpe	Profit; haven for debtors; buffer against Spanish Florida

27. What was the most common reason for founding a colony?

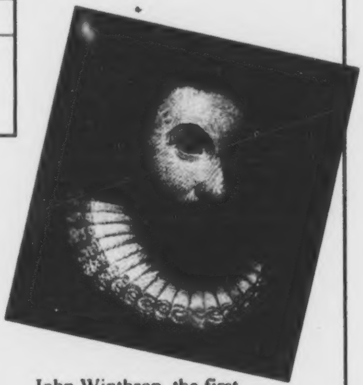
28. In which region of the country was religious freedom the most common reason for founding a colony?

29. The middle colonies were more ethnically diverse than those of New England or the South. What evidence on the chart supports this claim?

30. The colonies of Pennsylvania and Maryland were founded by individuals who sought religious freedom for those who shared their beliefs.

    A. William Penn received a charter for Pennsylvania in 1681 as a haven for what religious group?

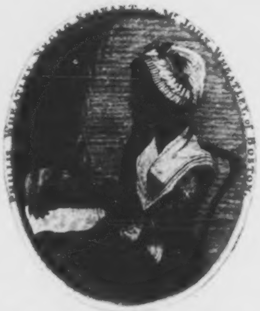
    B. George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, received a charter for Maryland in 1632 as a refuge for what religious group?



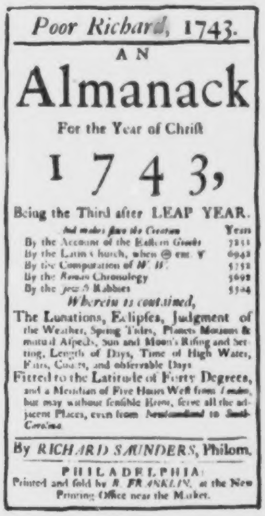
John Winthrop, the first governor of the Massachusetts Bay Colony, envisioned the Puritan society as a model of the ideal Christian state. He said, "We must consider that we shall be as a City upon a Hill; the eyes of all people are upon us."

Colonial Economy and Society

31. As part of its adherence to a policy of **mercantilism,** England passed a series of laws known as the Navigation Acts from 1651 to 1696. State the four main provisions of the Navigation Acts.



Phillis Wheatley was brought to Boston as a slave at the age of eight. After learning English and Latin, she began writing poetry. A book of her verses, *Poems on Various Subjects, Religious and Moral,* was published in 1773, the same year she was given her freedom.



Poor Richard, 1743.

AN

Almanack

For the Year of Chriſt

1 7 4 3,

Being the Third after LEAP YEAR.

Wherein is contained,

The Lunations, Eclipſes, Judgment of the Weather, Spring Tides, Planets Motions & mutual Aſpects, Sun and Moon's Riſing and Setting, Length of Days, Time of High Water, Fairs, Courts, and obſervable Days

Fitted to the Latitude of Forty Degrees, and a Meridian of Five Hours Weſt from *London,* but may without ſenſible Error, ſerve all the adjacent Places, even from *Newfoundland* to *South-Carolina.*

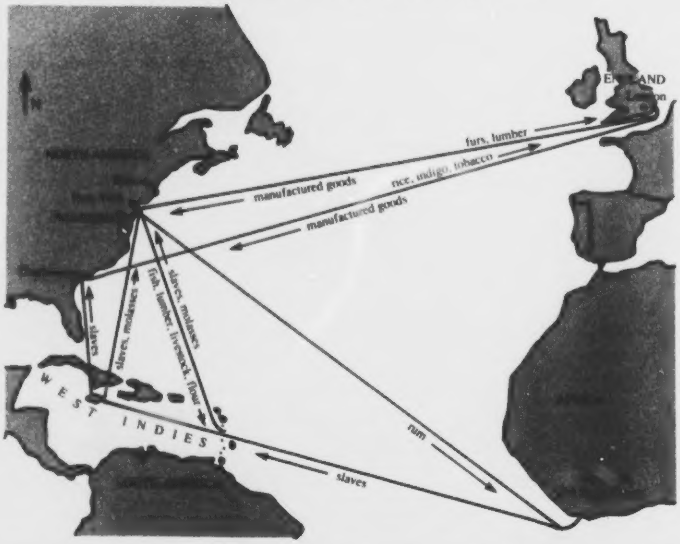
By *RICHARD SAUNDERS,* Philom.

PHILADELPHIA:
Printed and ſold by *B. FRANKLIN,* at the New Printing-Office near the Market.

Other than the Bible, almanacs were the most widely read books in colonial America. They contained information about the weather, farming, and astrology. Benjamin Franklin's *Poor Richard's Almanack,* first published in 1732, contained maxims still heard today, such as "Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise."

Answer questions 32-34 using the map below.

Major Atlantic Trade Routes, 1700s



32. What products did the American colonies import from England?

33. What products did the New England colonies and the southern colonies export to England?

34. The American colonies, West Africa, and the West Indies were involved in a "triangular trade" that involved three main products. Name these products and explain the trade route.

35. Name the four largest cities in the English colonies in 1775. What geographic factor did they have in common?

36. By 1775, only about half of the population of the American colonies was of English stock. To which three ethnic groups did most of the non-English immigrants belong?

37. Most slaves in the North worked as______________, while most in the South worked as______________.

38. What event in 1672 contributed to a great increase in the number of slaves in the American colonies?

39. In 1688, members of what religious group participated in the first formal antislavery protest by whites in the British colonies?

Arts and Ideas

40. Name the author of *The Tenth Muse,* a book of poetry published in 1650, whose later poems depict the Puritans' devotion to God, home, and family.

41. In the mid 1700s, the religious revival known as the Great Awakening emphasized the equality of all people before God and attacked the authority of church leaders. It led many Americans to question traditional political authority as well. Name the theologian who initiated the Great Awakening in New England.

42. The Great Awakening stressed emotion rather than learning in religious belief. It conflicted with the philosophy of the ____________, which stressed the perfectibility of humankind through the use of reason.

43. This colonial hero personified Enlightenment ideals. He gained international fame as a scientist and inventor, especially through his studies of electricity. He was a member of the Albany Congress and the Second Continental Congress, helped draft the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution, and acted as diplomatic representative to France during the Revolutionary War. What was his name?

44. During the Enlightenment, a new interest in scientific inquiry helped to improve daily life. In the 1720s, Puritan clergyman Cotton Mather opposed other religious leaders by encouraging the new technique of inoculation as a deterrent to the deadly disease of ____________ .

The French and Indian War

45. The French and Indian War (1754-1763) resulted from conflict between American settlers and France over what region?

46. In 1754, representatives from seven English colonies met in Albany, New York, with members of the Iroquois League to try to gain Iroquois support and to plan for a common defense against the French. Name the plan for an intercolonial union developed at this meeting and explain why it was not accepted.

47. The French and Indian War brought to the forefront the differing interests of the British and the American colonists in all of the following ways *except:*

    A. American merchants carried on illicit trade with the French-controlled West Indies during the war.

    B. The British agreed to reimburse colonial assemblies for their military expenditures.

    C. The British supported the Native Americans' claims to the lands on the colonial frontier.

48. The 1763 Treaty of Paris ended the French and Indian War in America, as well as the Seven Years' War in Europe. After the signing of the treaty, which European country possessed each of the following areas?

    A. Eastern Canada and territory east of the Mississippi River, except for New Orleans

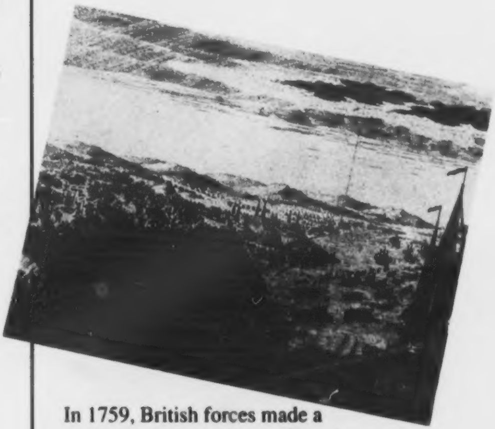
    B. New Orleans and most of what is now the western United States

    C. the western coast of Alaska and Canada

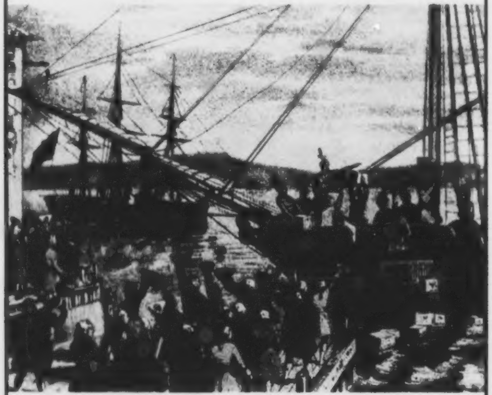
    D. St. Lucia, Guadeloupe, Martinique, and St. Domingue in the West Indies; St. Pierre and Miquelon off the coast of Canada

49. During the French and Indian War, the British forced French settlers out of Nova Scotia. The settlers relocated to Louisiana, where their descendents retain a unique dialect and culture. Who are they?

50. In an attempt to alleviate friction between colonists and Native Americans in the Ohio Valley, the British Parliament enacted the Proclamation of 1763. What did the proclamation forbid?



In 1759, British forces made a daring raid on the French fort of Quebec. They scaled treacherous cliffs above the St. Lawrence River and defeated the French garrison in the Battle of the Plains of Abraham, thus leading to British victory in the French and Indian War.



The Boston Tea Party in 1773 prompted the British to pass the Coercive, or Intolerable, Acts in 1774, which closed the port of Boston temporarily, increased the powers of the governor and the military, and reduced the role of colonists in local government.

Colonial Politics and Revolution

In 1735, John Peter Zenger, printer and publisher of the New York Weekly Journal, *was tried for seditious libel for printing articles critical of New York's colonial governor. Answer questions 51-52 using the following excerpt from his attorney's closing arguments.*

> It is agreed upon by all men that this is a reign of liberty, and while men keep within the bounds of truth, I hope they may with safety both speak and write their sentiments of the conduct of men in power.
>
> . . . The question before the Court and you gentlemen of the jury is not of small or private concern; it is not the cause of a poor printer, nor of New York alone, which you are now trying. No! It may in its consequence affect every freeman that lives under a British government on the main of America. . . . [B]y an impartial and uncorrupt verdict, [you will] have laid a noble foundation for securing to ourselves, our posterity, and our neighbors that to which nature and the laws of our country have given us a right—the liberty—both of exposing and opposing arbitrary power . . . by speaking and writing truth.

51. According to the speaker, the question of the printer's guilt or innocence should rest upon:

    A. his rights as a public printer

    B. whether he had written the truth

    C. whether the material was published unlawfully

    D. whether he was unjustly accused

52. The jury acquitted John Peter Zenger. What protection would Zenger have if he were printing his newspaper today?

53. During the French and Indian War, Britain's annual budget grew enormously. The British decided that the American colonies should bear some of the burden of the mother country's debt, since much of it was incurred in defending the colonists from the French. Provide the name and date of each of the following measures taken by Britain to gain revenue from the colonies.

    A. While cutting the tax on molasses, this act created new taxes on indigo, coffee, wine, cloth, and sugar.

    B. This act prohibited the colonies from printing their own money and required that all taxes and all debts owed to British merchants be paid only in British money.

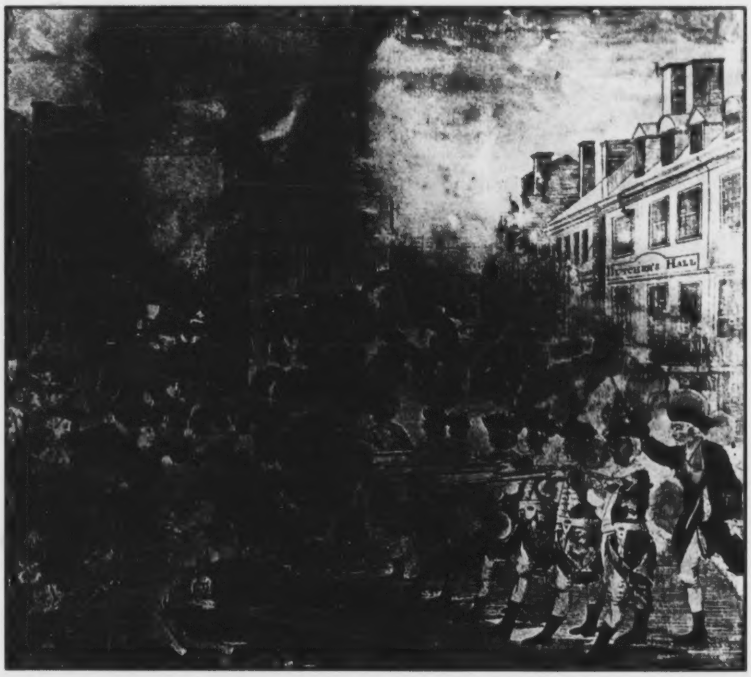
    C. This act imposed a tax on all legal documents, newspapers, pamphlets, playing cards, and dice.

54. Because it was the first direct tax levied on the American colonies by Parliament, the Stamp Act became a rallying point for colonists who opposed "taxation without representation." What action did these colonists take?

55. In 1766, Parliament repealed the Stamp Act because the British economy was disrupted by colonial boycotts. Parliament then passed the Declaratory Act. What was the purpose of the Declaratory Act?

56. In 1767, the British government imposed new measures designed to raise revenue from the colonies by placing duties on items imported from Great Britain. Parliament intended to use some of the money to pay the salaries of governors, judges, and other colonial officials. By what name are these acts known, and how did they take authority away from colonial assemblies?

Answer question 57 using the illustration below.



57. Boston artisan Paul Revere made this engraving depicting British soldiers firing upon innocent Bostonians.

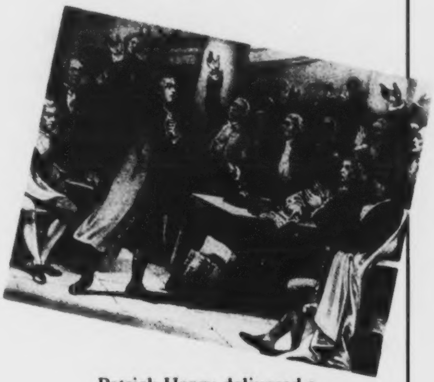
    A. What event is depicted?

    B. What two Parliamentary acts led to the conflict between Bostonians and British troops?

    C. How do the facts of the incident differ from the **propaganda** presented by Paul Revere?

    D. Who was the first to die in the incident?

58. "No taxation without representation" was the rallying cry of the patriots against England. What group could have used the same cry against its colonial assembly in 1771?

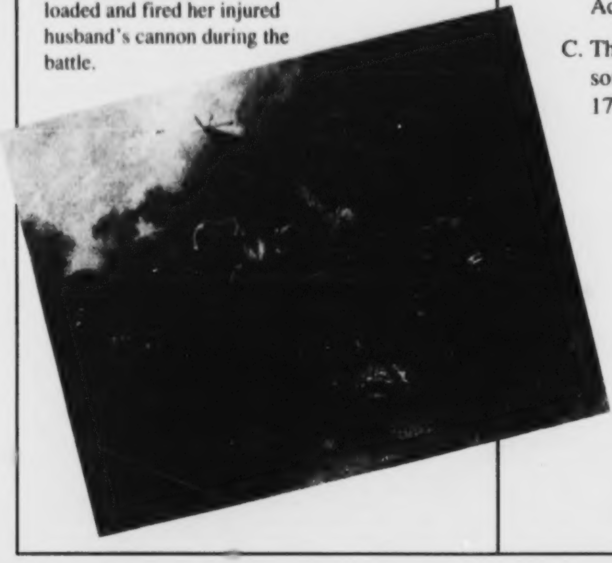


Patrick Henry delivered a stirring speech before the convention that gathered in Richmond after the Virginia House of Burgesses was suspended in 1775. He advocated armed resistance to British policies, declaring, "I know not what course others may take; but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!"

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Breed's Hill (above) was the actual location of the 1775 Battle of Bunker Hill. Although it is considered a British victory, the battle boosted colonial morale. Outnumbered American troops repelled two British assaults before retreating to Bunker Hill. By the end of the battle, the British had suffered more than twice as many casualties as the Americans.

Mary Ludwig Hays earned the nickname "Molly Pitcher" when she tirelessly carried water to American soldiers during the 1778 Battle of Monmouth. According to legend, she also loaded and fired her injured husband's cannon during the battle.



59. The First Continental Congress, an intercolonial meeting to protest British policies, was held in Philadelphia in September 1774. It did all of the following *except:*

    A. approved the Declaration and Resolves

    B. created a committee to handle relations with foreign nations

    C. declared a boycott of goods imported from Great Britain

    D. supported creation of Committees of Observation to enforce the boycott of British goods

60. Match each of the following groups with its description.

    A. First organized in 1772 by Bostonian Samuel Adams, these organizations spread information about the patriot cause throughout the colonies.

    B. These patriots spun thread to end the colonies' dependence on English cloth and defiantly drank only local herbal teas to protest the tea tax.

    C. First organized to protest the Stamp Act, these secret organizations sometimes resorted to violence in resistance to the British government.

    a. Sons of Liberty

    b. Committees of Correspondence

    c. Daughters of Liberty

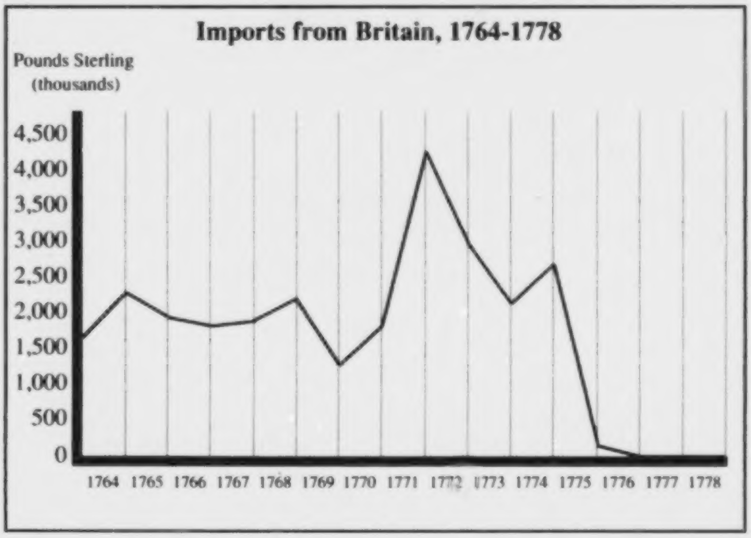
61. Many patriots published essays encouraging American colonists to defy the British. Identify the authors described below.

    A. This Bostonian argued in his 1764 pamphlet, *Rights of the British Colonies, Asserted and Proved*, that there could be no colonial taxation without representation.

    B. This delegate to the Stamp Act Congress argued in his 1768 pamphlet, *Letters from a Farmer in Pennsylvania*, that Parliament had authority to regulate trade but not to tax the colonists or to issue the Townshend Acts.

    C. This author opened with the phrase "These are the times that try men's souls" in the first issue of the *Crisis*, a series of essays written from 1776 to 1783 to bolster patriot morale.

Answer questions 62 and 63 using the graph below.



62. What event contributed to a dramatic rise in British imports in 1770?

63. What evidence on the graph suggests that the Nonimportation Agreements, approved by the First Continental Congress in October 1774 and implemented in December 1775, had popular support?

The Revolutionary War

64. Where and when were the first shots of the American Revolution fired?

65. What event occurred in the summer of 1775, at the meeting of the Second Continental Congress in Philadelphia, which would support the claim that the American Revolution could have been avoided if the British Parliament had been willing to negotiate with the colonists and assure them of their rights as British citizens?

66. In August 1775, King George III proclaimed that the American colonies were in open rebellion. In the final months of 1775, the Second Continental Congress did all of the following *except:*

    A. authorized the creation of a navy

    B. signed a treaty of alliance with France

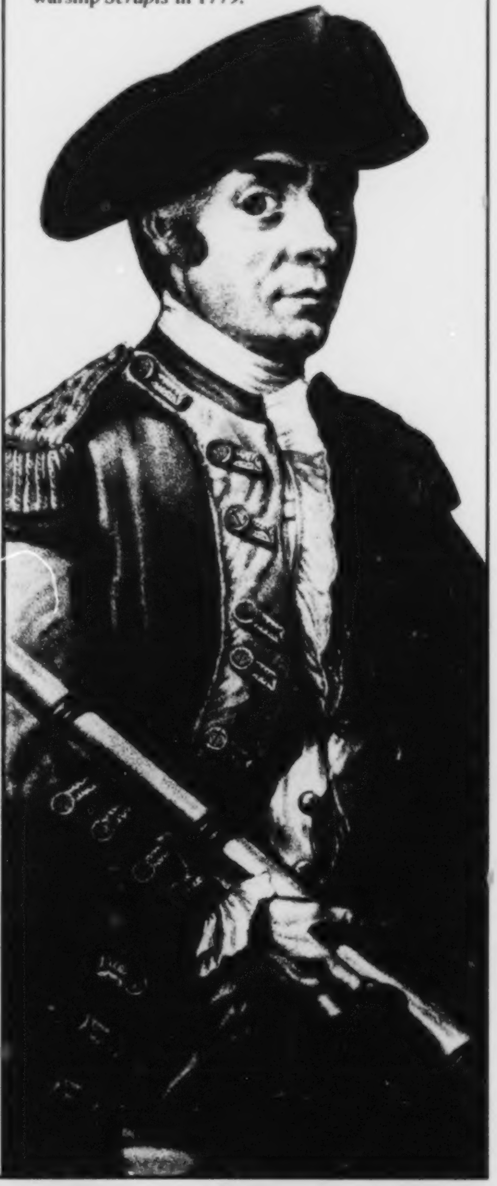
    C. disavowed allegiance to Parliament, but not to the king

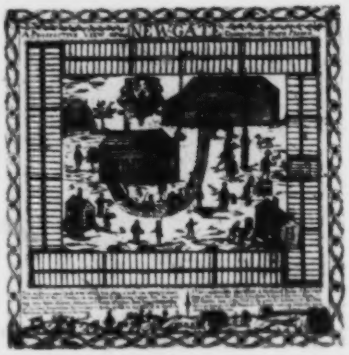
    D. appointed a committee to handle relations with foreign nations

67. Who warned her husband, then serving in the Second Continental Congress, that "if particular care and attention is not paid to the Ladies, we are determined to foment a Rebellion, and will not hold ourselves bound by any Laws in which we have no voice, or Representation"?

68. Published in January 1776, this radical pamphlet advocating establishment of an American republic sold more than 120,000 copies within three months. Name the pamphlet and its author.

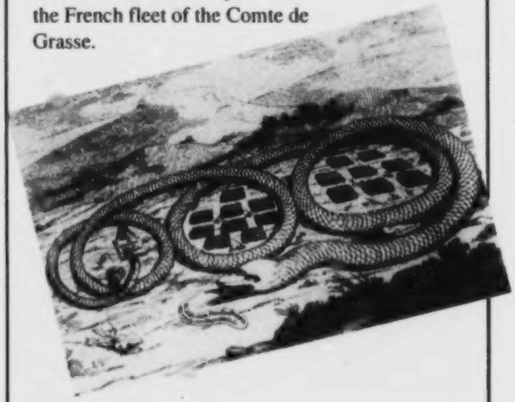
John Paul Jones, the naval commander famous for exclaiming "I have not yet begun to fight!" raided British warships during the American Revolution. His ship, the *Bonhomme Richard*, captured the English warship *Serapis* in 1779.





During the Revolution, Connecticut loyalists were kept in the underground caverns of notorious Newgate prison, a former copper mine. Loyalists, also called Tories, made up 10 to 20 percent of the colonial population. Most were Anglican clergy, government officials, or merchants.

In this cartoon the allied forces at Yorktown are seen as a snake encircling the British army, leaving no room for escape. General Cornwallis was forced to surrender his troops to the three-pronged attack of George Washington, French leaders Rochambeau and Lafayette, and the French fleet of the Comte de Grasse.



69. On July 2, 1776, the Second Continental Congress formally voted to proclaim independence from Great Britain and on July 4 adopted an appropriate document. Name the document and its chief author.

70. The Iroquois Confederacy split into three factions during the Revolutionary War—supporting the British, supporting the colonists, or remaining neutral. Name the Mohawk leaders who convinced the Mohawk, Seneca, and Cayuga tribes to support the British.

71. These volunteers were originally organized before the Revolution to fight against the encroachment of New Yorkers into the territory that would eventually become Vermont. In May 1775, they captured a small British garrison stocked with weapons at Fort Ticonderoga, New York.

72. Name the American military commander who aided in the capture of Fort Ticonderoga and repelled a British invasion from Canada before secretly agreeing to turn West Point, New York, over to the British for 20,000 pounds in September 1780.

73. Before the British hanged this Connecticut militiaman as a spy in 1776, he said, "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

74. Name the sites at which the following events occurred.

    A. George Washington surprised the redcoats on the day after Christmas in 1776 and captured more than 900 Hessian mercenaries.

    B. In September 1777, the British captured this city, forcing the Second Continental Congress to flee.

    C. American General Horatio Gates's forces surrounded Great Britain's General Burgoyne and his troops, forcing their surrender in October 1777.

    D. The British moved the war to the South hoping in vain to enlist the aid of many Loyalists there and, in December 1779, captured this coastal town.

    E. In May 1780, the Americans suffered their greatest defeat of the war when General Benjamin Lincoln surrendered the entire southern army to the British.

75. France decided to recognize American independence and enter into an alliance with the new government after hearing the news of colonial victory in what battle?

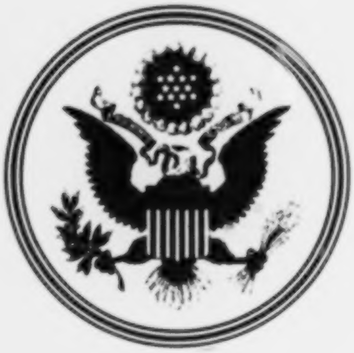
76. Given command of the southern forces in October 1780, this Rhode Island patriot inflicted heavy losses on the British at Guilford Courthouse in North Carolina in March 1781.

77. In October 1781, Great Britain admitted defeat after General Cornwallis surrendered to American and French troops at the Battle of__________.

78. When and where was the peace treaty ending the American Revolution signed? Who were the American negotiators?

2. Nationalism and Sectionalism (1783-1865)

In 1782, the Continental Congress approved a design for the Great Seal of the United States, containing the Latin motto *e pluribus unum:* "from many, one." Americans hoped that the 13 colonies, so different in geography, population, and economic life, would be able to unite as effectively in peace as they had in war.

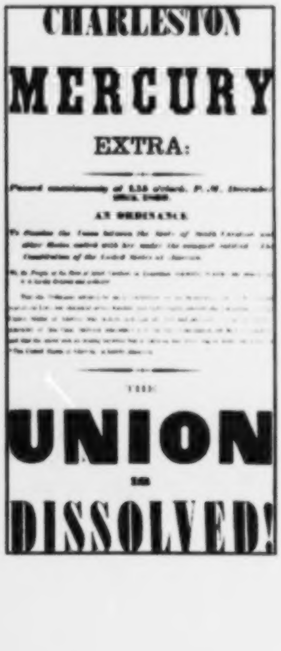


Yet political factions soon emerged in the new nation. The Federalist party, stronger in the northern states, favored a powerful national government to support the growth of commerce and industry. The Democratic-Republican (or Republican) party, stronger in the southern and western regions, favored agricultural interests and advocated state sovereignty—an issue that plagued the new nation. Delegates from the New England states even considered secession in objection to the War of 1812. But after the war, a nationalist spirit dominated American politics—at least for a while.

Party politics resurged in the 1820s and 1830s. Democratic-Republicans became the Democrats, as they rallied around southerner Andrew Jackson, who was elected president in 1828. Because Jackson opposed a national bank and protective tariffs, he faced opposition from northern business interests, who allied with reformers to create the Whig party. Yet when South Carolina threatened to secede in protest against high tariffs, Jackson stood firmly behind the union.

Politicians in the 1850s finally found it impossible to reconcile the interests of the North, South, and West over the issue of extending slavery to the western territories. The Whig party crumbled over the issue. Democratic leaders favored popular sovereignty, but slaveowners demanded more absolute protection by law. The new Republican party opposed any extension of slavery. Its candidate, Abraham Lincoln, was elected president in 1860 with support from the North and West. Southerners seceded in response, believing that their interests could no longer be protected within the American political system. Only a bloody civil war restored the union.

The history of the United States is often told as the history of political parties and leaders. Political history is dramatic, telling stories of people and parties vying for the power to rule the nation. As you study the questions in the following chapter, consider the relationship between the people and the politics of the nation. By 1865, had America achieved the goal stated in its motto, *e pluribus unum*?



CHARLESTON

MERCURY

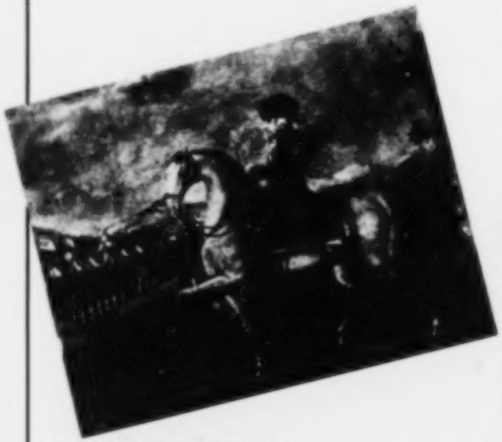
EXTRA:

THE

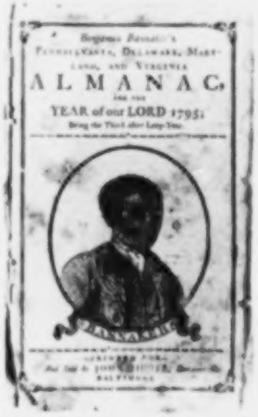
UNION

DISSOLVED!

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



President George Washington led troops to quell the 1794 Whiskey Rebellion in western Pennsylvania, demonstrating the strength of the new national government. The angry farmers revolted against an excise tax on liquor because they converted much of their grain harvest into whiskey.



ALMANAC,
YEAR of our LORD 1795;

Benjamin Banneker, a self-taught mathemetician and astronomer, worked with Major Andrew Ellicott in 1791 to survey the site of Washington, D.C. The plan for the city was designed by Pierre Charles L'Enfant, a French architect.

The Republican Experiment

1. The United States of America began to function as a sovereign nation even before the 1783 Treaty of Paris. The nation's first government was the Second Continental Congress, which in November 1777 approved the Articles of Confederation—the first national constitution. How were the Articles ratified, and when did they take effect?

2. A dispute over western land claims caused a delay in ratification of the Articles. Explain how the dispute was settled.

3. Two pieces of legislation provided for the settlement of the Northwest Territory—land north of the Ohio River and east of the Mississippi River. Do the points listed below describe the Land Ordinance of 1785 or the Northwest Ordinance of 1787?

   A. It provided for freedom of religion and trial by jury for all settlers in the territory.

   B. Proceeds from the sale of a section of land in each township were set aside to support a public school.

   C. The territory would initially be governed by officials appointed by Congress, but a legislature could be elected when the population reached 5,000 free adult males.

   D. A land survey would divide the territory into townships made up of 36 sections, each of 640 acres (one square mile). Land was to be sold by section, for at least one dollar per acre.

   E. Slavery was prohibited in the territory.

   F. Three to five states would be created from the territory. The total free population of a region had to reach 60,000 before it could apply for statehood.

   G. It set a pattern for admitting new states to the union "on an equal footing with the original states."

4. Realizing that the Articles of Confederation failed to solve many of the problems of the new nation, various groups met to consider solutions. Give the name of each of the meetings described below.

   A. In March 1785, representatives from Virginia and Maryland met to discuss navigation problems on the Chesapeake Bay and the Potomac River.

   B. In September 1786, a convention met to discuss interstate commerce. Delegates from only five states attended, so they recommended another meeting in Philadelphia in May 1787.

   C. In the summer of 1787, 55 delegates from every state except Rhode Island met in Philadelphia to amend the Articles of Confederation. Meeting in secret, they soon abandoned the Articles and instead drafted a new constitution.

5. George Washington was inaugurated as the first president of the United States on April 30, 1789. Which of the following precedents was *not* set by the Washington administration?

   A. using the title "Mr. President"

   B. using the heads of the executive departments as presidential advisors, leading to the formation of the cabinet

   C. using political party conventions to choose nominees for president

   D. voluntarily limiting a president's stay in office to two terms

6. Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton and Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson disagreed profoundly on the economic course the new nation should take. Do the following statements describe the views of Hamilton or Jefferson?

   A. "Those who labor in the earth are the chosen people of God."

   B. The United States should impose tariffs on goods imported from Europe to encourage domestic manufacturing.

   C. The United States should prefer agriculture to the growth of large-scale domestic industries.

   D. The growth of industry will lead to more opportunities for Americans with various talents and skills.

7. List the major points of Alexander Hamilton's three-part economic plan for the United States.

8. Which aspects of Hamilton's plan did Congress enact?

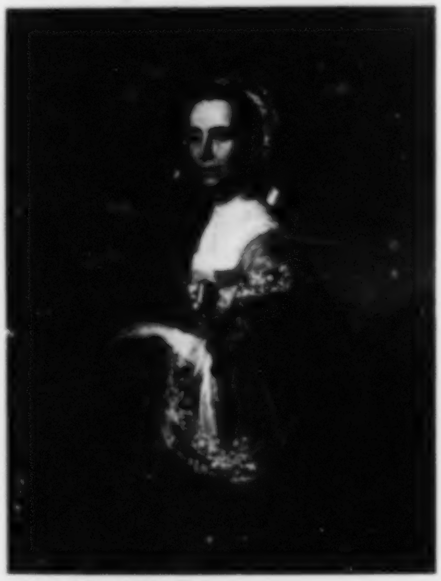
Answer question 9 using the following excerpt, written by Thomas Jefferson during the debate over the national bank.

> I consider the foundation of the Constitution as laid on this ground—that all powers not delegated to the United States, by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states or to the people. To take a single step beyond the boundaries thus specifically drawn around the powers of Congress, is to take possession of a boundless field of power.

9. Is Jefferson advocating **strict** or **loose construction** of the U.S. Constitution?

10. What part of the Constitution did Alexander Hamilton cite in his defense of the national bank?

11. By 1792, the antagonism between Jefferson and Hamilton and their allies over domestic and foreign policy had created America's first political parties. Hamilton's supporters, who favored a strong central government and close relations with England, called themselves ______________. Jefferson's supporters, who advocated more power for the states and close relations with France, called themselves ______________.



Author Mercy Otis Warren published the final volume of her *History of the Rise, Progress, and Termination of the American Revolution* in 1805. Warren's strong opposition to her former ally John Adams and his Federalist party may have influenced Adams to remark that "history is not the Province of the Ladies."

12. In September 1796, President Washington published his "Farewell Address." His address included the following points *except:*

    A. He encouraged federal spending on roads.

    B. He declined to run for a third term.

    C. He warned of the dangers of political parties.

    D. He warned the nation to avoid permanent foreign alliances.

13. During the administration of John Adams, Federalists introduced legislation designed to hurt their Republican opponents. Identify the laws described below, passed in 1798.

    A. These three laws increased the residency requirement for citizenship and allowed the president to deport or imprison foreigners during wartime. Recent immigrants usually supported the Republicans.

    B. This law allowed fining or imprisonment of anyone who impeded the progress of the government or defamed its officials. Only Republican journalists were convicted under this act.

14. Republicans Thomas Jefferson and James Madison drafted resolutions passed by the Kentucky and Virginia legislatures in 1798 and 1799.

    A. What acts did the resolutions declare unconstitutional?

    B. What reasoning did the resolutions use?

15. In the election of 1800, Republican candidates Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr received equal numbers of electoral votes, leaving the House of Representatives to decide who would be president. Jefferson was finally chosen, with Burr as vice president. What step was taken by Congress to avoid similar problems in the future?

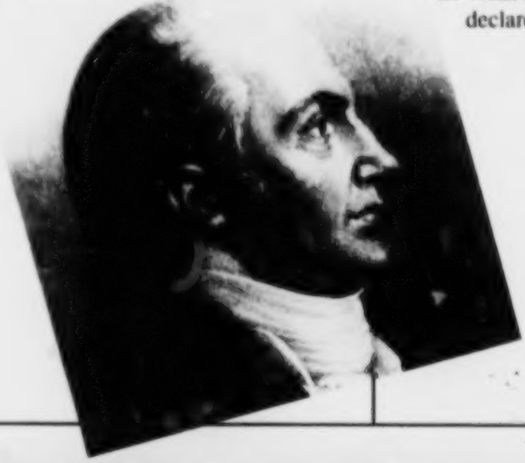
16. In a final attempt to increase Federalist influence before he left office, John Adams used the Judiciary Act of 1801 to make "midnight appointments" of Federalists to new judgeships and court positions. Briefly describe the provisions of this act.

17. "We are all Republicans, we are all Federalists," said Thomas Jefferson in his first inaugural address. However, he immediately attempted to remove Federalists from the judiciary, pushed for the repeal of the Judiciary Act of 1801, and instructed Secretary of State James Madison not to deliver letters of appointment to the judges appointed by Adams.

    A. What were the results of the new Judiciary Act of 1802?

    B. What case, resulting from Madison's action, led the Supreme Court to declare a law passed by Congress unconstitutional for the first time?

Vice President Aaron Burr killed Alexander Hamilton in a duel in 1804, after a long and bitter political feud. In 1807, Burr was accused of treason for plotting to establish his own western empire. Although Burr was acquitted, he immediately went into exile in Europe.



18. Besides domestic politics, foreign policy presented problems for the new nation.

    A. What were the main provisions of the Jay Treaty, negotiated with the British by John Jay in 1794?

    B. How was the problem of **impressment** of American sailors by the British addressed in the treaty?

19. After the signing of the Jay Treaty, France, fearing an alliance between the United States and Great Britain, seized hundreds of U.S. merchant ships. Attempts at negotiation broke down in 1797 with the XYZ affair, in which French agents demanded a bribe from U.S. diplomats. What was the result of these events?

20. In 1801, war erupted when President Jefferson refused to increase tribute payments for protection from the attacks of Barbary Coast pirates in the Mediterranean Sea. What actions did Jefferson take during this war, which lasted until 1805?

21. In a secret treaty in 1800, France's Napoleon Bonaparte gained control of Louisiana from Spain. Which of the following is *not* true of the U.S. purchase of Louisiana in 1803?

    A. President Jefferson feared that French possession of New Orleans would close the Mississippi River to American shipping.

    B. The purchase doubled the size of the United States.

    C. President Jefferson wanted to form an alliance with the British against France.

    D. French citizens already living in the territory were given U.S. citizenship, but the rights of the Native Americans living there were not discussed.

22. How did President Jefferson's support of the Louisiana Purchase violate his views on the interpretation of the Constitution?

War and Nationalism

23. During Jefferson's second term, the United States attempted to remain neutral while Great Britain and France fought a bitter war. Neither European nation respected U.S. neutrality.

    A. What 1807 confrontation between U.S. and British warships resulted in 21 American casualties and the impressment of four U.S. sailors into the British navy?

    B. What two measures did Jefferson support in response to British and French aggression?

24. Led by Henry Clay of Kentucky and John C. Calhoun of South Carolina, many congressmen from southern and western states encouraged war with Great Britain. By what name were these members of Congress known?

25. In June 1812, after an address by President Madison, Congress declared war on Great Britain. What three reasons for war did Madison cite in his address?

On the pages of their journals, Meriwether Lewis and William Clark recorded observations of scores of animals and plants previously unknown to Europeans, while exploring the Louisiana territory. From 1804 to 1806, they travelled some 8,000 miles through the Missouri and Columbia River basins to the Pacific Ocean.

26. Identify the sites of the following battles of the War of 1812.

A. In August 1812, General William Hull surrendered his forces after pro-British Native Americans captured and burned nearby Fort Dearborn.

B. In October 1812, U.S. forces were defeated because the New York state militia refused to cross the border to fight in Canadian territory.

C. "We have met the enemy, and they are ours," said Captain Oliver Hazard Perry after defeating the British in a bloody naval battle. With this victory in September 1813, the United States gained control of Lake Erie.

D. In October 1813, General William Henry Harrison led his troops against British and Native American forces. During the battle, Shawnee leader Tecumseh was killed, ending Native American support for the British in the region.

E. After this city was burned by the British in August 1814, James Monroe became Secretary of War, replacing John Armstrong.

27. By 1814, American trade had declined dramatically from its 1811 level, and the federal government was on the verge of bankruptcy because it lacked revenue from customs duties on imports. What British military tactic was to blame?

28. Opposition to the War of 1812 was strong among New Englanders, whose livelihoods were hurt by the decline in foreign trade. What action did New England Federalists take in December 1814 to protest "Mr. Madison's War"?

29. National pride was galvanized by General Andrew Jackson's victory in a battle that occurred in January 1815, two weeks after the United States and Great Britain had signed the 1814 Treaty of Ghent ending the war. Name this battle.

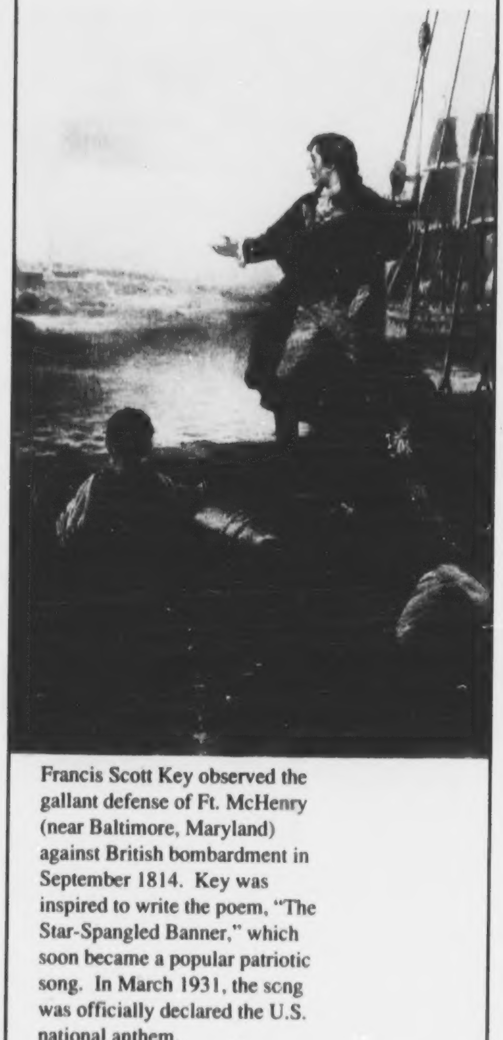
30. After the war of 1812, a feeling of nationalism prevailed. No formal political opposition existed during President James Monroe's two terms in office (1817-1825). By what name is his presidency known?

31. Provide the names and dates of the following cases in which the Supreme Court, led by Chief Justice John Marshall, supported a strong national government and economic growth.

A. After the charter of the First Bank of the United States expired, Congress chartered the Second Bank of the United States in 1816. The Court upheld the constitutionality of the charter, repeating some of Alexander Hamilton's loose constructionist arguments.

B. Asserting that only the federal government had the right to regulate interstate commerce, the Supreme Court struck down a New York state law that allowed Robert Fulton's company to maintain a monopoly on New York-New Jersey steamboat traffic.

32. Name the U.S. policy, adopted in 1823, which stated that the Western Hemisphere was closed to future colonization or interference by European nations. It also said that the United States would not intervene in the affairs of European nations.



Francis Scott Key observed the gallant defense of Ft. McHenry (near Baltimore, Maryland) against British bombardment in September 1814. Key was inspired to write the poem, "The Star-Spangled Banner," which soon became a popular patriotic song. In March 1931, the song was officially declared the U.S. national anthem.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Jacksonian Democracy

33. From the end of the War of 1812 through the administration of President Andrew Jackson, American democracy expanded to include more and more citizens in the electoral process. Which of the following reforms did *not* occur during this period?

    A. In the majority of states, voters rather than state legislatures chose presidential electors.

    B. Property qualifications for voting were removed in most states.

    C. The national party convention replaced the caucus as a means of choosing presidential candidates.

    D. Free black men were given the right to vote in all northern states.

34. In the election of 1824, four candidates vied for the presidency. Andrew Jackson received a plurality of the popular and electoral votes, but did not have enough electoral votes to win the election.

    A. How did the House of Representatives decide the election?

    B. Why was Henry Clay accused of entering into a "corrupt bargain" with John Quincy Adams?

35. By 1828, new political alliances were firmly in place. Andrew Jackson's supporters called themselves Democratic-Republicans, soon shortened to Democrats. John Quincy Adams's supporters were the National Republicans, soon to enter the new Whig party. Jackson's support came from which two of the following regions?

    A. southern states

    B. New England states

    C. western states

36. Instead of turning to his cabinet for advice, Andrew Jackson relied on a small group of friends called the ____________.

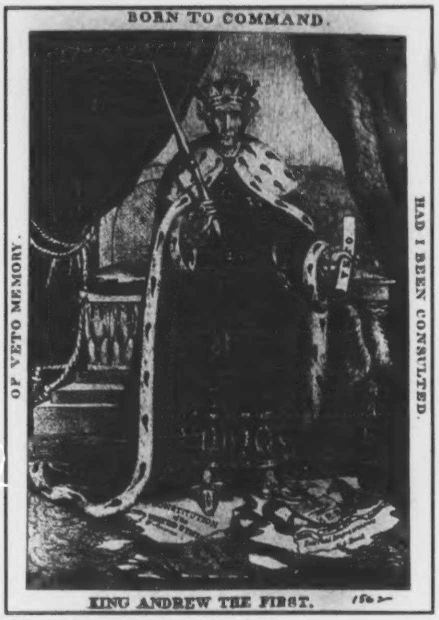
37. Just before Jackson's election in 1828, Congress passed a very high tariff on imports. By what name was the tariff known in the South, and why did southerners oppose it?

Answer questions 38-39 using the following excerpt from the 1831 "Fort Hill Address" by Vice President John C. Calhoun.

> The great and leading principle is, that the General Government emanated from the people of the several States, forming distinct political communities, and acting in their separate and sovereign capacity, and not from all of the people forming one aggregate political community; that the Constitution of the United States is, in fact, a compact, to which each State is a party . . . and that the several States . . . have a right to judge of its infractions; and in case of a deliberate, palpable, and dangerous exercise of power not delegated, they have the right . . . to interpose for arresting the progress of the evil.

38. What principle does Calhoun defend in his speech?

39. What documents offered Calhoun a precedent for his assertions?


BORN TO COMMAND.
OF VETO MEMORY.
HAD I BEEN CONSULTED.
KING ANDREW THE FIRST.

"King Andrew the First" was the nickname bestowed on President Jackson by opponents in Congress, who resented his efforts to increase the power of the presidency. Jackson used his veto power more often than all of his predecessors combined.

40. A new protective tariff in 1832 so angered South Carolina that it declared the tariff void and prohibited collection of its duties. What was Andrew Jackson's response to this nullification crisis in his "Proclamation to the People of South Carolina"?

41. At Jackson's request, Congress passed the Force Act of 1833, giving the president authority to use the military to enforce revenue laws. How was the use of the military finally avoided?

42. Believing it was unconstitutional and corrupt, Andrew Jackson strongly opposed the National Bank, managed by Nicholas Biddle.

    A. What action did Jackson take in 1832 when Congress passed a bill renewing the bank's charter?

    B. What was Nicholas Biddle's response when, in 1833, Jackson ordered that federal deposits be made to state banks rather than to the National Bank?

43. In 1836, President Jackson issued the Specie Circular.

    A. What did the Specie Circular require as payment for public land?

    B. Why did Jackson issue the Specie Circular?

    C. What impact did the Specie Circular have on the economy?

44. Voters turned to the Whigs in 1840 and elected military hero William Henry Harrison as president. When Harrison died only one month after taking office, John Tyler succeeded him. Why is Tyler often referred to as the president without a party?

Westward Expansion

45. American settlers continually pushed the frontier farther west. Identify the following Native American leaders who resisted white intrusion into the Northwest Territory.

    A. In 1794, in the Battle of Fallen Timbers, this Miami warrior's forces were defeated by General "Mad" Anthony Wayne. In the resulting Treaty of Greenville, 12 tribes ceded their lands in what is now Ohio to the U.S. government.

    B. This Shawnee warrior sought to unify Native American tribes. His headquarters at Tippecanoe Creek were destroyed by General William Henry Harrison in 1811.

    C. In 1832, this chief led the Sac and Fox tribes in a fight to regain lands in Illinois. Many died when federal troops and Illinois militia drove them back across the Mississippi River.

46. American settlers also moved into Mexican territory.

    A. Who founded a small colony in Texas in 1821, beginning the flood of American settlers into the region?

    B. What event inspired Texans to rally to the cry "Remember the Alamo!" as they fought for independence from Mexico?

    C. Where did Texas General Sam Houston capture Mexican dictator Antonio de Santa Anna and force him to sign a peace treaty in April 1836, granting Texas its independence?

Captain John C. Frémont, known as "the Pathfinder" for his exploration of the West, came to the aid of California settlers in a revolt against Mexico in June 1846. The rebel flag featured a grizzly bear, so the episode is known as the Bear Flag Revolt. In 1856, Frémont became the first presidential candidate of the modern Republican party.

47. Congress approved the annexation of Texas to the United States in March 1845. Briefly describe Mexican reaction to the annexation.

48. In 1846, President James Polk, an avowed expansionist, sent General Zachary Taylor and his troops to defend the Rio Grande border of Texas. A clash with Mexican forces resulted in the declaration of the Mexican-American War.

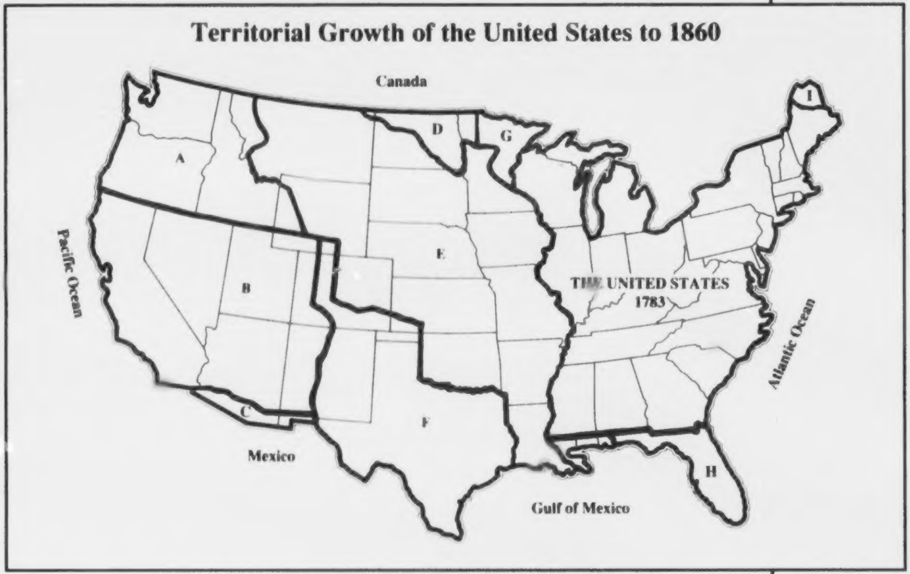
    A. What key city did Colonel Stephen Kearny capture in 1846 without firing a shot?

    B. Where did General Zachary Taylor's offensive in northern Mexico climax with a victory in 1847?

    C. What city did Major General Winfield Scott's army capture in September 1847, ending the Mexican-American War?

49. New York magazine editor John L. O'Sullivan wrote in 1845 that it was "our ____________ to overspread the continent allotted by Providence for the free development of our yearly multiplying millions."

By 1860, U.S. territory stretched from coast to coast. Answer questions 50-56 using the map below.



Territorial Growth of the United States to 1860

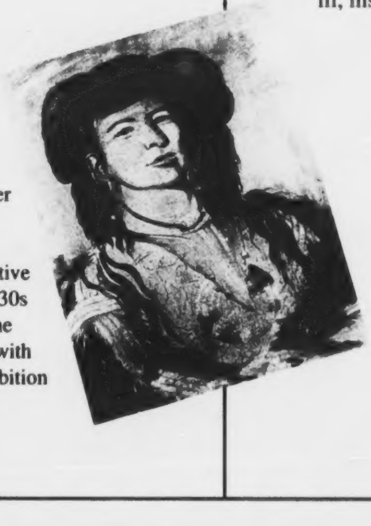
50. By what name is region E known, and what price did the United States pay for it?

51. At the Convention of 1818, the boundary between the United States and British North America was set at the 49th parallel, from Lake of the Woods to the crest of the Rocky Mountains, and the British ceded what region to the United States?

52. In the 1819 Adams-Onis Treaty, the United States renounced its claim to Texas and agreed to assume the claims of U.S. citizens against Spain up to $5 million, in return for Spain's renunciation of claims to which area?

Prospectors, known as "forty-niners," rushed in after gold was discovered at Sutter's Mill in central California in 1848. Californians quickly ratified an antislavery constitution and applied for statehood, leading to a fierce congressional battle between proslavery and antislavery forces.

Reverend Richard Allen, an early abolitionist, founded the African Methodist Episcopal (AME) Church in 1816, which was the first national black denomination in the United States.



In this portrait of *One Horn*, a Dakota Sioux chief, and hundreds of other works, painter George Catlin recorded the disappearing culture of Native Americans. During the 1830s and 1840s, Catlin toured the United States and Europe with his Indian Gallery, an exhibition of paintings and artifacts.

53. Daniel Webster negotiated a treaty with Great Britain in 1842, known as the Webster-Ashburton Treaty. With this treaty, the United States gained which two areas designated on the map?

54. President James Polk urged an end to joint U.S.-British occupation of this western territory. In 1846, Polk and Congress agreed to accept the 49th parallel as the U.S.-Canadian border, despite expansionists' cries of "54° 40' or fight!" What region on the map was under dispute?

55. In 1845, the United States annexed area F, leading to the Mexican-American War. Under the terms of the 1848 Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo, ending this war, the United States paid Mexico $15 million and assumed responsibility for Mexican debts to U.S. citizens. Which area did the United States receive in exchange?

56. How did the United States acquire area C?

Creating an American Culture

57. Camp meetings, lasting several days and drawing thousands of people, met both the religious and social needs of many frontier settlers from around 1800 to the 1840s. Name this period of frontier religious revivals.

58. The religious fervor of the nineteenth century promoted reform of both individuals and American society. One of the most successful reform organizations was the American Society for the Promotion of Temperance, organized in 1826.

    A. What did the society urge individuals to do?

    B. What kind of legislation did Maine become the first state to enact in 1851?

59. Other reform efforts focused on institutions such as schools, prisons, and hospitals. Identify the following reformers.

    A. As secretary of the Massachusetts Board of Education from 1837-1848, he emphasized free public schools. He believed that education "is the great equalizer of the conditions of men . . . it prevents being poor."

    B. During the 1840s and 1850s, this Boston school teacher worked for the reform of asylums for the mentally ill, prisons, and almshouses. Her efforts led many states to create special hospitals for the mentally ill, instead of imprisoning them.

60. Antebellum social reformers also created utopian communities. Identify the following communities.

   A. The United Society of Believers, or Shakers, a religious sect brought to America in 1774 by Ann Lee, created the first of their communal havens in 1787. The Shakers emphasized self-sufficiency, the equality of men and women, and celibacy.

   B. British industrialist Robert Owen founded a short-lived socialist community in 1825.

   C. In 1841, Unitarian minister George Ripley founded a community that rejected materialism and sought happiness in communal life. Many **transcendentalist** writers joined a few farmers and craftsmen in this endeavor.

   D. The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, or Mormons, founded by Joseph Smith in 1830, fled persecution in the East. In 1846, under leader Brigham Young, they migrated west to found a new church-centered agricultural community.

61. Many of those associated with George Ripley's community participated in the growth of a new national literature, greatly influenced by transcendentalism. Identify the following transcendentalist authors of the nineteenth century.

   A. Born in Salem, Massachusetts, this author explored the morality of Puritan New England in *The Scarlet Letter* (1850).

   B. This feminist writer edited the transcendentalist journal, *The Dial*, and was literary critic of the New York *Tribune*.

   C. This writer focused on the struggle between good and evil in his masterpiece, *Moby Dick* (1851), using his own experiences on whaling ships.

   D. This author wrote his essay, "Civil Disobedience," after he was jailed for protesting slavery and the war with Mexico by refusing to pay a poll tax. An ardent naturalist, he spent two years observing life on Walden Pond and recorded his thoughts in *Walden* (1854).

   E. This author edited *The Dial* and set out the basic tenets of transcendentalism in *Nature* (1836). His 1837 address, "The American Scholar," known as America's literary declaration of independence, advocated the creation of an American culture independent of European models.

62. Identify the authors from the early nineteenth century whose works are described below.

   A. The stories "Rip Van Winkle" and "The Legend of Sleepy Hollow," set in New York state, were published in *The Sketch Book* (1819-1820).

   B. *The Last of the Mohicans* (1826) and *The Deerslayer* (1841) relate the adventures of frontiersman Natty Bumppo and his Native American comrades in the American wilderness.

   C. The poem, "The Raven" (1845), and the short novel, *The Fall of the House of Usher* (1839), explore dark themes such as lost love and death.

Walt Whitman celebrated the American spirit in poems such as "Song of Myself." Whitman first published his collection *Leaves of Grass* in 1855. Working as a volunteer nurse during the Civil War, he developed a deep admiration for President Lincoln, whom he memorialized in "When Lilacs Last in the Dooryard Bloom'd."

Harriet Tubman was known as the "Moses of her people" for her work with the Underground Railroad, a network of people who helped slaves escape to the North or to Canada. During the 1850s, she led some 300 fugitive slaves to freedom.

63. Thomas Cole and Asher Durand, known for painting the beauty of the American landscape, belonged to what school of painting?

64. Name the Virginia-born artist who moved west and became known for his scenes of life on the Missouri River in the 1840s and 1850s.

65. American reformers also addressed the problem of slavery. Before the 1830s, many Americans who objected to slavery belonged to the______________, a group formed in 1817 to transport freed slaves to Liberia.

66. The **abolitionist** and **feminist** movements were closely linked. Identify the following reformers who fought for both these causes.

   A. These two sisters from South Carolina spoke out against slavery and attacked women's subordination to men.

   B. Refused admittance to an 1840 antislavery conference because they were women, these two reformers organized the first American women's rights convention, held in 1848 at Seneca Falls, New York.

   C. A supporter of temperance and women's suffrage, he published an abolitionist newspaper, the *Liberator*, from 1831 to 1865 and helped found the American Antislavery Society in 1833. On July 4, 1854, he burned a copy of the U.S. Constitution, proclaiming, "So perish all compromises with tyranny!"

   D. This former slave attended the 1848 Seneca Falls Convention in support of women's suffrage. As an abolitionist, he lectured, edited the *North Star* (1847-1864), and assisted in raising black regiments for the Union during the Civil War.

Answer question 67 using the following excerpt from the "Declaration of Sentiments" issued at the 1848 Seneca Falls Convention.

> We hold these truths to be self-evident; that all men and women are created equal. . . .
>
> The history of mankind is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations on the part of man toward woman, having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over her. . . .
>
> He has never permitted her to exercise her inalienable right to the elective franchise.
>
> He has compelled her to submit to laws in the formation of which she had no voice.
>
> He has made her, if married, in the eye of the law, civilly dead.
>
> . . . we insist that they [women] have immediate admission to all the rights and privileges which belong to them as citizens of the United States.

67. Why does the declaration describe married women as "civilly dead"?

In detailed paintings of birds, naturalist and artist John James Audubon depicted the nobility and beauty of American wildlife during the 1820s and 1830s. The National Audubon Society, founded in 1905 to promote wildlife conservation, was named in his honor.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Industrial Revolution

68. Hoping to unify the country economically after the War of 1812, Congressman Henry Clay promoted what he later called the "American System," which included all of the following *except:*

    A. a national bank

    B. improved roads and canals

    C. export taxes

    D. a protective tariff on imports

69. Improved transportation was crucial to the expansion of the nation's economy. Identify the following links in America's early transportation system.

    A. This 363-mile canal was completed in 1825. Built by the state of New York, the canal allowed goods to be shipped between the Great Lakes and the Hudson River.

    B. This highway aided east-west trade and migration. It began in Cumberland, Maryland, in 1811 and was gradually extended to reach Vandalia, Illinois.

    C. The railroad boom began in 1830 when the locomotive *Tom Thumb* traveled 13 miles on this newly constructed line.

70. The American system of manufacturing used interchangeable parts to enable mass production of goods. What inventor is usually given credit for the first attempt to use this system in 1798 to produce 10,000 muskets for the U.S. Army?

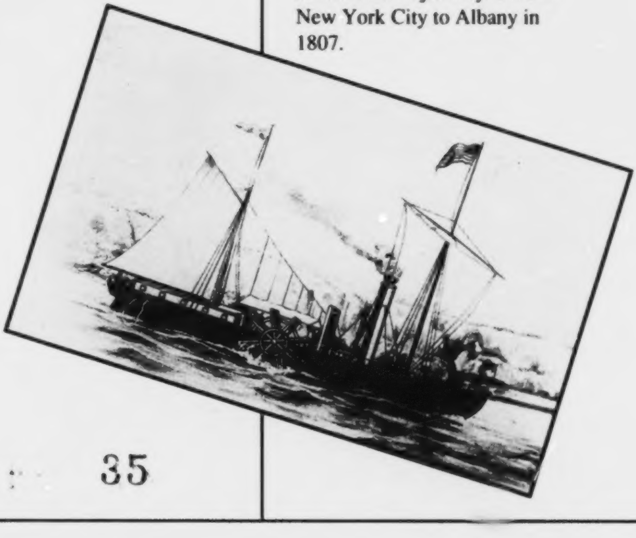
71. Industrialists brought large-scale factories to the United States from Great Britain, where the industrial revolution originated.

    A. Who built America's first cotton thread mill in Pawtucket, Rhode Island, in 1790?

    B. What were the major characteristics of the "Waltham system" of textile manufacturing begun in Waltham, Massachusetts, in 1813?

72. How was the development of the cotton textile industry in the United States aided by international events from 1807-1815?

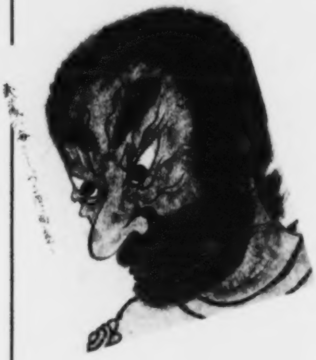
Robert Fulton's *Clermont* inaugurated the first successful steamship service in the United States when it journeyed from New York City to Albany in 1807.



Answer questions 73-74 using the chart below.

Technological Developments, 1830-1865		
Year	**Inventor**	**Contribution**
1830	Peter Cooper	Built first U.S. steam locomotive, the *Tom Thumb*
1834	Cyrus McCormick	Patented an improved mechanical reaper for harvesting grain
1837	John Deere	Invented steel plow that could cut through tough prairie sod
1839	Charles Goodyear	Perfected vulcanization process to improve strength of rubber
1844	Samuel Morse	Invented telegraph
1846	Elias Howe	Patented sewing machine
1846	Richard Hoe	Invented first rotary printing press
1851	William Kelly	Improved method of converting pig iron into steel
1852	Elisha Otis	Invented first safe passenger elevator
1859	Edwin Drake	Drilled first American oil well in Titusville, Pennsylvania
1860	Oliver Winchester	Introduced first repeating rifle
1862	Richard Gatling	Perfected machine gun
1864	George Pullman	Improved railroad sleeping car

Matthew C. Perry, pictured below by a Japanese artist, opened Japan to U.S. trade in 1854 by negotiating the Treaty of Kanagawa. This treaty, which allowed U.S. trade in two Japanese ports, was strongly encouraged by American manufacturers.



73. During the antebellum period many farmers moved from subsistence agriculture to commercial agriculture, growing crops for the expanding urban market. Which inventions aided this change?

74. Which inventions helped to link various regions of the expanding nation together?

75. Railroad mileage expanded tenfold from 1840 to 1860. How did such expansion encourage the development of industry?

76. In the 1840s and 1850s, the northern work force changed dramatically due to the rising number of immigrants, primarily from Ireland and Germany. Why were Irish immigrants more likely to take jobs as manual laborers or factory workers than were Germans?

77. Which of the following is *not* true of **nativist** reaction to the influx of immigrants before the Civil War?

    A. Nativists feared immigrants because they competed for jobs, causing wages to drop due to the larger labor pool.

    B. Nativists feared that the Roman Catholic Pope would gain influence in the United States if the Catholic immigrants gained political power.

    C. Nativists encouraged immigrants to keep their own traditions and customs, believing that they would enrich American culture.

    D. Nativists formed their own political party, the American party (or Know-Nothings), which opposed the election of immigrants and Catholics.

78. In the early nineteenth century, courts usually ruled against **trade unions** for striking, finding them guilty of conspiracy to restrict trade. A Massachusetts Supreme Court decision increased the legal rights of trade unions. Briefly describe this case.

79. The Lowell Female Labor Reform Association (LFLRA), formed in the 1840s, promoted better working conditions for women in textile mills. Name the founder of the LFLRA.

The Cotton Kingdom

80. Although most large-scale industry grew up in the North, technology played a key role in the development of the South's economy as well. In 1793, the invention of the cotton gin made it possible to grow cotton more profitably.

    A. Who invented the cotton gin?

    B. What economic events in England coincided with this technological innovation, convincing many southerners to expand their agricultural lands to plant the profitable crop?

81. Before cotton fields could expand, state and national governments had to obtain Native American land in the South. In 1824, President James Monroe proposed what solution to this problem?

82. Name the Native American tribes removed from their lands in the 1820s and 1830s, and explain why they were known as the "Five Civilized Tribes."

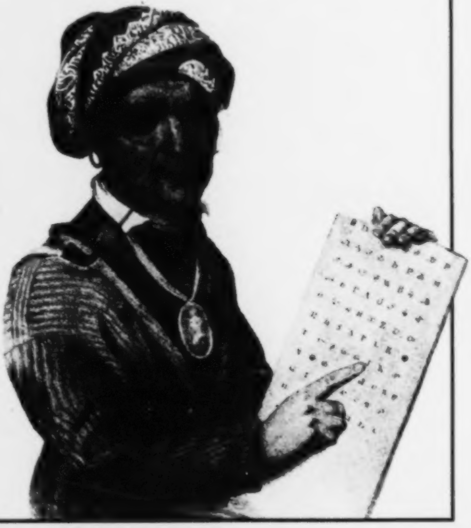
83. Native Americans resisted expulsion from the state of Georgia.

    A. What actions did the Cherokee take in 1827 to resist removal from Georgia, and how did the state respond?

    B. What was the Supreme Court's decision in *Cherokee Nation v. Georgia* (1831)?

84. Saying "John Marshall has made his decision, now let him enforce it," President Jackson proceeded with the expulsion of Native Americans under a law passed before the Court's decision. Name this law, which gave Jackson power for his actions.

85. In 1838, during Martin Van Buren's presidency, federal troops forced more than 15,000 Cherokee on a march to their new lands. Nearly one-fourth died along the way. By what name is this march known?



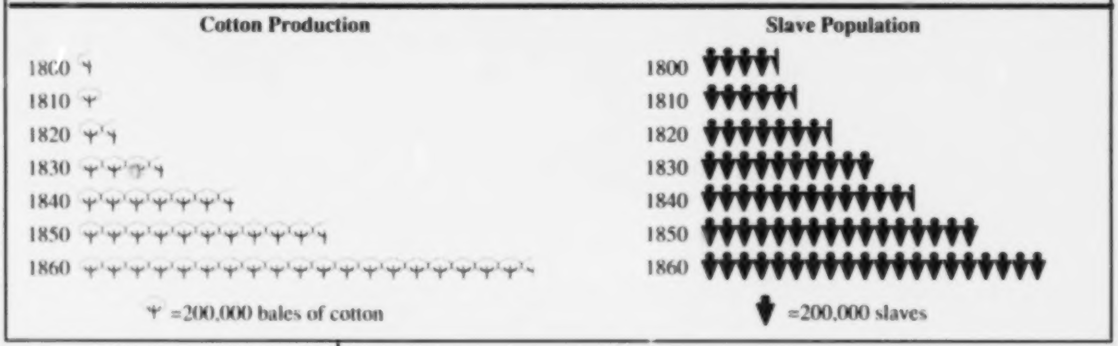
Cherokee statesman Sequoyah worked for 12 years to devise a written form of his native language, preserving its ancient oral culture. In 1821, Cherokee leaders adopted Sequoyah's 86-letter alphabet.

86. To which present-day state were the tribes of the Southeast forced to migrate during the 1830s?

87. Refusing to vacate their homes, a group of Seminole fought U.S. troops from 1835 to 1842. Name the Seminole leader of this campaign.

Answer question 88 using the graphs below.

Cotton Production and Slave Population in the South, 1800-1860



88. The graphs above illustrate which of the following statements?

   A. Many slaves worked as factory laborers.

   B. As cotton production grew, so did the use of slave labor.

   C. Cotton production was becoming less profitable in the decade preceding the Civil War.

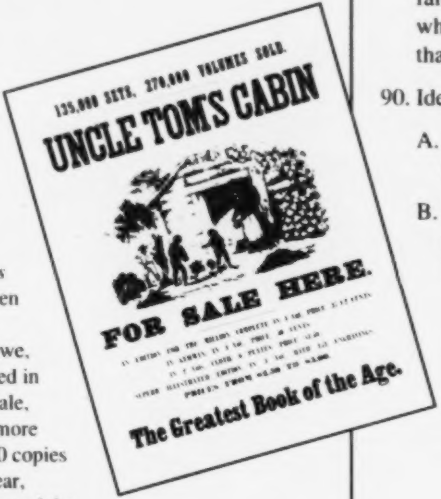
   D. Cotton was not grown in the North because there were not enough slaves there.

89. Most southern whites were not planters, but independent subsistence farmers or landless laborers. In 1860, what percentage of the southern white population owned at least one slave? What percentage owned more than 50 slaves?

90. Identify the leaders of the following slave rebellions.

   A. In 1822, this free black man created an aborted plan to take over Charleston, South Carolina.

   B. In 1831, in Virginia, this slave preacher organized a bloody rebellion that lasted several days, taking the lives of almost 60 whites. Many blacks were killed in retaliation.


135,000 SETS, 270,000 VOLUMES SOLD.
UNCLE TOM'S CABIN
FOR SALE HERE.
The Greatest Book of the Age.

Uncle Tom's Cabin, written by Harriet Beecher Stowe, was published in 1852. The tale, which sold more than 300,000 copies in its first year, vividly portrayed the cruel effects of slavery on both slaves and masters in the South.

Sectional Crisis

91. During the first half of the nineteenth century, Congress fiercely debated whether slavery should be extended to the western territories. Identify the following legislation.

    A. In 1819, there were 11 free states and 11 slave states in the United States. This 1820 measure admitted Missouri as a slave state and Maine as a free state, preserving the balance. It prohibited slavery north of 36° 30' latitude in states created from the Louisiana Territory.

    B. This proposal, which was defeated by Congress, stated that slavery would be banned forever in any territory acquired from the war with Mexico.

    C. California's request to be admitted as a free state led to new conflicts over the extension of slavery. In response, these five laws were passed: (1) admission of California as a free state; (2) organization of the New Mexico Territory under popular sovereignty—allowing a vote of the citizens of the territory to decide the issue of slavery; (3) organization of the Utah Territory on the same basis as the New Mexico Territory; (4) the Fugitive Slave Act; (5) abolition of the slave trade in the District of Columbia.

    D. This measure extended the principle of popular sovereignty to the organization of territories in the Great Plains, effectively repealing the 1820 legislation mentioned above.

92. The Fugitive Slave Act of 1850 heightened the anger of abolitionists. How can it be argued that the law violated the Bill of Rights?

93. Why did abolitionists react negatively to President Franklin Pierce's support for the Ostend Manifesto?

94. Missouri slave Dred Scott sued for his freedom because he had been taken into the free areas of Illinois and the Wisconsin Territory for several years. Why did the Supreme Court's decision in *Dred Scott v. Sanford* (1857) enrage abolitionists?

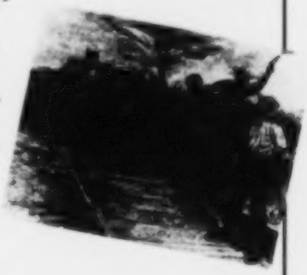
95. How did the *Dred Scott* decision challenge the Democrats' belief that popular sovereignty could decide the issue of slavery in the territories?

96. During the 1858 Illinois Senate race, Republican Abraham Lincoln and Democrat Stephen Douglas held a series of debates. Lincoln challenged Douglas to reconcile popular sovereignty with the *Dred Scott* decision. How did Douglas's "Freeport Doctrine" drive southerners away from the Democratic party?

97. National politics had splintered into four very different factions by 1860. In the presidential election, Republican Abraham Lincoln won the majority of electoral votes, but only a plurality of the popular vote. Name the other candidates, their parties, and the regions in which they were strongest.

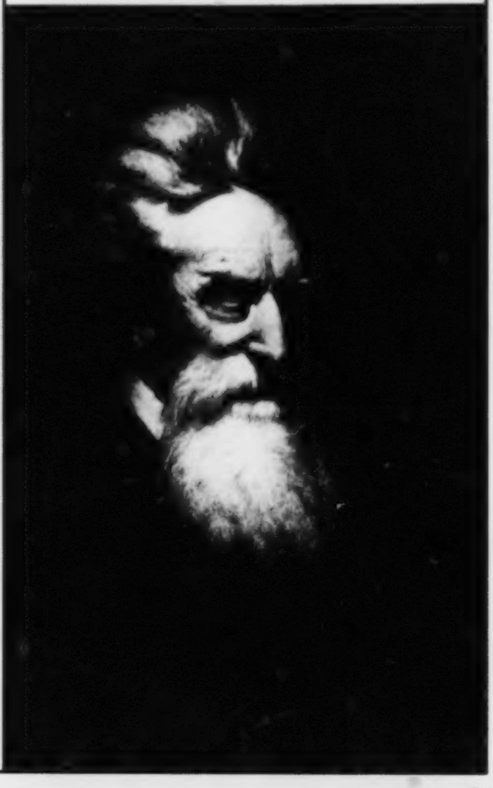
Civil War

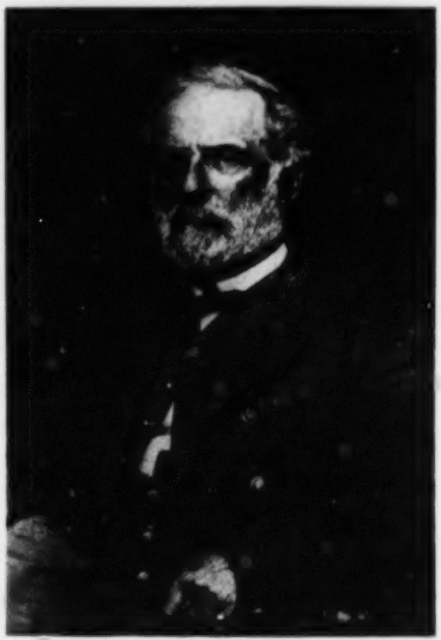
98. On December 20, 1860, South Carolina became the first state to leave the union. Six other states had joined South Carolina by February 1861. Name them.



Ferries brought voters to Kansas from Missouri to elect a proslavery legislature in 1855. In protest, antislavery forces elected their own legislature and adopted an antislavery constitution. Violence between the factions became known as "Bleeding Kansas."

In October 1859, John Brown launched a raid on the federal arsenal at Harpers Ferry (in present-day West Virginia), hoping to spark a slave revolt. Federal troops, led by Colonel Robert E. Lee, quickly captured the rebels. Brown was tried for treason against Virginia and hanged, becoming an abolitionist martyr.





General Robert E. Lee turned down Lincoln's offer of the command of Union forces and resigned his commission in the U.S. Army to return to his native Virginia in 1861. Throughout most of the Civil War, he commanded the Army of Northern Virginia. Not until February 1865 was he made commander of all Confederate armies.

99. In February 1861, representatives from the seceding southern states met in Montgomery, Alabama. Which of the following actions was *not* taken during this convention?

    A. The states adopted the name Confederate States of America and drafted a constitution.

    B. Jefferson Davis was elected provisional president.

    C. The states signed a treaty of alliance with Spain.

    D. The importation of Africans from foreign nations was outlawed.

100. The Civil War began on April 12, 1861, with the bombardment of what federal garrison by Confederate troops?

101. After the Confederate capture of Fort Sumter, Lincoln called on states loyal to the Union to send troops to end the revolt.

    A. Name the four states that joined the Confederacy in response.

    B. Name the states that remained loyal to the Union, despite their slave populations.

    C. Name the new state, admitted to the Union in 1863, that was created when its citizens refused to follow the rest of the state in joining the Confederacy.

Answer questions 102-103 using the chart below.

Resources of the Union and Confederacy, 1861

	Union	Confederacy
Total population	22,000,000	9,000,000 *
Manufacturing establishments	110,000	18,000
Railroad mileage	22,000	9,000
		*Includes 3,500,000 slaves

102. Which of the following conclusions can you draw from the chart?

    A. The Union could transport troops and supplies more easily than the Confederacy.

    B. The Confederacy had the advantage of defending its own territory.

    C. The Union profited from faster communication between its generals and armies.

103. In April 1862, the Confederate Congress passed the first national draft in American history. The U.S. Congress did not enact its first draft law until March 1863. What evidence on the chart explains why the South resorted to conscription so quickly?

104. Which of the following advantages belonged to the Union and which belonged to the Confederacy?

    A. the strategic advantage of being on the defensive

    B. more experienced soldiers and officers

    C. a larger merchant marine and navy

    D. a more developed banking system

105. What military tactic did the Union use to cut off exports and imports to the South?

106. The Confederacy had cause for optimism after a resounding victory in the first major battle of the war in July 1861. Name it.

107. From 1862 to 1863, Union forces waged successful campaigns in the western theater of operations. Identify the sites of the battles described below.

    A. In February 1862, General Ulysses S. Grant captured these two Confederate forts, gaining access to the Tennessee and Cumberland Rivers.

    B. In April 1862, Commander David Farragut bombarded and captured this vital Confederate port.

    C. The Union gained control of the entire Mississippi River when, after a bloody six-week siege, this city fell on July 4, 1863.

    D. Given command of all the western armies in October 1863, Grant launched an attack on General Braxton Bragg. In November, Union victory in this city allowed General William Tecumseh Sherman to begin his march through Georgia in the spring.

108. Identify the sites of the following battles in the eastern theater of the war.

    A. Confederate General Thomas "Stonewall" Jackson defeated Union forces in this region from March to June 1862.

    B. Confederate Generals Jackson and James Longstreet defeated Union forces at this Virginia creek in August 1862.

    C. In the bloodiest single day of the war, a technical Union victory at this Maryland creek, in September 1862, helped convince Great Britain not to grant official recognition to the Confederacy.

109. Did the following political and economic transformations occur in the Confederacy or in the Union during the Civil War?

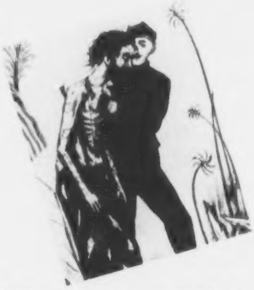
    A. In many areas the writ of habeas corpus was suspended and **martial law** was imposed to keep order.

    B. New immigrants swelled the ranks of the army.

    C. Women entered new roles taking care of farms and businesses and filling posts in the government bureaucracy, which expanded to manage the war effort.

    D. Inflation soared as the government printed more and more currency to finance the war.

General Ulysses S. Grant earned the nickname "unconditional surrender" with his victory at Fort Donelson, Tennessee. He was given command of all Union forces in March 1864. Grant's war of attrition—inflicting so many casualties on the Confederate army that it could no longer be replenished—cost thousands of Union lives as well, but eventually defeated the South.



This soldier from a Confederate prison camp at Andersonville, Georgia, shows the effects of prison camp life. Of about 600,000 Civil War deaths, almost 50,000 were in prison camps, and more than 350,000 were due to diseases.

President Abraham Lincoln, in his 1863 "Gettysburg Address," expressed the hope that Union soldiers had not died in vain, but had given their lives so that "government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth."

110. What type of tax was passed by the U.S. Congress for the first time in August 1861 to help finance the war?

111. President Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation, which took effect on January 1, 1863, did all of the following *except:*

   A. enable the North to augment its army with black troops

   B. free slaves in the Confederate states not under Union control

   C. free slaves in the Union states

   D. increase European sympathy for the North

112. After this three-day battle, the opposing forces had sustained more than 50,000 casualties, and the Confederacy never again penetrated Union territory. Name the site and dates of this battle.

113. In the North, strong sentiment for peace made Lincoln's election to the presidency in 1864 seem unlikely.

   A. Who were the Copperheads?

   B. Whom did the Democrats nominate to run against Lincoln, and what was the Democratic position on the war?

   C. What event lifted Union spirits and helped Lincoln win the election?

114. After General Sherman's capture of Atlanta, he and his soldiers cut a path of destruction through Georgia to Savannah. By what name is this campaign known?

115. In the final large campaign of the war, the armies of Lee and Grant faced each other in Virginia.

   A. What rail center south of Richmond, the Confederate capital, did Grant besiege from June 1864 to April 1865, resulting in the fall of both cities on April 2, 1865?

   B. When and where did Lee surrender to Grant?

116. What was the fate of Confederate President Jefferson Davis?

Answer question 117 using the following excerpt from Abraham Lincoln's "Second Inaugural Address" in 1865.

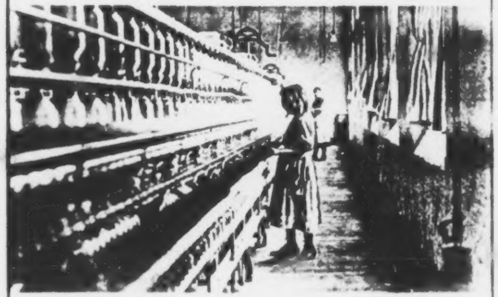
> With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, to care for him who shall have borne the battle and for his widow and his orphan, to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations.

117. What type of policy toward the South did Lincoln advocate?

118. What event on April 14, 1865, stopped Lincoln from instituting his policy?

3. *Industrializing America (1865-1919)*

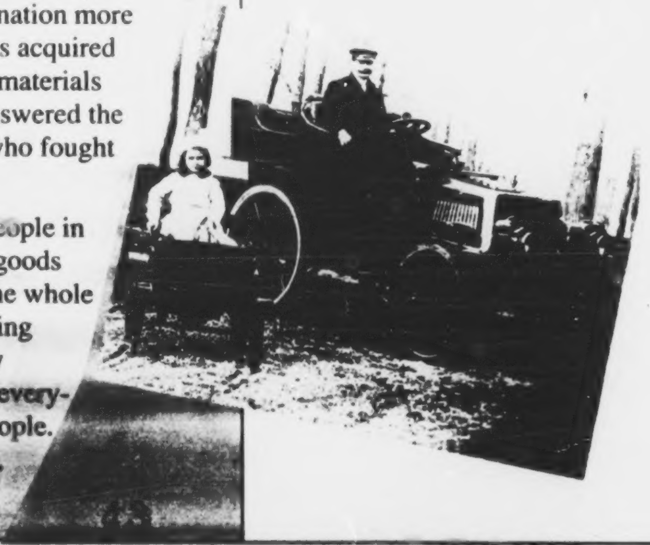
After the turmoil of the Civil War and Reconstruction, Americans took up the challenge of transforming the United States from a rural, agricultural nation to an urban, industrial giant. The marriage of industrialization and urbanization in the late nineteenth century affected every group in American society—for better and for worse. Industrialization gave farmers machinery and a national transportation system, while urbanization created new markets. Factories employed immigrants who poured into the United States. Inventors and entrepreneurs became millionaires, often returning their wealth to their communities through endowments for libraries, universities, and parks.



Yet along with new opportunities came new hardships. Farmers and merchants were at the mercy of powerful railroad companies that set high shipping rates. Workers lost control of their daily tasks as mass production demanded increasing division of labor. Immigrants left dark, rat-infested tenements to work ten hours a day, six days a week in dangerous, unhealthy factories. The instability of the business cycle and the greed of "robber barons" and enormous corporate trusts drove many smaller entrepreneurs out of business. As the power of corporations grew, so did their use of bribery and graft to influence politicians.

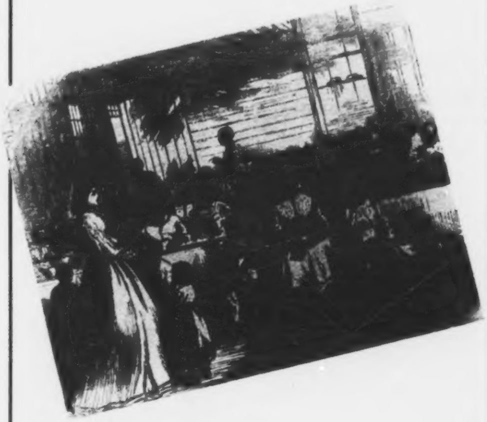
By the 1890s, the problems accompanying industrialization and urbanization brought cries of outrage from all levels of American society. Farmers' alliances, workers' unions, and middle class reform organizations all demanded that the government intervene to protect Americans from the abuses of corporations and the harshness of city life. In the early twentieth century, government began to accept more responsibility for regulating business and ensuring the welfare of its citizens.

By 1900, the United States led the world in industrial production. American economic power gave the nation more influence in world politics, as the United States acquired overseas colonies to provide markets and raw materials for its industry. In 1917, the U.S. economy answered the challenge to arm, clothe, and feed the troops who fought "the war to end wars."

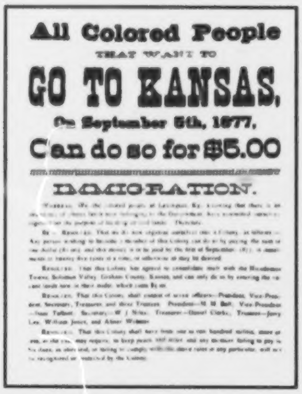


Understanding economic history—the ways people in the past produced, distributed, and consumed goods and services—is important to understanding the whole of American history. As you study the following chapter, consider how changes in the economy changed the political system, the arts, and the everyday lives of farmers, laborers, and business people.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



Blacks quickly filled schools started by the Freedmen's Bureau and Reconstruction governments in the South. The extension of free education to blacks and poor whites was perhaps the greatest achievement of these governments. They also built railroads, subsidized industry, and extended the legal rights of women.



All Colored People
THAT WANT TO
GO TO KANSAS,
On September 5th, 1877,
Can do so for $5.00

IMMIGRATION.

An 1877 handbill advertised the establishment of a black community in Graham County, Kansas. Disillusioned by the failure of Reconstruction to guarantee their civil rights, thousands of blacks earned the name "Exodusters" by their exodus from the South to the dusty plains of Kansas.

Reconstruction

1. As early as December 1863, President Abraham Lincoln announced a plan to reconstruct Confederate states under Union control. Briefly describe Lincoln's plan.
2. In 1864, Congress refused to recognize southern governments organized under Lincoln's formula. Instead, Republicans in Congress passed a much harsher Reconstruction plan in July 1864. Name this bill and describe Lincoln's reaction to it.
3. Vice President Andrew Johnson of Tennessee became president after Lincoln's assassination.

   A. How did Johnson's Reconstruction plan differ from Lincoln's?

   B. How did Congress react to Johnson's plan?

Answer questions 4-6 using the excerpt below, taken from the reply of Representative Thaddeus Stevens of Pennsylvania to President Johnson's Reconstruction plan.

> They [the Confederate states] have torn their constitutional States into atoms, and built on their foundations fabrics of a totally different character. Dead men cannot raise themselves. Dead States cannot restore their existence "as it was." . . . The future condition of a conquered power depends on the will of the conqueror. They must come in as new states or remain as conquered provinces. Congress . . . is the only power that can act in the matter. . . .
>
> . . . I know of no arrangement so proper for them as territorial governments. There they can learn the principles of freedom and eat the fruit of foul rebellion. . . .
>
> They ought never to be recognized as capable of . . . being counted as valid States, until the Constitution shall have been so amended as to make it what its framers intended; and so as to secure perpetual ascendency to the party of the Union. . . .
>
> . . . If we do not furnish them [freed slaves] with homesteads, and hedge them around with protective laws; if we leave them to the legislation of their late masters, we had better have left them in bondage.

4. With which of the following statements would Stevens and his political faction, the Radical Republicans, agree or disagree?

   A. Congress should govern the Confederate states as territories before allowing them to reenter the union.

   B. The Confederate states were simply in rebellion and had never really left the union, so the president had the right to use his pardoning power to restore them.

   C. The Confederate states were no longer part of the union, and had no viable state governments, so only Congress had the right to set the terms for their readmission to the union.

   D. Congress should take action to maintain a Republican majority.

5. As Thaddeus Stevens advocated, Congress enacted several laws to protect former slaves (freedmen).

   A. What was the purpose of the Freedmen's Bureau, created by Congress in 1865?

   B. What was the main provision of the Civil Rights Act of 1866, passed over President Johnson's veto?

   C. What further action did Congress take to guarantee civil rights, because it feared that the 1866 Civil Rights Act would be ruled unconstitutional?

6. In 1865, a rumor circulated that blacks would receive forty acres and a mule from the Freedmen's Bureau, but proposals for land redistribution were never passed. Would Stevens have been likely to vote for such a proposal?

7. Over Johnson's veto, Congress in March 1867 passed the Reconstruction Act, establishing federal military control of all former Confederate states except Tennessee, which had already been readmitted to the union. Under this act, what three things were former Confederate states required to do to be readmitted?

8. Fearing that Johnson would try to prevent enforcement of its Reconstruction program, the Republican Congress passed the Tenure of Office Act in March 1867.

   A. How did the act limit executive power?

   B. What action did Congress take in February 1868 when it believed that Johnson had violated the act?

9. The Fifteenth Amendment caused a rift between advocates of women's rights and advocates of rights for black Americans, because it did not guarantee women's suffrage. In 1869, the American Equal Rights Association split into two new groups. Name these groups, and briefly explain their positions.

Redemption and the New South

10. Many southerners resented two new groups of people who, in their eyes, were taking over southern politics. Define these two groups:

    A. carpetbaggers

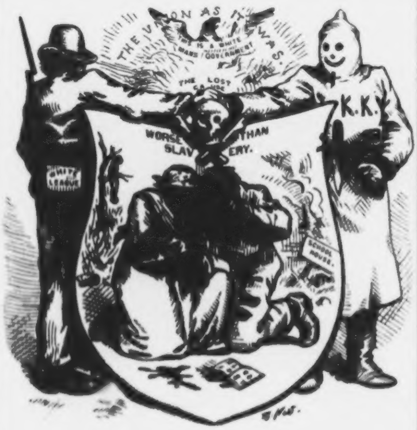
    B. scalawags

11. During the 1860s, southern legislatures passed laws that restricted the rights of freedmen to bear arms, associate freely, and hold certain jobs. Name these laws.

12. Name the organization, founded in Tennessee in 1866, that spread throughout the South, using violence and intimidation to keep blacks and white Republicans from political power.

13. What 1872 act helped white southern Democrats, known as "Redeemers," regain control of politics in the South?

George Washington Carver, an ex-slave who became director of agricultural research at Alabama's Tuskegee Institute, contributed to the diversification of the southern agricultural economy after the Civil War by developing new uses for peanuts, soybeans, and sweet potatoes.


THE U ON AS IT WAS.
THIS IS A WHITE MANS GOVERNMENT
THE LOST CAUSE
WORSE THAN SLAVERY.
K.K.K.
WHITE LEAGUE
SCHOOL HOUSE.

Southern secret societies used violence to promote white supremacy and to prevent blacks from voting. In 1870 and 1871, Congress passed the Force Acts, which prohibited interference with voting rights, provided federal supervision of elections, and allowed the president to use troops and to suspend the writ of habeas corpus to enforce voting rights.

14. In the presidential election of 1876, Democrat Samuel Tilden won the majority of popular votes, but was one vote short in the electoral college of defeating Republican Rutherford B. Hayes. In some southern states both parties claimed victory.

    A. What was the decision of the congressional commission appointed to investigate the disputed returns?

    B. What was the "Compromise of 1877," engineered to gain Democratic support for the election settlement?

15. During the 1880s, southerners began to promote a "New South." Which of the following was *not* part of the New South movement?

    A. decline of the tobacco industry

    B. investment in manufacturing

    C. expansion of the railroad network

    D. growth of the lumber industry

16. After the devastation of the Civil War, the system of sharecropping partially replaced the plantation. Which of the characteristics below is *not* true of sharecropping?

    A. Sharecroppers cultivated someone else's land, paying the landowner one-third to two-thirds of their crop.

    B. Most sharecroppers eventually bought the land they worked and became independent farmers.

    C. Until their crops came in each year, sharecroppers often had to live on credit from merchants who charged high interest.

    D. Many southern states allowed merchants to seize future crops in payment for sharecroppers' debts.

17. Identify the following ways black Americans were denied civil rights after Reconstruction.

    A. These laws codified segregation of the races.

    B. In these cases, the Civil Rights Act of 1875, which had banned segregation in privately owned facilities open to the public, was declared unconstitutional by the Supreme Court.

    C. In this case, the Supreme Court upheld the "separate but equal" doctrine, legalizing segregation in public facilities.

18. After Reconstruction, southern states began to create special laws to restrict the voting rights of black citizens. How did each of the following methods prevent blacks from voting?

    A. poll taxes

    B. literacy tests

    C. grandfather clauses

Conquering the West

19. Briefly describe the difference in federal policies toward Native Americans before and after the Civil War.

20. The intrusion of miners into the Great Plains caused violent conflicts with Native American tribes in the region. Identify the Native American leaders involved in the following events.

    A. In response to the influx of miners into Colorado, the Cheyenne and Arapaho waged war with white settlers until 1864, when 450 Native Americans were massacred at Sand Creek.

    B. In protest of the construction of the Bozeman Trail, linking Montana mining towns, the Sioux battled the U.S. army from 1865 to 1868.

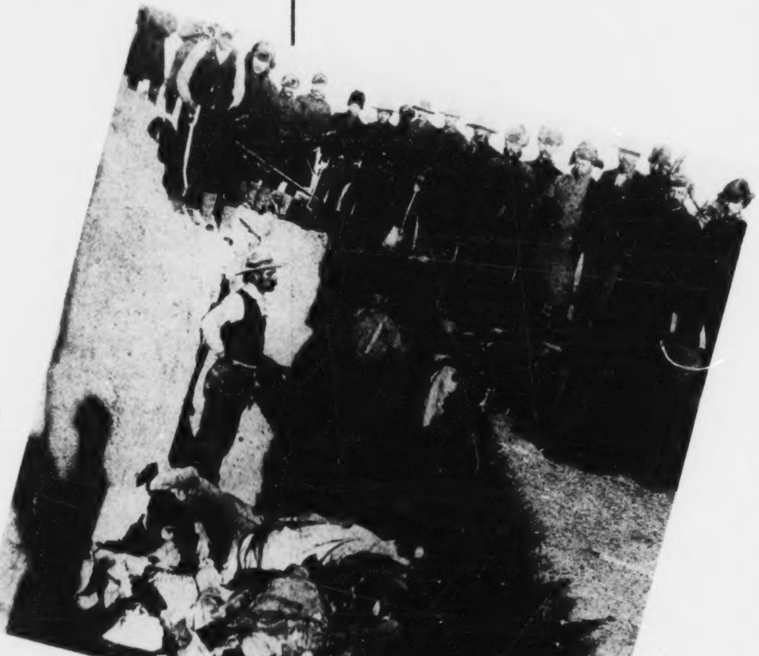
    C. The Sioux rallied their forces to oppose prospectors during the 1875 gold rush in the Black Hills of the Dakota Territory. In June 1876, Colonel George Armstrong Custer's force of more than 250 U.S. troops was annihilated by 2,500 Sioux warriors near Montana's Little Big Horn River.

21. Name the author whose book, *A Century of Dishonor* (1881), chronicled the history of broken treaties and abuse of Native Americans by the U.S. government. Her work influenced the government to reform its policy toward Native Americans.

22. Name the 1887 legislation that tried to end tribal life by dividing tribally held reservation lands into plots to be distributed to individuals. All remaining land was then sold to white settlers. It also gave U.S. citizenship to Native Americans who accepted the land.

23. In the 1880s, a religious revival based on the "Ghost Dance" swept through the Great Plains tribes. What did they believe would happen if they performed this ritual dance?

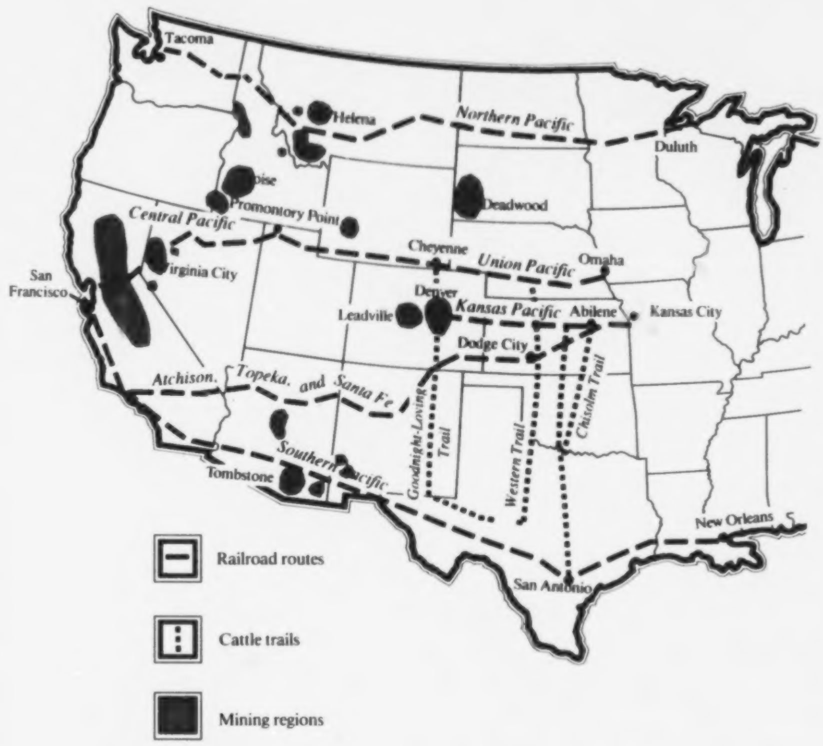
In 1874, thousands of buffalo hides in Dodge City, Kansas, awaited shipment to the East. Before white settlers and the railroads arrived, millions of buffalo roamed the Great Plains. By 1900, only a few hundred remained, wiping out the main form of subsistence for the Great Plains tribes.



A mass grave held the bodies of more than 200 Sioux men, women, and children killed by U.S. cavalry at Wounded Knee, South Dakota, in 1890. Settlers in the area feared the Sioux Ghost Dance movement and called on the troops for assistance. The massacre ended three centuries of "Indian Wars" in America.

Answer questions 24-25 using the map below.

Western Railroads, Cattle Trails, & Mining Centers


Tacoma
Helena
Northern Pacific
Duluth
Boise
Promontory Point
Deadwood
Central Pacific
Cheyenne
Union Pacific
Omaha
San Francisco
Virginia City
Denver
Leadville
Kansas Pacific
Abilene
Kansas City
Dodge City
Atchison, Topeka, and Santa Fe
Goodnight-Loving Trail
Western Trail
Chisolm Trail
Southern Pacific
Tombstone
New Orleans
San Antonio
Railroad routes
Cattle trails
Mining regions

24. Identify the following mining centers.

    A. In 1859, the discovery of gold brought a flood of more than 100,000 fortune-seekers with the slogan "Pike's Peak or Bust." They founded this city in 1860.

    B. The richest mining strike in U.S. history, the Comstock Lode, yielded more than $300 million in silver and gold from 1859 to 1879, and led to the founding of this town.

    C. This rowdy boom town, known as the home of Wild Bill Hickock and Calamity Jane, sprang up when gold was discovered in the Black Hills in 1874.

    D. The discovery of silver in the 1870s brought prospectors to this town, which became known for its lawlessness. It was the site of the legendary gunfight at the OK Corral matching Wyatt Earp and Doc Holliday against the Clanton family.

25. What business was most important to the growth of the cities of Cheyenne, Abilene, and Dodge City? Explain your answer.

26. Name the author who romanticized life in western mining camps in *The Luck of Roaring Camp* (1870).

27. A rush of farmers to the West occurred after the Civil War, as the federal government distributed land to settlers and speculators. Describe the provisions of the 1862 Homestead Act.

28. Why did cattle ranchers have to abandon open range ranching once farmers arrived on the Great Plains in large numbers?

29. Name the 1862 federal legislation that gave each state 30,000 acres of public land for each U.S. senator and representative, to be sold to endow colleges specializing in agriculture and engineering.

30. Settlers who illegally entered Oklahoma Territory and claimed land before it was opened to settlement by whites in 1889 were called _______________.

31. Mining, ranching, and farming brought thousands of settlers into the West, making it an integral part of the American nation.

    A. In what year did the Superintendent of the Census declare that settlement had reached such an extent that "there can hardly be said to be a frontier line"?

    B. Which states entered the union between 1865 and 1919?

From Farm to Factory

32. Railroads were vital to the industrialization of America. Which of the following was *not* a factor in improving railroad transportation after the Civil War?

    A. A standard gauge for all U.S. rail lines was adopted.

    B. Interstate lines were run by the federal government.

    C. Steel rails replaced weaker iron rails.

    D. Small railroads were consolidated into larger rail systems.

33. What did the American Railway Association do in 1883 to standardize scheduling and improve railway efficiency?

34. Railroad construction required enormous amounts of land and capital. What incentives did the federal government give railroads to encourage expansion after the Civil War?

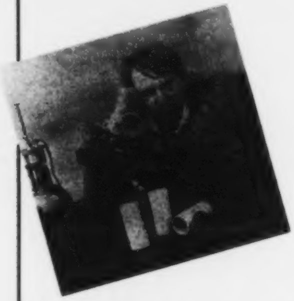
35. Competition in the railroad industry led to practices such as charging less per mile for long hauls than for short hauls and offering secret rebates to large shippers.

    A. What action did merchants and farmers take to stop these policies?

    B. What was the Supreme Court's ruling in *Munn v. Illinois* (1877), which involved the legality of state legislatures regulating business practices and setting maximum rates?

36. In the case of *Wabash, St. Louis & Pacific Railway Co. v. Illinois* (1886), the Supreme Court held that states could not regulate interstate commerce. This prompted Congress to pass the Interstate Commerce Act in 1887. List the provisions of this act.

In 1877, Chief Joseph led the Nez Percé people on a thousand-mile march from Oregon to Montana, trying to reach Canada. The tribe eventually surrendered and was sent to Oklahoma. Chief Joseph explained: "My heart is sick and sad . . . I will fight no more forever."



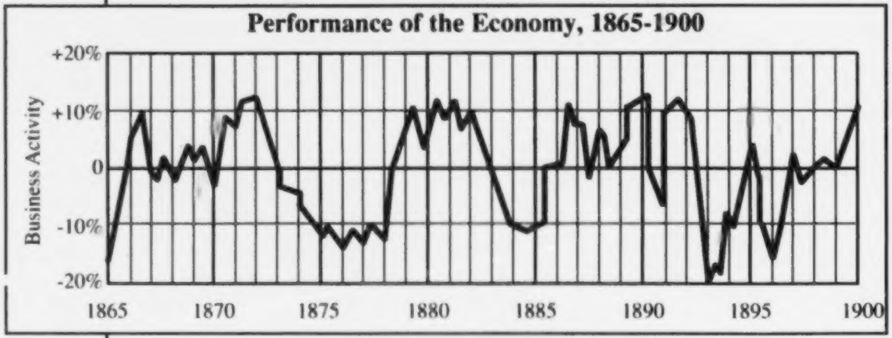
Thomas Alva Edison patented more than 1,000 inventions, including the phonograph (1877) and the incandescent light (1879). His Edison Electric Light Company built the world's first large electric generating plant in 1882 in New York City. It later merged with other companies to form the General Electric Company.

37. Reliable communication lines were also important to the industrializing nation.

   A. What two companies merged in 1866 to create a nationwide communication network?

   B. Who patented the telephone in 1876?

Answer question 38 using the graph below.



Performance of the Economy, 1865-1900

38. What characteristic of the U.S. economy during the late nineteenth century does the graph illustrate?

39. As business leaders searched for ways to survive in a fluctuating economy, they turned from **partnerships** to **corporations** to limit liability from business failure. They also expanded through **vertical** and **horizontal integration.** Are the following examples of vertical or horizontal integration?

   A. In the 1880s, Gustavus Swift's Chicago-based corporation developed the refrigerated railroad car and acquired control of all aspects of meat production, including livestock, slaughterhouses, and distribution.

   B. In 1870, John D. Rockefeller formed the Standard Oil Company. By 1879, through acquisition of competing refineries, he controlled 90 percent of the American oil refining industry.

   C. In the 1880s and 1890s, Andrew Carnegie extended his control from steel mills to include iron ore deposits, railroads, and ship lines.

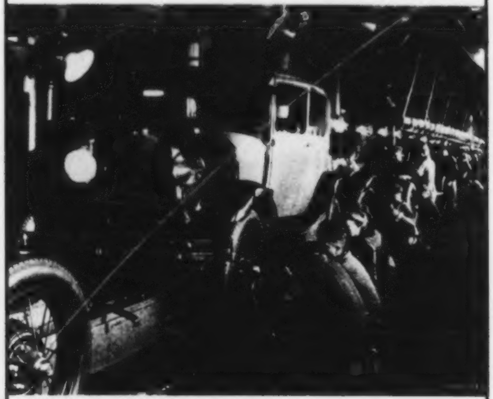
40. Name the philosophy developed by England's Herbert Spencer, and promoted in the United States by William Graham Sumner, that justified aggression and "survival of the fittest" in business and society.

41. New methods of selling products developed in the nineteenth century. Name the marketing innovations described below.

   A. In 1859, the Great Atlantic and Pacific Tea Company (A & P) started a business with branch stores in many cities.

   B. In 1872, Chicago's Aaron Montgomery Ward began using this method to sell goods to rural customers.

   C. In 1876, Philadelphia's John C. Wanamaker offered a wide variety of merchandise under one roof.



The moving assembly line was used by Henry Ford in 1913 to produce his Model T. Ford wanted to "democratize" the auto by using mass production to put prices within the reach of most Americans. Ford also doubled his workers' buying power by instituting a minimum wage of $5 for an eight-hour workday.

42. Financial panics and depressions led competing companies to work together to control production and prices. Identify the following business combinations.

    A. informal agreement in which several corporations divide business among themselves to lessen competition

    B. legal arrangement, pioneered by John D. Rockefeller, whereby several corporations turn their operations over to a board of trustees, which supervises them all

    C. organization that holds controlling interest in several corporations

43. By 1900, many state governments had outlawed trusts. In 1890, Congress passed the Sherman Antitrust Act, making combinations in restraint of trade illegal. Which of the following is *not* true of the Sherman Antitrust Act?

    A. It was often used against labor unions by applying its provisions to strikes that affected trade.

    B. It was declared unconstitutional by the Supreme Court.

    C. Its power was curtailed by *U.S. v. E.C. Knight Company* (1895), in which the Supreme Court held that a sugar manufacturer was not engaged in trade, and so was not covered under the act.

    D. Its provisions were vague and not clearly defined.

44. While state and federal governments were beginning to exert some control over U.S. business, workers were organizing labor unions to gain more control in the new industrial workplace. Identify the unions described below.

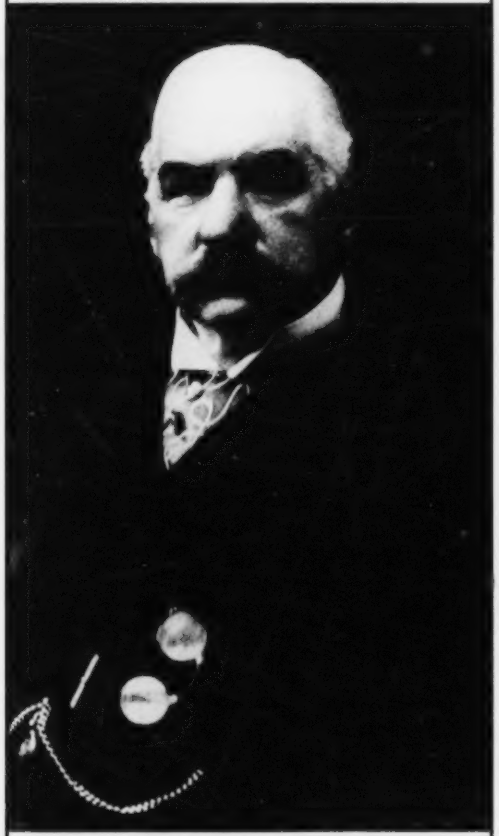
    A. Founded in 1869, this union was open to all workers, including women, blacks, and unskilled laborers. It opposed the use of strikes and favored the eight-hour work day.

    B. Founded in 1881 and led by Samuel Gompers, this federation of national **craft unions** limited its membership to skilled workers and for many years failed to organize blacks and women. It advocated an eight-hour work day and **collective bargaining,** and it accepted the use of strikes.

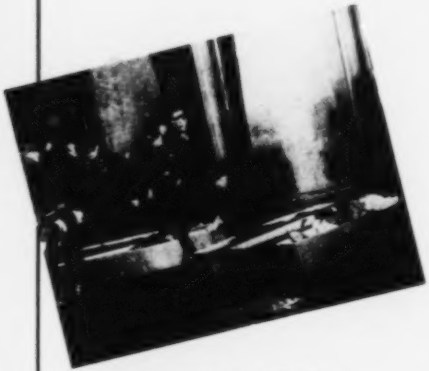
    C. Founded in 1900, this **industrial union** was made up primarily of women in the garment industry.

    D. Founded in 1905, using the slogan "One Big Union," this union supported **general strikes** and advocated socialist democracy instead of capitalism.

45. In 1886, an act of violence turned public opinion strongly against the labor movement. Briefly describe this event.



Financier J. P. Morgan led the corporate merger movement of the 1890s, as the United States moved from **industrial** to **financial capitalism.** In 1901, Morgan merged several steel companies to create U.S. Steel, then the world's largest corporation.



Women jumped to their deaths on the sidewalk below New York City's Triangle Shirtwaist Company in 1911, as they tried to escape a raging fire. The Triangle fire led to the creation of the New York State Factory Commission and passage of dozens of laws to improve factory safety.

46. The late nineteenth century was an era of antagonistic relations between labor and management. Identify the following strikes.

    A. President Hayes mobilized federal troops against a massive strike that affected some two-thirds of the nation's railways.

    B. Steelworkers protested wage cuts at a Carnegie plant. Before national guard troops arrived and arrested strikers, violence between workers and a hired police force led to several deaths.

    C. Workers at a railroad car plant protested wage cuts and company control of housing and stores. The company used an **injunction** to prevent the union from obstructing the railways and mails. President Cleveland sent troops to end the strike.

47. In 1902, President Theodore Roosevelt established the federal government as an arbiter in labor disputes affecting the public interest when he negotiated the settlement of a dispute between management and representatives of what union?

Urban Life and Culture

48. As U.S. industry grew, so did America's cities. In 1860, less than 20 percent of Americans lived in cities. In what year did the Census Bureau first report that more than 50 percent of Americans were city dwellers?

49. The urban environment changed in the late ninteenth century to accommodate the rapid influx of people and businesses.

    A. What form of transportation, developed in the 1880s, curbed the pollution caused by horse-drawn streetcars and allowed people to commute from growing suburbs to work in the city?

    B. What type of building, developed in the 1880s, allowed more businesses to occupy crowded cities?

50. Name the pioneering landscape architect who helped make the public park an important feature in American urban life. He designed New York City's Central Park as well as the grounds of the U.S. Capitol.

51. Immigration greatly influenced the growth of U.S. cities. Immigration to the United States peaked between 1901 and 1910, when more than 8.5 million arrived. Which of the following is *not* true of immigration to the United States before World War I?

    A. Most immigrants settled in outlying suburbs, leaving older city neighborhoods for native-born Americans.

    B. Before the 1880s, most immigrants to the United States came from northern and western Europe.

    C. During and after the 1880s, the proportion of immigrants from southern and eastern Europe increased dramatically.

    D. Immigrants from the same region tended to band together in certain locations and occupations.

52. In 1882, Congress enacted the Chinese Exclusion Act. Describe its main provision.

53. Identify the following types of entertainment, which occupied the leisure time of America's citizens before World War I.

A. Florenz Ziegfeld was the most famous promoter of these variety shows, which included singing, dancing, comedy, and magic.

B. P.T. Barnum founded his version of this traveling tent show in 1871, calling it "the greatest show on earth."

C. Starting in New York state in 1874, these summer tent shows took entertainment and educational lectures to rural America.

54. Identify the following authors of the **realist** movement.

A. In *Sister Carrie* (1900) and *An American Tragedy* (1925), this author exposed the social problems of America during its transition from a rural to an urban society.

B. This author drew comparisons between the European and American upper classes in *The American* (1877) and *Daisy Miller* (1878).

C. In novels such as *The Rise of Silas Lapham* (1885) and *A Hazard of New Fortunes* (1890), this author depicted the problems of prosperous urban families.

D. This writer discussed the problems of New York's wealthy families in novels such as *The House of Mirth* (1905) and *The Age of Innocence* (1920).

55. Match the following painters of the late nineteenth century with their descriptions.

A. the only American to exhibit paintings in the Paris Impressionist shows of the 1870s and 1880s	a. Thomas Eakins
B. showed the human body realistically in works such *The Gross Clinic*	b. Mary Cassatt
C. painted America's Atlantic coast, capturing the relationship between sailors and the sea in paintings such as *Life Line* and *Northeaster*	c. Winslow Homer

Gilded Age Politics

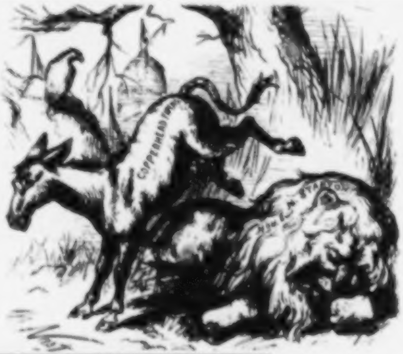
56. Mark Twain referred to the late nineteenth century as the "Gilded Age" because he believed that wealth was gilding the corruption of American society. Briefly describe the following political scandals during the Grant administration, which supported Twain's claim.

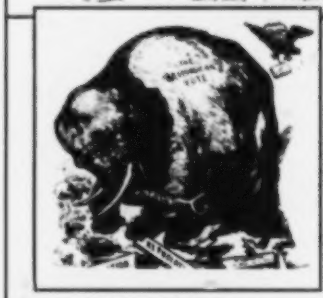
A. Crédit Mobilier (1872)

B. Salary Grab (1873)

C. Whiskey Ring (1875)

Samuel Clemens was a riverboat captain turned author. Under his pen name, Mark Twain, he wrote about life along the Mississippi River in works such as *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* (1876). Twain was one of many "local color" writers, who described their regions of the country in vivid, realistic detail.





The elephant and donkey as symbols of the Republican and Democratic parties were created by cartoonist Thomas Nast. Nast, a German immigrant, was one of the nation's foremost political cartoonists in the nineteenth century.

57. Corruption occurred at the city level through the workings of **political machines.**

    A. How did machines gain the loyalty of the poor and immigrants, on whose votes they depended?

    B. What were the leaders of the political machines called?

    C. How did the political machines make money?

    D. Who led the Tammany Hall machine in New York City during the 1860s, until convicted of stealing millions from the city?

58. A series of hardships befell farmers in the South and West in the 1870s and 1880s, which led them to political action. Which of the following was *not* among these hardships?

    A. Railroads often charged high rates for shipping farm products.

    B. **Deflation** hurt farmers who borrowed money and had to pay it back later with more expensive dollars.

    C. Federal subsidies decreased incentives to grow cash crops.

    D. Increased crop production led to a sharp decline in prices.

59. A social organization for farmers, called the ____________, was founded in 1867, and spread throughout rural America in the 1870s. It established cooperatives to buy and sell farm products.

60. In 1891, various farmers' organizations formed the People's party, also known as the Populists.

    A. Where and when was the first national convention of the Populists held?

    B. Who was the first Populist candidate for president, and what was the outcome of the election?

61. Which of the following was *not* part of the Populists' platform in the 1892 presidential election?

    A. a shorter workday

    B. a law banning a graduated income tax

    C. democratic reforms including the **initiative, referendum,** and direct election of senators

    D. government ownership and operation of transportation and communication lines

62. The issue of currency reform preoccupied farmers and politicians for many years after the Civil War.

    A. What were the provisions of the 1873 Coinage Act?

    B. What was the major goal of the Greenback Labor party of the 1870s and 1880s?

    C. How did Congress respond to pressure from farmers and western silver mining interests in 1878 and 1890?

    D. Why did President Grover Cleveland call a special session of Congress to repeal the Sherman Silver Purchase Act in 1893?

Answer questions 63-64 using the excerpt below from William Jennings Bryan's "Cross of Gold" speech, which helped him capture the 1896 Democratic presidential nomination.

> There are two ideas of government. There are those who believe that if you will only legislate to make the well-to-do prosperous, their prosperity will leak through on those below. The Democratic idea, however, has been that if you legislate to make the masses prosperous, their prosperity will find its way up through every class which rests upon them.
>
> You come to us and tell us that the great cities are in favor of the gold standard; we reply that the great cities rest upon our broad and fertile prairies. Burn down your cities and leave our farms, and your cities will spring up again as if by magic; but destroy our farms and the grass will grow in the streets of every city in the country. . . .
>
> . . . If they dare to come out in the open field and defend the gold standard as a good thing, we will fight them to the uttermost. Having behind us the producing masses of this nation and the world, supported by the commercial interests, the laboring interests and the toilers everywhere, we will answer their demand for a gold standard by saying to them: You shall not press down upon the brow of labor this crown of thorns, you shall not crucify mankind upon a cross of gold.

63. At the convention, the Democrats were divided between those who favored a gold standard and those who favored free and unlimited coinage of silver. With Bryan's nomination, which faction won?

64. What does Bryan believe is the most vital sector of the economy?

65. What was the reaction of the Populists to Bryan's nomination?

66. What was the outcome of the 1896 election?

The Progressive Era

67. While Populism lost influence after 1896, a new reform movement, called Progressivism, was gaining support throughout the nation. Which of the following statements is *not* true of the Progressives?

    A. Most Progressives were middle-class city dwellers.

    B. Progressives included both Democrats and Republicans.

    C. Progressives believed in the ability of individuals and government to improve society.

    D. Progressives opposed immigration.

    E. Progressives wanted to create a more democratic nation.

68. **Muckrakers** encouraged the Progressive movement by exposing the abuses of big business and government. Identify the following prominent muckrakers.

    A. In *The Octopus* (1901), this novelist attacked the power of the railroads.

    B. In *History of the Standard Oil Company* (1903), this author exposed John D. Rockefeller's oil monopoly.

    C. In *The Shame of the Cities* (1904), this author detailed the corruption in many city governments.

    D. In *Following the Color Line* (1908), this author reported on racial discrimination in the United States.

"Coxey's Army" marched into Washington, D.C., in 1894 to demand government relief for the unemployed. Its leader, Jacob Coxey, advocated that money be issued to stimulate the economy and that the government create jobs with a road-construction program. Coxey and others were arrested.

Kansas Populist Mary Lease is famous for urging farmers to "raise less corn and more hell!" Women played a significant role in the People's party, which supported women's suffrage in its platform.

69. Name the pioneering social worker who, in 1889, opened Hull House, a **settlement house** for Chicago's poor.

Answer questions 70-71 using the following excerpts by Booker T. Washington and W. E. B. Du Bois.

> No race can prosper till it learns that there is as much dignity in tilling a field as in writing a poem. It is at the bottom of life we must begin and not at the top. Nor should we permit our grievances to overshadow our opportunities. . . .
>
> The wisest among my race understand that the agitation of questions of social equality is the extremest folly, and that progress in the enjoyment of all the privileges that will come to us must be the result of severe and constant struggle rather than of artificial forcing. No race that has anything to contribute to the markets of the world is long in any degree ostracized. It is important and right that all privileges of the law be ours, but it is vastly more important that we be prepared for the exercise of those privileges. (Booker T. Washington, 1895)

> Mr. Washington distinctly asks that black people give up, at least for the present, three things:
>
> First, political power; second, insistence on civil rights; third, higher education of Negro youth; and concentrate all their energies on industrial education, the accumulation of wealth, and the conciliation of the South. . . .
>
> He is striving nobly to make Negro artisans, businessmen, and property owners; but it is utterly impossible, under modern competitive methods, for workingmen and property owners to defend their rights and exist without the right of suffrage. (W. E. B. Du Bois, 1903)

70. Why did Washington's speech, entitled "The Road to Negro Progress," become known as the "Atlanta Compromise"?

71. Based on these excerpts, which author would most likely agree with the following statements?

    A. If blacks do not actively fight for equality, whites will continue to strip away their civil rights.

    B. Hard work and the pursuit of economic success will eventually lead to political power.

    C. Equal suffrage is not an automatic right for blacks, but a privilege which they must earn.

    D. Blacks must focus their energy on abolishing poll taxes.

72. What is the name of the oldest and largest civil rights organization in the United States, founded in 1909 by black and white reformers, including W. E. B. Du Bois?

73. Name the Progressive education reformer who opposed rote memorization and favored learning by doing and education in practical skills.

74. During the Progressive Era, lawyers began to think of the law not as universal and unchanging, but as a reflection of the society.

    A. In what case did the Supreme Court uphold an Oregon law limiting women to a 10-hour working day, basing its ruling on a brief that used environmental evidence, statistics, and reports from experts, rather than legal precedent?

    B. What lawyer won this case, later serving as a Supreme Court justice from 1916 to 1939?

This picture of a young boy who worked in a West Virginia coal mine was taken by photographer Lewis Hine in 1908. Hine worked for the National Child Labor Committee, formed in 1904 to promote child labor laws. Many families could not survive without the wages earned by their children. In the 1890s, about 20 percent of children 10 to 15 years old had jobs.

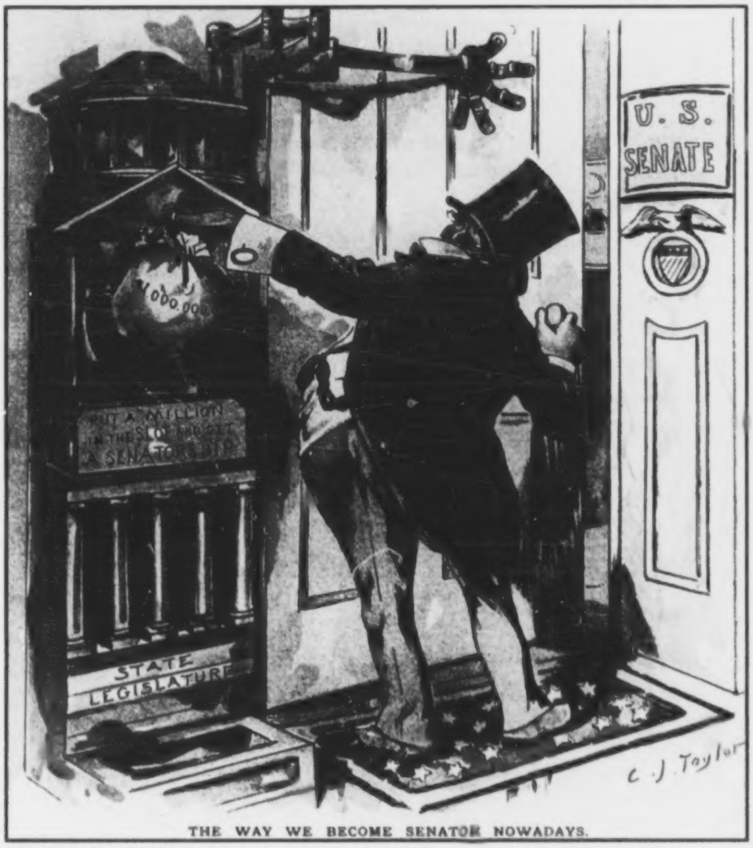
75. Name the organization, led by Florence Kelley, that urged boycotts of companies with unsafe working conditions and lobbied for shorter working hours for women.

76. Progressive reformers gained the adoption of the initiative, referendum, and **recall** in many states. Identify the following political reforms also adopted during the Progressive Era.

   A. This reform allowed voters, instead of party leaders, to choose their party's candidate for office.

   B. This method of voting listed all candidates on the same ballot, printed at public expense, rather than using separate, color-coded ballots printed by political parties.

Answer questions 77-78 using the cartoon below.



THE WAY WE BECOME SENATORS NOWADAYS.

77. What does the cartoon imply about election to the U.S. Senate?

78. What constitutional amendment, supported by many Progressives, sought to correct the problem depicted in the cartoon?

79. With the assassination of President McKinley in September 1901, Theodore Roosevelt became president. Roosevelt initiated a period of "trustbusting" by ordering prosecution of the Northern Securities Company. Briefly explain the Supreme Court's decision in *Northern Securities Company v. United States* (1904).

80. By what name was Theodore Roosevelt's reform program known?

Republican Robert "Fighting Bob" La Follette implemented a model reform program as Wisconsin's governor (1901-1906). Known as the Wisconsin Idea, his program included conservation of natural resources, tax reform, regulation of public utilities and railroads, and the direct primary.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Alice Paul and her National Woman's party adopted a militant approach to the cause of women's suffrage. When President Wilson refused to support a women's suffrage amendment, they picketed the White House. Their cause gained publicity when they were jailed for this protest and force fed while on a hunger strike.

81. Identify the following reform legislation, all passed in 1906.
    A. After reading *The Jungle* (1906), muckraker Upton Sinclair's fact-based novel about unsanitary conditions in meatpacking plants, Roosevelt supported passage of this act to enforce health standards in the meatpacking industry.
    B. This act banned the use of dangerous food additives and misleading drug labeling.
    C. This act gave the Interstate Commerce Commission the power to set reasonable freight rates and to regulate other industries besides railroads.
82. President William Howard Taft, Theodore Roosevelt's hand-picked successor, disappointed many Progressives.
    A. What 1909 act, signed by Taft and opposed by Progressives, raised the tariff on some 500 imports?
    B. What congressional official's power was limited by Progressive members of both parties in 1910, without Taft's support?
    C. Who was fired by Taft after attacking Secretary of the Interior Richard Ballinger's proposed sale of protected wilderness land to private developers?
83. **Socialism,** a reform movement more radical than Progressivism, gained many adherents in the decade before World War I. Name the union organizer who was the Socialist party's candidate for president five times from 1900 to 1920.
84. During the presidential campaign of 1912, the Republican party split between supporters of Taft and Roosevelt. Name the four major candidates and their parties.
85. In 1912, three of the major candidates favored economic reform, showing the strong impact of the Progressive movement on American politics. Which party supported each of the positions below?
    A. stricter government regulation of large corporations
    B. break up of corporate trusts
    C. government ownership of industry
86. By what name was President Wilson's reform program known?
87. Wilson, who opposed protectionism, called Congress into special session in 1913 to lower the tariffs on imported goods. Congress passed a bill that substantially lowered tariffs for the first time since the Civil War.
    A. What was the name of the tariff act?
    B. How did the act replace government revenue lost by the lowering of tariffs?
    C. What constitutional amendment assured the legality of the act's revenue-raising provision?

88. During Wilson's administration, Congress passed several laws regulating business and improving working conditions. Identify the following acts.

    A. This act created a board to oversee 12 regional banks, which would help regulate the economy by controlling the amount of money in circulation.

    B. This act created a commission to investigate complaints about unfair business practices.

    C. This act strengthened the Sherman Antitrust Act by prohibiting unfair pricing policies, outlawing the purchase of stock in competing firms, and outlawing **interlocking directorates.** It also prohibited the prosecution of labor unions under the act and recognized the right of workers to strike and picket.

    D. This act established both an eight-hour workday and overtime pay for railroad workers.

    E. This act banned goods produced by child labor from interstate commerce, but was ruled unconstitutional by the Supreme Court in *Hammer v. Dagenhart* (1918).

    F. This act created 12 federally supported banks to lend money to farmers at low interest rates.

The American Empire

89. Two influential books of the late nineteenth century offered reasons for the United States to pursue **imperialism.** Give the title and author of the books described below.

    A. This work asserted that the United States should strengthen its navy in order to become a world power and acquire colonies to provide fueling stations for the navy, as well as raw materials and markets for American industry.

    B. This work maintained that the "white race" of the United States was superior to all others and was chosen by God to "civilize" the people of Africa, Latin America, and Asia.

90. Explain how U.S. tariff policies in the 1890s contributed to revolutions in Hawaii and Cuba.

91. While the U.S. government attempted to remain neutral during the Cuban revolution, public opinion turned against the Spanish colonial government.

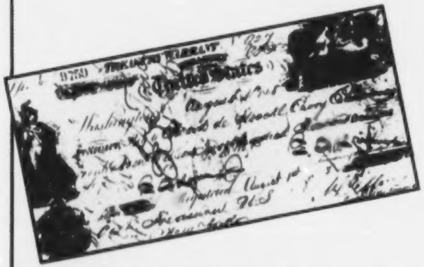
    A. What two New York newspapers gave birth to **yellow journalism** by exaggerating Spanish atrocities to create a public clamor for war and to sell more newspapers?

    B. What newspaper publisher is famous for telling a photographer, "You supply the pictures, I'll supply the war"?

92. In February 1898, an American battleship was sunk in Havana harbor, resulting in the deaths of 260 Americans. Although no one ever discovered who planted the explosives, American public opinion turned against Spain. Name this ship.

Carrie Chapman Catt, of the National American Women's Suffrage Association, used the strategy of obtaining women's suffrage in individual states before lobbying for a national constitutional amendment. By 1919, women had full or partial suffrage in more than two-thirds of the states, and President Wilson had become a supporter of the Nineteenth Amendment.

Queen Liliuokalani came to the Hawaiian throne in 1891. She tried to reduce the influence of American merchants and sugar growers, who controlled much of the islands' economy and government. In 1893, American business groups overthrew her, with the aid of U.S. marines. Hawaii became a U.S. territory in 1898.



With this check, Secretary of State William H. Seward purchased Alaska from Russia in 1867. Before gold was discovered there in 1897, Alaska was ridiculed by many as "Seward's Folly."

93. In April 1898, Congress recognized Cuba's independence, causing Spain to declare war on the United States. Identify the military leaders described below.

    A. In February 1898, Assistant Secretary of the Navy Theodore Roosevelt told this U.S. naval commander to prepare to attack the Spanish fleet in the Philippines if war was declared. The commander sank the fleet, sustaining only one U.S. casualty.

    B. This adventurer resigned his government position and joined a volunteer force called the Rough Riders, who helped black troops capture San Juan Hill in Cuba.

94. Identify each of the following islands or island groups that the United States acquired during its period of overseas expansion.

    A. The United States acquired this Caribbean island from Spain in the 1898 treaty that ended the Spanish-American War. In 1952, the island became a self-governing commonwealth in union with the United States.

    B. U.S. troops fought for three years to suppress a nationalist revolt after taking possession of these islands after the Spanish-American War. On July 4, 1946, the islands became an independent nation.

    C. The United States acquired this Pacific island in the 1898 treaty that ended the Spanish-American War. In 1950, it became an organized, unincorporated U.S. territory, administered by the Department of the Interior.

    D. The United States acquired these Pacific islands in an 1899 treaty with Germany and Great Britain.

    E. The United States purchased these Caribbean islands from Denmark in 1917.

95. In the late 1800s, Russia, Japan, Great Britain, and Germany divided China into spheres of influence, in which they claimed trading rights and threatened U.S. trade. How did Secretary of State John Hay address this situation in 1899?

96. President Theodore Roosevelt won the Nobel Peace Prize in 1906 for negotiating the end of a war between which two countries?

97. Name the U.S. president who advocated each of the following foreign policy strategies.

    A. His policy to "speak softly and carry a big stick" asserted the right of the United States to act as an international police power and to use force, or the threat of force, to uphold democracy and economic growth throughout the world.

    B. His "dollar diplomacy" encouraged commercial ventures abroad as a means of advancing U.S. foreign policy.

    C. His "moral diplomacy" promoted the spread of democracy and advocated the use of negotiations, instead of force, to settle international disputes.

98. Why did the United States support Panama's 1903 rebellion against Colombia?

99. What U.S. policy, announced in 1904, justified U.S. intervention in the affairs of Latin American nations?

100. U.S. troops intervened in the affairs of several Latin American nations before World War I. Identify the nations described below.

    A. A rebellion in this nation led President Theodore Roosevelt to send American troops to occupy and govern it from 1906 to 1909.

    B. In 1912, U.S. Marines prevented revolutionaries from toppling the government of this nation. U.S. troops remained until 1933.

    C. In 1915, President Wilson sent U.S. marines to this nation, which was in political turmoil. The American military remained until 1934.

World War I

101. A Serbian nationalist assassinated Austria's Archduke Franz Ferdinand in 1914, igniting World War I.

    A. What three nations led the Allied Powers?

    B. What two nations led the Central Powers?

    C. What was the official position of the United States at the beginning of the war?

102. By 1915, trench warfare in western Europe had reached a stalemate. The United States became involved when the warring powers turned to new strategies at sea.

    A. Why did President Wilson protest the blockade and mining of the North Sea by the British?

    B. How did Germany break international law in its use of submarines, or U-boats?

103. Place the following events, which led up to U.S. entry into World War I, in chronological order.

    A. The Zimmerman telegram, a German proposal that Mexico attack the United States if America entered the war, was intercepted and later published in U.S. newspapers.

    B. The United States broke diplomatic relations with Germany because the Germans renewed unrestricted submarine warfare.

    C. A revolution overthrew the despotic Russian government, with which Americans had been reluctant to become allied.

    D. In the *Sussex* pledge, Germany promised to issue a warning before sinking neutral ships.

    E. A German submarine sank the British passenger ship *Lusitania*, killing many Americans.

104. On April 2, 1917, President Wilson asked Congress for a declaration of war, stating, "The world must be made safe for democracy." Congress tried to suppress opposition to the war with the Espionage and Sedition Acts.

    A. What two reformers founded the Women's Peace party in 1915 to oppose U.S. intervention in the war?

    B. What were the main provisions of the 1917 Espionage Act and the 1918 Sedition Act?

    C. Who was convicted under the Espionage Act for a speech critical of the war and ran for president in 1920 while still in prison?

Pancho Villa and his band raided towns along the U.S.-Mexican border during the Mexican revolution of 1911-1917, protesting U.S. support for his political enemies. In 1916, Wilson sent troops into Mexico under General John J. "Black Jack" Pershing in a failed attempt to capture Villa.

Women and blacks filled the desperate need for workers created by a decline in immigration and the loss of men to military service during World War I. Some 500,000 blacks migrated to northern cities to work in factories during the war.

Army camps were hit hard by a worldwide flu epidemic that struck in 1918. More than 500,000 Americans died from the disease, about 10 times as many as died in combat during World War I.

105. World War I led to the creation of a vast bureaucracy in Washington, D.C., to centralize control of the economy and public opinion. Identify the following wartime agencies.

A. Headed by financier Bernard Baruch, it regulated the manufacture of thousands of products vital to the war effort.

B. It loaned public funds to companies that manufactured war materials.

C. It reorganized the nation's railroad lines.

D. Headed by Herbert Hoover, it encouraged the expansion of agricultural production and urged conservation of food through "victory gardens" and "meatless" and "wheatless" days.

E. It arbitrated labor disputes during the war.

F. It produced pamphlets, posters, films, and speeches designed to promote American involvement in the war and to spread hostility against the Central Powers.

106. Name the commander of the American Expeditionary Force, which fought in France from June 1917 to November 1918.

107. The arrival of fresh American troops and supplies lifted the morale of the British and French, who were exhausted after years of fighting.

A. Where was the first major engagement for U.S. troops, in which American and French forces turned back a German offensive that threatened to seize Paris in June and July 1918?

B. What offensive campaign, involving more than one million U.S. soldiers, finally forced the Germans to seek peace?

C. When was the World War I armistice signed?

108. President Wilson took a leading role in creating the Treaty of Versailles after World War I. Which of the following was *not* part of Wilson's peace plan, known as the "Fourteen Points"?

A. The territorial integrity of nations must be guaranteed.

B. The right of self-determination must be guaranteed.

C. Economic barriers between nations should be removed.

D. All European nations should maintain large military forces to deter a future war.

E. Diplomatic negotiations should be open, not secret.

109. Wilson at first opposed, but eventually conceded to, provisions in the Treaty of Versailles that forced Germans to pay large reparations for war damages and assume full responsibility for starting the war. The treaty also provided for establishing the ______________, which Wilson believed would prevent future wars and moderate the treaty's harshness.

110. Republican senators blocked ratification of the Treaty of Versailles. What aspect of the treaty did they oppose most strongly?

4. Democracy and Adversity (1919-1945)

The years of crisis from World War I through World War II gave birth to the nation we live in today. New technology transformed everyday life; workers, women, and minorities won greater economic and political power; and the federal government began to take more responsibility for the welfare of its citizens. While dictators seized power in Europe during these years of upheaval, the United States preserved its democratic government and capitalist economy through experimentation and adaptation.

During the 1920s, modern technology and mass production changed Americans' everyday lives. Electricity, automobiles, and radios became necessities rather than luxuries. Advertising and the mass media encouraged the consumer culture, decreasing America's regional differences. A family in Newark, New Jersey, could eat the same cereal, drive the same car, and watch the same movies as a family in Lincoln, Nebraska, or Spokane, Washington.

Changes in American society went much deeper than the outward signs of the consumer culture. Workers, women, and minorities, who made important contributions during World War I, demanded greater economic and political power after the war. Other Americans resisted these demands, even resorting to violence.

The human suffering of the Great Depression brought further changes in American life. When President Franklin Roosevelt entered office, one-fourth of the work force was unemployed. Through Roosevelt's New Deal, the federal government for the first time took primary responsibility for the welfare of its citizens and began to use deficit spending to manage the economy. The legacy of Roosevelt's unprecedented 12 years as president is our modern welfare state and an enormous federal bureaucracy, which still do much to regulate the economy and provide for the disadvantaged.

Although government programs did relieve some suffering, they did not end the depression—that came with the burst of economic activity during World War II. Every American was drawn into the war effort, and when the war was over, workers, women, and minorities again hoped that the postwar era would bring rewards for their labors.

Social history, sometimes called "history from the bottom up," concerns "ordinary" groups of people—how they lived and what impact their lives had on the larger society. As you study the following chapter, note how the everyday lives of Americans were changing dramatically and how "ordinary" people were making history.

WORLD'S HIGHEST STANDARD OF LIVING
There's no way like the American Way

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Marcus Garvey, a Jamaican immigrant, founded the Universal Negro Improvement Association (UNIA), which gained hundreds of thousands of members in the 1920s. Garvey supported a separatist "back to Africa" movement, trying to create an independent black nation in Africa. UNIA collapsed after Garvey was convicted of mail fraud and deported in 1927.

Postwar Politics

1. High prices and high unemployment during the recession following World War I led to a wave of strikes. Identify the workers involved in the following strikes of 1919.

   A. More than 350,000 workers across the country demanded union recognition and an end to the 12-hour workday. After four months and much violence, the strike ended with no concessions from management.

   B. The federal government intervened in a strike led by union president John L. Lewis, ordering a large wage increase to end the dispute.

   C. These strikers were condemned by Governor Calvin Coolidge of Massachusetts, who said, "There is no right to strike against the public safety by anybody, anywhere, any time."

2. Labor unrest at home and the spread of communism abroad led many Americans to fear a takeover by communists, or "Reds." Which of the following was *not* part of the "Red Scare" of 1919-1920?

   A. Terrorists sent bombs through the mail to prominent citizens and officials, frightening the American public.

   B. Attorney General A. Mitchell Palmer organized the "Palmer Raids," arresting thousands of innocent people suspected of being communists and deporting hundreds of aliens.

   C. The House Committee on Un-American Activities interrogated members of the government suspected of being communists.

   D. In 1920, Italian anarchists Nicola Sacco and Bartolomeo Vanzetti were arrested for murder and eventually convicted and sentenced to death. Many believed that they were actually convicted for their political beliefs.

3. After World War I, immigration to the United States rose. In response, Congress passed the 1921 Emergency Quota Act and the 1924 National Origins Quota Act. What did these acts do?

4. In 1919, the continuing migration of blacks to northern cities, where they suffered from discrimination in housing and jobs, led to severe racial violence. What is this period called?

5. During the 1920s, a revived Ku Klux Klan (KKK) had more than four million members and significant political influence in many states. After 1925, scandals and public outrage at the Klan's violent tactics led to a decline in membership. Against what groups did the KKK aim its activities?

6. What did Congress grant to all Native Americans in 1924?

7. In 1919, the Eighteenth Amendment was ratified, in part due to the lobbying of Progressive reformers who feared the destructive effects of alcoholism.

   A. What were the main provisions of the 1919 Prohibition Enforcement Act, also known as the Volstead Act?

   B. Who led Chicago's gangsters in the 1920s, profiting from bootlegging—the illegal manufacture and sale of alcohol?

   C. How and when was Prohibition finally repealed?

8. Throughout the 1920s, which political party controlled both Congress and the presidency?

9. Andrew Mellon served as secretary of the treasury under Presidents Harding and Coolidge, promoting government efficiency and aid to business interests. Under Mellon, income taxes were lowered, expenditures were cut, and the budget was balanced.

   A. What were the main provisions of the 1921 Budget and Accounting Act?

   B. What 1922 act raised protective import tariffs?

Answer questions 10-11 using the cartoon at right.

10. After President Harding's death, the Senate investigated scandals in his administration. Describe the oil scandal "hung out" before the public by Senate investigators in 1924.

11. To what Harding administration scandal does the basket of "Daugherty linen" refer?

12. Calvin Coolidge, who became president upon Harding's death, faced Democrat John Davis and a third-party candidate in the election of 1924. What were the results of that election?

13. President Coolidge said that "the business of America is business." He also believed in limiting government expenditures. Did Coolidge sign or veto the following bills?

    A. Soldiers Bonus Act of 1924, which provided aid to veterans

    B. Revenue Act of 1926, which cut tax rates for the wealthy

    C. McNary-Haugen, or Farm Relief Act, which provided price supports for farm products

14. Name the Democrat whose Roman Catholic religion, opposition to Prohibition, and ties to New York's Tammany Hall machine led to his defeat by Herbert Hoover in the 1928 presidential election.

The Roaring Twenties

15. Which of the following was *not* a characteristic of the U.S. economy in the 1920s?

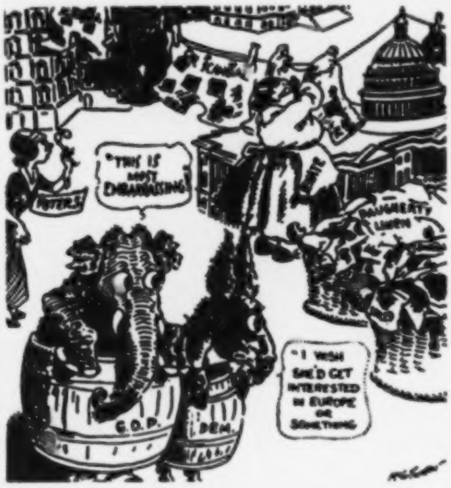
    A. The gross national product increased by 40 percent.

    B. Americans used installment buying to purchase consumer goods.

    C. **Per capita income** decreased.

    D. Certain industries, such as coal, textiles, and agriculture, did not recover from the postwar recession.

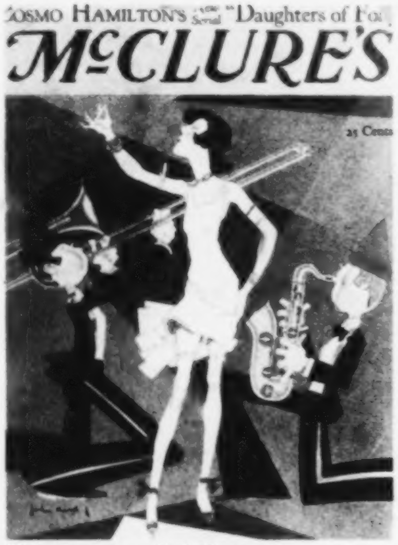
    E. Per capita income increased.


VOTERS
"THIS IS MOST EMBARRASSING"
DAUGHERTY LINEN
"I WISH SHE'D GET INTERESTED IN EUROPE OR SOMETHING"
G.O.P.
DEM.

Clarence Darrow (standing) defended John Scopes in the celebrated "monkey trial" of 1925, which pitted modern science against fundamentalist religion. After a dramatic battle between Darrow and prosecuting attorney William Jennings Bryan, the jury found Scopes guilty of defying a Tennessee law against teaching Darwin's theory of evolution.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Trumpeter Louis Armstrong and other musicians popularized jazz in the 1920s. A uniquely American art form, jazz was derived from a mixture of African rhythms, black spirituals, ragtime, and European harmonies, with a strong emphasis on improvisation.


OSMO HAMILTON'S "Daughters of Fo
McCLURE'S
25 Cents

Young women called "flappers" represented the carefree self-indulgence of the 1920s and the changing role of women. They wore short haircuts and short skirts, smoked in public, and even drank in illegal bars called "speakeasies."

16. Which of the following did *not* affect workers in the 1920s?

    A. Companies used scientific methods such as **time and motion studies** to increase worker efficiency and safety.

    B. Employers established **company unions** to limit the power of labor unions.

    C. Employers offered workers profit sharing and retirement plans.

    D. Organized labor increased its membership and bargaining power.

17. By 1929, automobile manufacturing was the nation's largest industry. Which of the following did *not* occur due to the growth of the automobile industry in the 1920s?

    A. growth of the steel, glass, oil, and rubber industries

    B. enactment of federal laws regulating air pollution

    C. expansion of suburbs

    D. more freedom from parental supervision for young people

18. With the introduction of new consumer goods, such as ready-made clothing, washing machines, and canned foods, some women had more time to become involved in groups such as the ____________ , a non-partisan organization founded in 1920 to educate voters.

19. In 1923, the National Woman's party unsuccessfully lobbied for passage of the first proposed equal rights amendment to the Constitution. Why did some women's groups oppose the amendment?

20. In the 1920s, the U.S. birthrate declined.

    A. Who coined the term "birth control" and led the crusade for access to contraception in America?

    B. Under what law was this reformer indicted in 1914?

21. Name the author who drew from her life on the Nebraska plains to write such novels as *My Antonia* (1918) and *One of Ours* (1922), winning a Pulitzer Prize for the latter.

22. Many writers of the 1920s felt alienated by America's materialistic culture. Identify the following writers, called the "Lost Generation" by author Gertrude Stein.

    A. In *This Side of Paradise* (1920) and *The Great Gatsby* (1925), he described the empty, materialistic lives of the rich.

    B. In *Main Street* (1920), this novelist exposed the hypocrisy of small-town life. In *Babbitt* (1922), he satirized American business. He became the first American to win the Nobel Prize for literature in 1930.

    C. In *The Waste Land* (1922), this expatriate poet depicted the modern world as grim and sterile.

23. In the 1920s, black intellectuals and writers celebrated black culture and its African roots in the movement known as the Harlem Renaissance. Match the authors with their descriptions below.

    A. In *The Weary Blues* (1926) and other works, this poet used blues cadences to write of the oppression of black Americans.

    B. In works such as *Copper Sun* (1927), this poet combined a lyrical European style with black American themes.

    C. In *God's Trombones* (1927), this writer's poetry was based on the sermons of black preachers.

    a. James Weldon Johnson

    b. Langston Hughes

    c. Countee Cullen

24. By 1930, more than one-third of American homes had a radio and 100 million Americans attended movies each week.

    A. How did the 1927 movie *The Jazz Singer*, starring Al Jolson, make motion picture history?

    B. Where and when was America's first commercial radio station founded?

25. Identify the following American heroes of the 1920s.

    A. In 1927, this pilot became the first to fly solo, nonstop across the Atlantic in his plane, "Spirit of St. Louis."

    B. In 1921, this heavyweight champion became the first to attract one million dollars in ticket sales for one fight.

    C. This baseball star, playing for the New York Yankees, set a record of 60 home runs in one season in 1927.

    D. This Native American was named the greatest athlete of the first half of the twentieth century by sports writers. He won two gold medals in the 1912 Olympics and went on to play both professional baseball and football.

The Depression and New Deal

26. On "Black Tuesday," October 29, 1929, a crash in the stock market signaled the beginning of America's Great Depression.

    A. How was the severity of the crash increased by the widespread practice of buying stock "on margin," or paying a small part of the cost of a stock and borrowing the rest?

    B. What roles did overproduction and underconsumption play in bringing on the depression?

    C. How did the nation's unequal distribution of wealth contribute to underconsumption?

More than 15,000 World War I veterans formed the Bonus Army and marched to Washington, D.C., in 1932 to lobby for a bill authorizing early payment of war bonuses due to be paid in 1945. After the Senate refused to pass the bill, President Hoover ordered General Douglas MacArthur to drive the Bonus Army out of the nation's capital.

UNITED
STATES

Americans rushed to withdraw their money from banks as the depression deepened. By 1933, more than 5,000 banks had failed, and on March 5, 1933, President Roosevelt declared a "bank holiday" to prevent further withdrawals. On March 9, Congress passed the Emergency Banking Relief Act proposed by Roosevelt, which provided for government supervision and aid for the banking industry.

President Roosevelt skillfully used the new medium of radio to reassure Americans and enlist their support for his programs. On March 12, 1933, in his first "fireside chat," Roosevelt announced an end to the bank holiday and helped reestablish the public's trust in financial institutions.

27. President Hoover blamed the depression on international economic problems. Briefly explain how protective tariffs contributed to international economic problems.

Answer questions 28-29 using the excerpt below, taken from a 1928 campaign speech by Herbert Hoover.

> When the war closed . . . we were challenged with a peace-time choice between the American system of rugged individualism and a European philosophy of diametrically opposed doctrines—doctrines of paternalism and state socialism.
>
> . . . It is proposed [by the Democrats] that we shall change from prohibition to the State purchase and sale of liquor. If their agricultural relief program means anything, it means that the Government shall directly or indirectly buy and sell and fix prices of agricultural products. And we are to go into the hydroelectric power business. In other words, we are confronted with a huge program of government in business.
>
> Commercial business requires a concentration of responsibility. Self-government requires decentralization and many checks and balances to safeguard liberty. Our Government to succeed in business would need become in effect a despotism.

28. After this speech, by what name was Hoover's philosophy of government known?

29. Identify the following acts and tell whether Hoover's support of them was consistent with his campaign speech.

    A. This act established a Federal Farm Board that could buy farm surpluses in order to raise falling agricultural prices.

    B. This act empowered the Reconstruction Finance Corporation (RFC) to provide loans for building public works projects.

30. How did the goals of the RFC, created with Hoover's support in January 1933, reflect the theory of "trickle down" economics?

31. In 1932, Democrat Franklin D. Roosevelt was elected to the presidency, and Democratic majorities were elected to both houses of Congress. In his first inaugural address, Roosevelt declared, "the only thing we have to fear is ____________."

32. To implement his economic program, the New Deal, Roosevelt called a special session of Congress soon after his inauguration in 1933. During the session 15 bills he requested were enacted. What is this period called?

33. Historians often place New Deal legislation under the categories of relief, recovery, and reform. Briefly define these three terms as they relate to the New Deal.

34. Identify the following New Deal acts and agencies, which were created in 1933 and 1934, and tell whether they fall in the categories of relief, recovery, or reform.

A. This agency employed young men in reforestation, flood control, and national park projects in exchange for food, clothing, and shelter, as well as wages they were expected to share with their families.

B. This government corporation built some 20 dams on the Tennessee River and its tributaries, providing power, jobs, and a more diversified economy to portions of seven states.

C. Between 1933 and 1936, this agency saved one million homeowners from losing their homes by providing low-interest refinancing of their mortgages.

D. This act created the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), which insured individual bank deposits and separated commercial and investment banking.

E. This agency, created by the National Industrial Recovery Act (NIRA), provided jobs and engaged in **pump priming** by making loans to private firms and local governments to build bridges, roads, and public buildings.

F. This agency was created to provide federal protection against worthless stocks and to regulate stock exchanges.

G. This agency insured loans for new construction, repairs, alterations, and improvements to homes and businesses, in order to stimulate the construction industry and employment.

35. The Agricultural Adjustment Act (AAA) of 1933 raised the prices of farm products by decreasing the supply. Which of the following is *not* true of this act?

A. It paid farmers subsidies if they agreed not to use a portion of their land for production.

B. It decreased food production at a time when many Americans were going hungry.

C. It benefited small-scale farmers more than large-scale farmers.

D. It taxed food processors to fund its subsidies.

36. Why did the Supreme Court declare the Agricultural Adjustment Act unconstitutional in *U.S. v. Butler* (1936)?

37. In the mid-1930s, a severe drought hit the southern Great Plains, which became known as the ______________. Crops failed, winds blew away the parched topsoil, and thousands of farmers left their lands to look for work in California.

38. Name the author who won a Pulitzer Prize for *The Grapes of Wrath* (1939), a novel portraying the tragedy of Oklahoma families ("Okies") forced to become migrant farm workers in California.

Republican Alfred Landon ran a losing campaign against Franklin Roosevelt in 1936. Roosevelt won the presidency with more than 60 percent of the popular vote. The Democrats had become the majority party and had forged a "New Deal coalition" of southerners, big city machines, urban workers, blacks, and intellectuals.

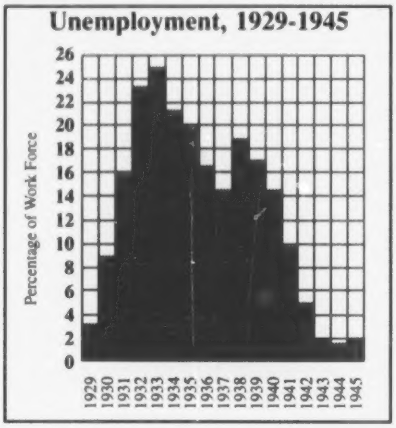
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

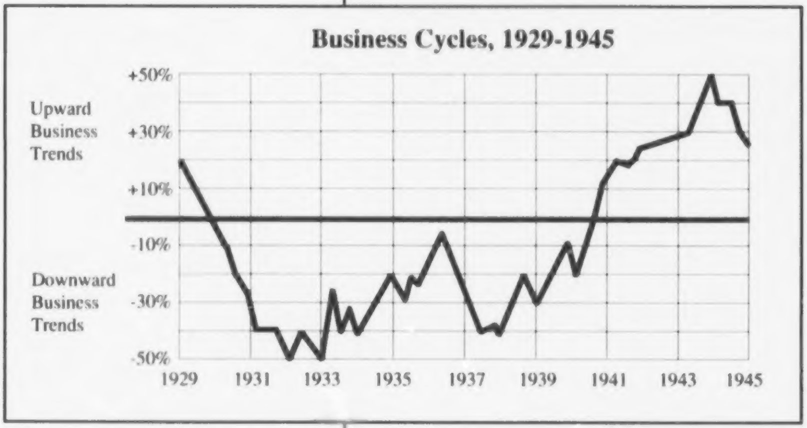
The despair of a migrant farm worker and her children was captured by photographer Dorothea Lange in 1936. Lange and other photographers were hired by the Farm Security Administration (FSA) to document the plight of rural Americans during the Great Depression.

39. The National Industrial Recovery Act (NIRA), which created the National Recovery Administration (NRA), was passed in 1933.
    - A. What were the codes of fair competition required by the NIRA?
    - B. From what laws were businesses exempted in order to encourage more cooperation and less competition within industries?
    - C. What was the main provision of section 7a of the NIRA?
40. In what case did the Supreme Court declare the NIRA unconstitutional, holding that Congress's right to regulate interstate commerce did not extend to all aspects of business?
41. The Supreme Court's decisions striking down key New Deal measures ended what is known as the first New Deal. Roosevelt and Congress launched the second New Deal in 1935. Identify the following acts and agencies of the second New Deal.
    - A. Created under the Emergency Relief Appropriations Act of 1935, this agency employed millions of people building public buildings, parks, roads, and bridges. It also employed many artists, writers, and entertainers.
    - B. This agency, created in 1935, brought electricity to millions of families not served by private utilities.
    - C. This agency, created in 1935, provided part-time employment for needy high school and college students so they could continue their educations.
    - D. This 1935 act set up a national system of old-age pensions, established unemployment insurance, and provided money to support handicapped citizens and dependent children.
    - E. Passed in 1936, after the Supreme Court struck down the AAA, this act set up a soil conservation program in which farmers leased part of their land to the government and practiced soil conservation measures on it in return for government subsidies.
    - F. This 1937 act aided tenant farmers, sharecroppers, and migrating farm workers with the creation of the Farm Security Administration (FSA), which lent them money for purchasing farms at low interest rates with 40 years to repay.
    - G. This 1937 act offered government loans for housing construction, providing affordable housing for low-income citizens.
    - H. This 1938 act allowed the government to determine the amount of certain crops to be marketed each year. Surpluses were stored by the government, and farmers received loans for all stored crops.
42. In 1935, Congress revived the labor protections of the NIRA in the National Labor Relations Act (NLRA), also called the Wagner Act. List the major provisions of this act.

43. Roosevelt was criticized by many who thought his programs did not go far enough. Identify the following critics of the New Deal.
    A. This U.S. senator from Louisiana promoted the "Share Our Wealth" plan, calling for seizure of incomes of more than $1 million per year, and a federal guarantee of a house and a minimum income for every family.
    B. This California physician advocated that the government pay a pension of $200 per month to all Americans over age 60, provided that they spend the full amount each month.
    C. This anti-Semitic Michigan priest organized the National Union for Social Justice. He advocated inflationary policies and attacked bankers, communists, and labor unions in his radio sermons.
44. In his second term, Roosevelt attacked the Supreme Court because it had declared many of his New Deal programs unconstitutional. What measure did Roosevelt propose to make the Court more favorable to his programs, and what was the result of his plan?

Answer questions 45-47 using the graphs below.


Unemployment, 1929-1945


Business Cycles, 1929-1945

45. In what year was the greatest percentage of the work force unemployed?
46. What government action led to the sharp rise in unemployment during the recession of 1937-1938?
47. Based on the graphs, what event probably played the biggest role in ending the depression and putting Americans back to work?

The New Deal for Workers, Minorities, and Women

48. In 1935, John L. Lewis organized a committee within the American Federation of Labor (AFL) to promote industrial unions over craft unions. What happened in 1938 when the AFL expelled Lewis?
49. In 1936-1937, the United Auto Workers, a member union of the Congress of Industrial Organizations (CIO), pioneered the sit-down strike, soon adopted by other unions. What was the advantage of this tactic for strikers?

Eleanor Roosevelt presented the NAACP's medal of achievement to opera singer Marian Anderson in 1938. Mrs. Roosevelt was a strong supporter of rights for black Americans. In 1939, when the Daughters of the American Revolution barred Anderson from singing in Constitution Hall in Washington, D.C., the first lady arranged for her to sing at the Lincoln Memorial.

Ernest Hemingway, a member of the Lost Generation, wrote about his experiences in World War I in the novel *A Farewell to Arms* (1929). Hemingway also wrote *For Whom the Bell Tolls* (1940) about the tragedy he observed as a war reporter during the Spanish Civil War. From 1936 to 1939, the Spanish government fought a losing battle against **fascist** rebels supported by Italy and Germany.

50. The Fair Labor Standards Act, also known as the Wages and Hours Act, was passed in 1938.

    A. What were the act's major provisions?

    B. What workers were affected by the law?

51. Roosevelt enlisted the aid of many prominent black leaders, known as the Black Cabinet. Name the black educator and civic leader who headed a division of the National Youth Administration.

52. Name the crusader for Native American rights who was named commissioner of Indian Affairs by Roosevelt.

53. What 1934 act sought to improve the desperate economic situation of Native Americans by ending the distribution of tribal land to individuals and encouraging a return to tribal self-government?

54. Name the social reformer who became a lobbyist for industrial safety after witnessing the Triangle Fire of 1911 and served as secretary of labor from 1933 to 1945.

55. Which of the following statements about women during the depression years is *not* true?

    A. Most Americans did not approve of married women who worked outside the home.

    B. Women who worked as domestic servants were not covered by the Social Security Act and the Fair Labor Standards Act.

    C. The National Recovery Administration allowed companies to pay women lower wages than men for the same job.

    D. Many young women participated in the Civilian Conservation Corps.

Isolationism and the Road to War

56. During the 1920s, the United States tried to pursue an isolationist foreign policy, yet continued to be drawn into international disputes.

    A. What was the purpose of the 1921 Washington Conference?

    B. How did the Dawes Plan, created by banker Charles Dawes, keep peace between Germany and France in 1924?

    C. What was the goal of the Kellogg-Briand Pact, drafted by U.S. Secretary of State Frank Kellogg and French Foreign Minister Aristide Briand in 1928 and eventually signed by 62 nations?

57. In what statement did the Hoover administration in 1930 declare that the United States had no right to intervene militarily in Latin America, in effect repudiating the Roosevelt Corollary?

58. In his first inaugural address, Franklin Roosevelt announced his ____________ Policy, through which he continued Hoover's commitment to improving relations with Latin America.

59. At what 1933 conference did Secretary of State Cordell Hull declare that no state has the right to intervene in the internal or external affairs of another nation?

60. Place in chronological order the following events leading to the outbreak of World War II in Europe in 1939.

    A. Germany invaded Poland.

    B. Germany annexed Austria.

    C. Germany violated the Versailles Treaty by sending troops into the Rhineland, German territory near the French border.

    D. Great Britain and France declared war on Germany.

    E. Germany and the Soviet Union signed a nonaggression pact and secretly agreed to divide Poland between them.

    F. Germany annexed Czechoslovakia, and Italy annexed Albania.

    G. At the Munich Conference, France and Great Britain agreed to Germany's annexation of the Sudetenland, a western region of Czechoslovakia. British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain believed that by granting Hitler's demands, the European powers had secured "peace for our time."

61. Define the following terms associated with World War II:

    A. appeasement

    B. *blitzkrieg*

    C. the Allied Powers, or United Nations

    D. the Axis Powers

    E. *kamikaze* pilots

Answer question 62 using the excerpt below from President Franklin Roosevelt's 1937 speech "Quarantine the Aggressors," which denounced Japanese attacks on China.

> The peace-loving nations must make a concerted effort in opposition to those violations of treaties and those ignorings of humane instincts which today are creating a state of international anarchy and instability from which there is no escape through mere isolation or neutrality. . . .
>
> It seems to be unfortunately true that the epidemic of world lawlessness is spreading.
>
> When an epidemic of physical disease starts to spread, the community approves and joins in a quarantine of the patients in order to protect the health of the community against the spread of the disease.

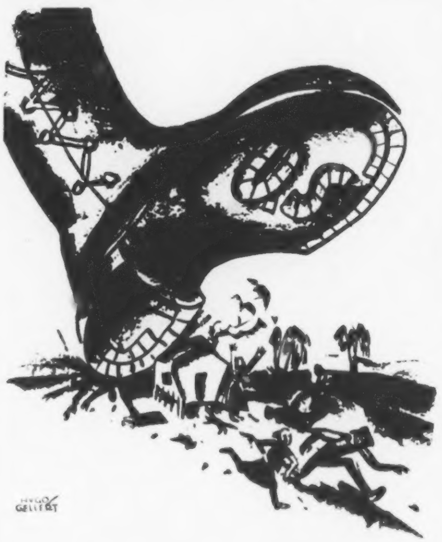
62. Based on this speech, would Roosevelt have been likely to agree with the policy of appeasement?

63. During the 1930s, the isolationist Congress passed several Neutrality Acts that severely restricted U.S. trade with any nations at war. How did Roosevelt avoid invoking the Neutrality Acts in 1937 in order to aid China?

64. While technically neutral, the United States took measures to prepare for war and to aid the Allies.

    A. What action did Congress take in 1940 to increase the size of the U.S. military in case of war?

    B. What act, passed in 1941, gave the president the power to sell, exchange, lend, or lease war materials to any country whose defense seemed vital to U.S. interests?



A 1928 cartoon criticized the intervention of U.S. troops in Nicaragua. U.S. marines occupied Nicaragua between 1926 and 1933, supervising elections and combating a revolt led by General Augusto Sandino.

Italian dictator Benito Mussolini and German dictator Adolf Hitler formed an alliance in 1936 with the military leaders who controlled Japan. Mussolini had risen to power in 1922 as head of the Fascist party. Hitler and his National Socialist (Nazi) party gained control of Germany in 1933.

65. In August 1941, President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Winston Churchill met to formulate the postwar aims of the United States and Great Britain. Which of the following was *not* among the points mentioned in the plan, known as the Atlantic Charter?

A. renouncing claims for territorial expansion

B. allowing aggressor nations to remain armed

C. freedom from want and fear for all people

D. freedom of the seas

E. supporting the right of people to choose their own forms of government (self-determination)

66. From 1931 to 1941, relations between the United States and Japan deteriorated steadily. How did the United States respond to each of the following Japanese actions?

A. In 1931, Japanese troops conquered and occupied the Chinese province of Manchuria.

B. In December 1937, Japanese bombers sank the American gunboat *Panay* in China.

C. Japan established military bases in French Indochina (present-day Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos) and formed a military alliance with Germany and Italy in September 1940.

D. Japan occupied southern French Indochina in July 1941.

E. Japan attacked the U.S. fleet at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, on December 7, 1941. Almost 20 ships were sunk or disabled, more than 150 airplanes were destroyed, and more than 2,000 Americans were killed.

World War II

67. On December 11, 1941, Germany and Italy declared war on the United States, and Congress in turn declared war on them. Cooperation among the Allies became essential to victory in both Europe and the Pacific.

A. What were the main provisions of the United Nations Declaration, signed by 26 Allied nations in January 1942?

B. What controversy caused tension among the Allied leaders of the United States, Great Britain, and the Soviet Union until the summer of 1944?

68. Roosevelt launched the war at home by creating government agencies to manage the wartime economy. Identify the following wartime government agencies.

A. This body coordinated the activities of all the wartime agencies.

B. This agency controlled factory production and the allocation and conservation of raw materials that were vital to the war effort.

C. This agency set price ceilings on consumer goods and rents, and administered the rationing of scarce items such as gasoline, tires, meat, coffee, and canned foods.

D. This agency arbitrated disputes between labor and management and provided for wage increases.

69. The cost of waging a modern war was enormous. Government expenditures for World War II totaled more than $300 billion, more than *all* federal expenditures from 1789-1940. How did the government pay for the war?

70. During the war, the need for workers led to more economic opportunities for blacks. In 1941, A. Philip Randolph planned a march on Washington to demand an end to discrimination against black workers. What were the results of Randolph's plan?

71. In 1942, the United States and Mexico signed a treaty in which Mexican workers, called _____________, were allowed to enter the United States on a temporary basis to ease the labor shortage during the war.

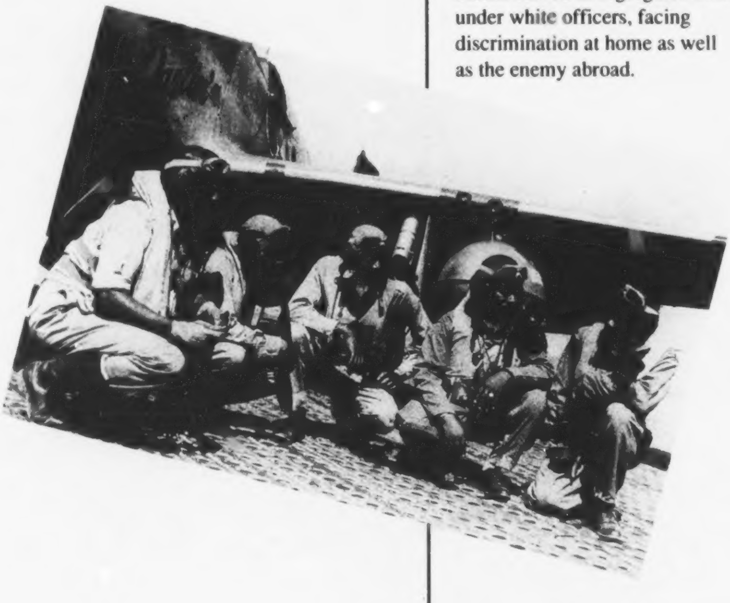
72. In 1942, President Roosevelt issued an order placing more than 100,000 Japanese-Americans in internment camps. Indicate whether each of the following statements is true or false. If a statement is false, indicate why.

    A. Under the terms of the order, persons with American citizenship were exempt from relocating.

    B. In *Korematsu v. United States* (1944), the Supreme Court ruled that this order did not violate the Constitution.

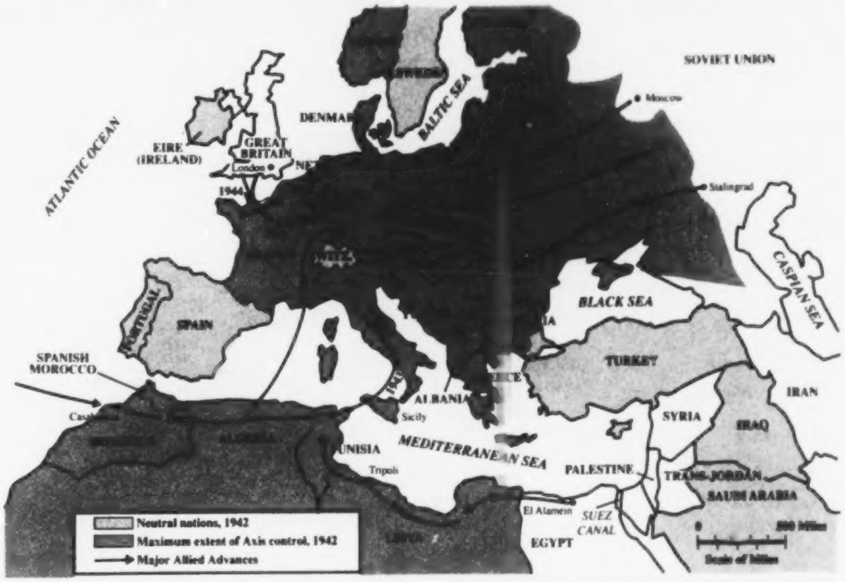
    C. Under the terms of this order, Japanese-Americans were not allowed to serve in the U.S. military.

    D. When Japanese-Americans arrived at relocation camps, the American government reimbursed them for the property they had lost during the relocation process.



The Tuskegee Airmen were graduates of the first U.S. Army flight school for blacks in Tuskegee, Alabama. About one million black Americans served in the military during World War II. As in all previous wars, blacks served in segregated units under white officers, facing discrimination at home as well as the enemy abroad.

Answer questions 73-74 using the map below.



World War II in Europe and North Africa, 1942-1945

SOVIET UNION
Moscow
Stalingrad
SWEDEN
BALTIC SEA
DENMARK
GREAT BRITAIN
London
EIRE (IRELAND)
ATLANTIC OCEAN
1944
PORTUGAL
SPAIN
SPANISH MOROCCO
ALGERIA
ALBANIA
Sicily
TUNISIA
Tripoli
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
LIBYA
El Alamein
EGYPT
SUEZ CANAL
PALESTINE
SYRIA
IRAQ
IRAN
TRANS-JORDAN
SAUDI ARABIA
TURKEY
BLACK SEA
CASPIAN SEA
Neutral nations, 1942
Maximum extent of Axis control, 1942
Major Allied Advances
0
500 Miles
Scale of Miles

A race riot in Detroit, Michigan, in the summer of 1943 left 34 people dead. During the war, mounting tensions between minorities and whites in urban centers led to similar riots all over the nation. In Los Angeles, white mobs turned against young Mexican Americans who wore flamboyant clothing in the "zoot suit" riots of 1943.

73. In North Africa, British and American forces cooperated to stop General Erwin Rommel and his German troops from reaching the strategic site of the Suez Canal.

    A. In what 1942 battle did British General Bernard Montgomery and his troops force Rommel to retreat from Egypt?

    B. What American commander led Operation Torch, an Allied campaign that forced the surrender of Axis forces in North Africa in May 1943?

74. As the Soviets kept pushing the German army westward in Europe, British and American forces began their European offensive.

    A. In July 1943, where did Allied forces first attack Europe?

    B. Where did the largest amphibious invasion in history, code named Operation Overlord, take place on D-Day, June 6, 1944?

    C. In December 1944, where did the last German counteroffensive succeed in pushing back the Allied forces after they had liberated France?

    D. Where did Soviet troops moving west and American troops moving east finally meet in April 1945?

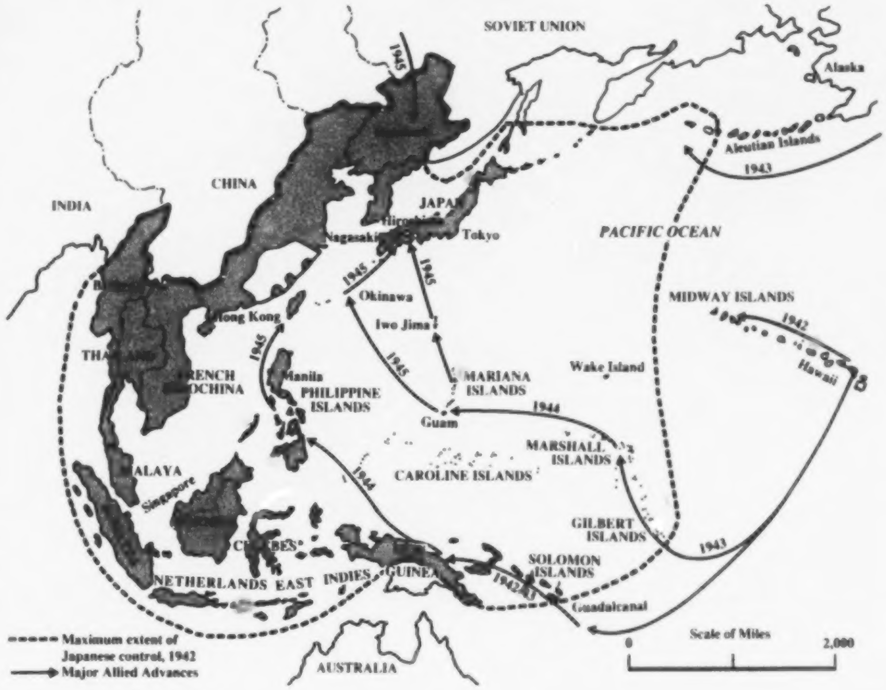
    E. What evidence on the map helps to explain Soviet influence in postwar eastern Europe?

75. Name the general who became supreme commander of the Allied forces in western Europe in 1944.

76. Even before Germany surrendered on May 8, 1945, Allied forces liberated survivors of Nazi concentration camps. Nearly 12 million people, half of them Jews, were systematically murdered in these camps. By what name is this program of **genocide** against the Jews known?

Answer question 77 using the map below.

World War II in the Pacific, 1942-1945


SOVIET UNION
Alaska
Aleutian Islands
1943
1945
CHINA
INDIA
JAPAN
Hiroshima
Nagasaki
Tokyo
PACIFIC OCEAN
MIDWAY ISLANDS
1942
Hawaii
1945
Okinawa
1945
Iwo Jima
1945
Hong Kong
1945
THAILAND
FRENCH INDOCHINA
Manila
PHILIPPINE ISLANDS
MARIANA ISLANDS
Wake Island
Guam
1944
MARSHALL ISLANDS
CAROLINE ISLANDS
1944
MALAYA
Singapore
CELEBES
GILBERT ISLANDS
1943
SOLOMON ISLANDS
NETHERLANDS EAST INDIES
NEW GUINEA
1942-43
Guadalcanal
AUSTRALIA
Maximum extent of Japanese control, 1942
Major Allied Advances
Scale of Miles
0
2,000

77. Identify the following battle sites of the Pacific campaign.

    A. Allied capture of this island in June 1942 stopped the Japanese offensive in the Pacific.

    B. In the first major Allied offensive in the Pacific, U.S. troops captured this vital Japanese outpost in November 1942, turning the tide of the Pacific war in favor of the Allies.

    C. From June 1944 to February 1945, U.S. forces fought successfully to regain control of these islands, which they had lost in 1942, prompting General Douglas MacArthur to pledge "I shall return."

78. Allied forces in the Pacific, under the command of General Douglas MacArthur and Admiral Chester Nimitz, used what tactic to capture Japanese-held islands?

79. What major contribution did American soldiers of the Navaho tribe make to Allied victories in the Pacific?

Many American women worked in defense plants during World War II. By 1945, women made up more than one-third of the nation's labor force. Illustrator Norman Rockwell painted the image of "Rosie the Riveter" to symbolize these patriotic workers.

80. In August 1945, the Japanese surrendered after the United States dropped atomic bombs on the Japanese cities of ____________ and ___________, killing more than 100,000 people and injuring thousands more. President Harry Truman said that the bombs were used to end the war quickly and save American lives.

81. Before his death in April 1945, Roosevelt had already begun negotiations with the other Allied powers to determine the fate of postwar Europe and Asia. Identify the following diplomatic conferences.

    A. In November 1943, Roosevelt, Churchill, and Soviet leader Josef Stalin met to discuss the Allied invasion of Europe and the Soviet offensive against Germany. They also began formulating a plan for an international peace organization.

    B. In February 1945, Roosevelt, Churchill, and Stalin made secret agreements giving the Soviet Union several territories in the Far East in exchange for Stalin's promise to enter the war against Japan. The three powers also pledged to assure free elections in liberated European countries after the war and planned a conference to finalize the United Nations charter.

    C. In July and August 1945, President Harry Truman, Churchill (replaced halfway through by new British Prime Minister Clement Attlee), and Stalin met to present an "unconditional surrender" ultimatum to Japan, to provide for the trial of war criminals, and to plan for postwar occupation of Germany.

The first atomic bomb explosion took place at a test site near Alamogordo, New Mexico, in July 1945. Known as the Manhattan Project, the U.S. effort to build an atomic weapon before the Germans cost $2 billion and employed a team of hundreds of scientists headed by physicist Robert Oppenheimer.

5. Emergence as a World Power (1945-1989)

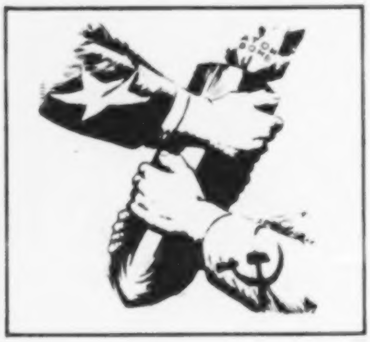
After World War II, the United States was the world's leading economic and military power. America rejected its historic isolationism and plunged headlong into international affairs. In foreign policy and, to a lesser extent, in domestic policy, the years since 1945 have been dominated by the cold war—a struggle for world influence between the United States and the Soviet Union.

The creation of nuclear weapons meant that a total war between the United States and the Soviet Union could have catastrophic effects, so the two powers tried to avoid direct confrontation. Instead, they fought for political, economic, and military influence in other nations. The Soviet Union established control over eastern Europe, while the United States forged strong alliances with western Europe and Japan. In the 1950s, the cold war's battlefield extended to Korea. At home, fear of communism led to a second "Red Scare," known as McCarthyism.

As U.S. leaders condemned the lack of democracy in communist nations, they could no longer ignore the demands of America's minorities for equality. During the 1950s, a powerful nonviolent movement for civil rights began among blacks in the segregated South. Yet a decade of violence followed in the 1960s when blacks, women, Hispanics, Native Americans, and others protested for equal rights and equal opportunity. The violence of the cold war also increased as U.S. soldiers fought communism in the jungles of Vietnam.

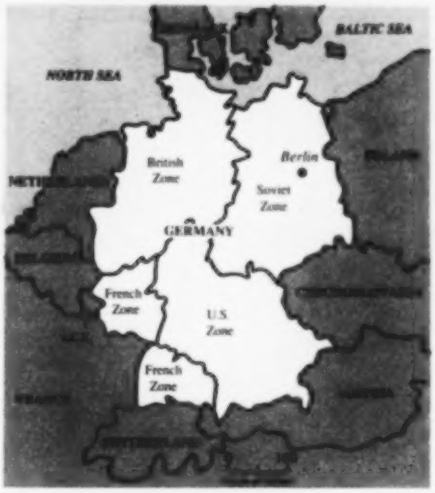
In the 1970s, tensions between the United States and the Soviet Union showed some signs of relaxation. Negotiations to limit nuclear weapons began. By the late 1980s, the Soviet Union and its allies had moved toward greater democracy and freedom of expression. It seemed as though the "iron curtain" described by Winston Churchill at the outset of the cold war might be lifting. Americans wondered whether the cold war was at an end. If so, what would be the future state of world affairs?

As the countries of the world become more interdependent, it becomes more important to understand the history of international relations: why nations were allies or enemies in the past and what factors caused them to change these alliances. As you study the questions in the following chapter, consider the impact U.S. foreign policy has on Americans and on people around the globe. What challenges will face U.S. foreign policy in the twenty-first century?



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Occupation of Germany



After the war, Germany was divided into four zones of occupation. Berlin, inside the Soviet zone, was also divided among the Allied powers. The Soviet zone became East Germany and the U.S., British, and French zones became West Germany. West Berlin remained politically and economically tied to West Germany.

Secretary of State John Foster Dulles based his foreign policy on threatening the Soviet Union with "massive retaliation," or the all-out use of nuclear weapons. Both Dulles and President Eisenhower believed in de-emphasizing conventional weapons in favor of nuclear weapons in order to limit the defense budget and get "more bang for the buck."

Waging the Cold War

1. After World War II, the United States and the Soviet Union competed for influence in the world, launching what American financier Bernard Baruch dubbed the "cold war" in 1946. Which of the following is *not* a reason for this conflict?

   A. The United States wanted free elections in occupied nations, which the Soviet Union did not allow in eastern Europe.

   B. The Soviet Union refused to allow American soldiers who had fought with the Red Army in eastern Europe to return home.

   C. Some Americans believed the Soviet Union intended to extend its control throughout the world.

   D. The Soviet Union feared encirclement by hostile capitalist nations and future attacks by Germany, so it tried to create a buffer zone of friendly nations on its western borders.

2. In April 1945, delegates from 50 nations met in San Francisco, California, to form the United Nations (UN), which officially came into existence in October of that year. Identify the following major divisions of the UN.

   A. In this group, all member nations of the UN are represented and have an equal vote. Its delegates discuss issues and make recommendations for settlement of disputes.

   B. This group recommends solutions to conflicts among nations. It may send a peace-keeping force to a troubled area. The United States, the Soviet Union, China, Great Britain, and France, which are the permanent members of the group, may veto any decision.

3. The U.S. monopoly of nuclear weapons ended with what event?

4. What 1947 act unified the armed services under the Secretary of Defense and created both the National Security Council (NSC) and the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)?

After World War II, approaches to dealing with the Soviet Union differed markedly. Answer questions 5-7 using the following excerpts from speeches by President Harry Truman and his secretary of commerce, Henry Wallace.

> "Getting tough" never bought anything real and lasting—whether for schoolyard bullies or businessmen or world powers. The tougher we get, the tougher the Russians will get.
>
> The real peace treaty we now need is between the United States and Russia. On our part, we should recognize that we have no more business in the political affairs of Eastern Europe than Russia has in the political affairs of Latin America, Western Europe, and the United States. . . . But whether we like it or not the Russians will try to socialize their sphere of influence just as we try to democratize our sphere of influence.
>
> Under friendly, peaceful competition the Russian world and the American world will gradually become more alike. The Russians will be forced to grant more and more of the personal freedoms; and we shall become more and more absorbed with the problems of social-economic justice. . . .
>
> How we meet this issue will determine whether we live not in "one world" or "two worlds"—but whether we live at all. (Henry Wallace, 1946)

> The peoples of a number of countries of the world have recently had totalitarian regimes forced upon them against their will. The government of the United States has made frequent protests against coercion and intimidation, in violation of the Yalta Agreement, in Poland, Rumania, and Bulgaria. I must also state that in a number of other countries there have been similar developments. . . .
>
> I believe that it must be the policy of the United States to support free peoples who are resisting attempted subjugation by armed minorities or by outside pressures. . . .
>
> The free peoples of the world look to us for support in maintaining their freedoms. If we falter in our leadership, we may endanger the peace of the world—and we shall surely endanger the welfare of our own nation. (President Harry Truman, 1947)

5. What was Truman's reaction to Wallace's speech, "The Fight for Peace"?

6. Truman's speech was given to convince Congress to provide aid to Greece and Turkey. Truman believed these two nations were in danger of coming under Soviet influence.

   A. What name is given to Truman's speech and his policy of aiding nations in danger of being influenced by communism?

   B. Who first proposed this policy of "containment," or limiting the spread of communism?

   C. What was the result of Truman's request for aid?

7. Based on the excerpts above, would Wallace or Truman be more likely to agree with each of the following statements?

   A. The United States should support rebels in the **Third World** who fight against communist rule.

   B. The United States should not send aid to ethnic minorities within the Soviet Union who want to gain independence.

   C. Democratic ideals such as freedom of speech and freedom of religion are possible within a communist state.

   D. The United States should aid eastern European nations to decrease Soviet influence there.

8. Fearing that the economic devastation of Europe after the war might make it an easy target for communist influence, the United States poured billions of dollars into rebuilding the European economy from 1948 to 1952. Name this effort and the U.S. official who proposed it.

9. In April 1949, a treaty was signed creating an international alliance in which members agreed that an attack against any one of them would be considered an attack against them all.

   A. What is the name of this organization, which placed the United States in a formal European military alliance for the first time since the American Revolution?

   B. What 12 nations were the original members?

10. After World War II, Japan adopted a new constitution that renounced war and set up a representative government, leaving the emperor powerless. Who supervised this transformation of Japan?

Citizens of Berlin watched anxiously for airplanes that supplied them during the Berlin Airlift of 1948-1949. In 1948, the Soviets tried to drive the western powers out of the city by blocking all access by rail, road, and water. The Soviets lifted the blockade after almost 11 months, during which U.S. and British airplanes brought tons of supplies to Berliners.

As a UN mediator, American Ralph Bunche won the Nobel Peace Prize in 1950 for negotiating an armistice between Arabs and Israelis. The conflict arose in 1948 when Israel was created as a Jewish homeland in the former British territory of Palestine, and neighboring Arab states fought against the new nation.

11. After the expulsion of the Japanese from China after World War II, civil war erupted in China.

    A. Who led the Chinese nationalist forces?

    B. Who led the Chinese communist forces?

    C. What was the U.S. position in this war, and what was the war's outcome?

12. After World War II, Korea was divided at the 38th parallel, with a U.S.-backed government in the southern region and a Soviet-backed government in the northern region.

    A. How did the Korean War begin?

    B. Why did the Soviet Union fail to veto the decision of the UN Security Council to send UN forces to aid South Korea?

    C. Where did General Douglas MacArthur direct a surprise landing in September 1950, quickly driving the North Koreans from South Korea?

    D. What action did the Chinese government take when UN forces advanced into North Korea as far as the Chinese border?

13. How did President Truman and General MacArthur differ over strategy during the Korean War, and what was the outcome of this disagreement?

14. An armistice agreement ended the fighting in Korea in July 1953, after two years of negotiations. What were the results of the armistice agreement?

15. The Viet Minh, nationalist revolutionaries led by communist Ho Chi Minh, fought French colonial rule in Vietnam. When the French withdrew in defeat in 1954, an international conference divided the nation in half at the 17th parallel, to be reunified after elections were held in 1956.

    A. Who ruled in North and South Vietnam after the conference, and whom did the United States support?

    B. Why were elections to unify the nation never held?

    C. What foreign policy theory, applied to Southeast Asia by President Dwight Eisenhower, held that if one nation was taken over by communists, surrounding nations would soon fall to communism as well?

    D. What organization did the United States form in 1954 to prevent communist expansion in Asia?

16. Gamal Abdel Nasser became president of Egypt in 1956 and soon nationalized the Suez Canal, which had been controlled by an international company. Great Britain and France, whose oil supplies depended upon the canal, invaded Egypt with the help of Israel. Briefly describe U.S. and Soviet involvement in the Suez Crisis.

17. The _____________, initiated in 1957, extended the policy of containment by allowing the president to provide financial and military aid to Middle Eastern nations fighting communist aggression.

18. In 1959, the cold war moved closer to home when Fidel Castro overthrew Cuban dictator Fulgencio Batista. How did the Eisenhower administration respond when Castro began seizing American property in Cuba?

19. What incident prevented a scheduled summit conference between President Eisenhower and Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev in 1960?

20. In his 1961 farewell address, President Eisenhower warned that "we must guard against the acquisition of unwarranted influence . . . by the military-industrial complex." Briefly explain the president's warning.

Postwar America

21. Briefly describe the provisions of the 1944 Servicemen's Readjustment Act, or GI Bill of Rights.

22. After World War II, inflation skyrocketed as Americans rushed to spend money they had accumulated during the war. A wave of strikes idled U.S. industry in 1946 as workers demanded higher wages. How did President Truman alienate unions in 1946?

23. Truman regained some union support by vetoing the Taft-Hartley Act, but Congress passed the act over the president's veto in June 1947. List the major provisions of this act.

24. In the election of 1948, Democrat Harry Truman and Republican Thomas Dewey faced opposition from two groups that split from the Democratic party. Describe these parties and name their presidential candidates.

25. Truman declared that "every segment of our population and every individual has the right to expect from his government a fair deal." Which of the following legislation, proposed as part of Truman's Fair Deal, was enacted by Congress and which was not?

    A. repeal of the Taft-Hartley Act

    B. an act providing for construction of housing for low-income citizens

    C. a national health insurance plan

    D. extension of Social Security benefits to more Americans

26. Truman used his executive power to limit racial discrimination.

    A. What were the conclusions of the 1947 report of the President's Committee on Civil Rights?

    B. In what type of government service did Truman ban segregation through an executive order in 1948?

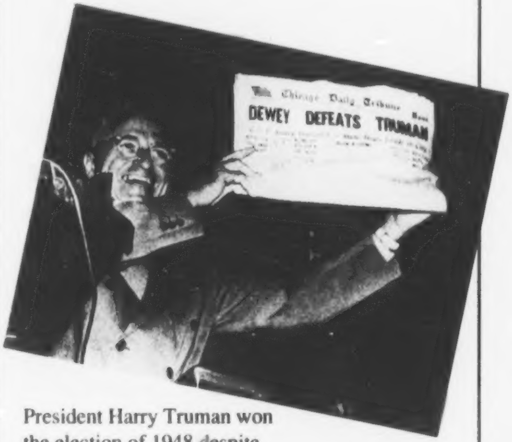
27. As the cold war abroad grew more intense, so did the cold war at home.

    A. What industry did the House of Representatives Committee on Un-American Activities (HUAC) investigate in 1947, leading to the **blacklisting** of suspected communists?

    B. What state department official was convicted of perjury in 1950 because his testimony to HUAC differed from that of Whittaker Chambers, who accused the official of providing secret documents to Soviet agents?

    C. What 1950 legislation, passed over Truman's veto, required registration of communist organizations and prohibited employment of communists in national defense work?

    D. What two Americans were executed in 1953 for passing secrets regarding atomic weapons to the Soviet Union?



President Harry Truman won the election of 1948 despite pollsters' predictions and the *Chicago Tribune*'s premature announcement of his defeat.

After the war, mass production of homes created enormous suburbs like Levittown, New York, to house the postwar "baby boom" generation, an enormous population explosion that took place from 1946 to about 1960.

Black students tried to integrate Central High School in Little Rock, Arkansas, in 1957. Governor Orval Faubus ordered the state National Guard to prevent integration, but President Eisenhower federalized the National Guard and ordered it to protect the students.

28. From 1950 to 1954, Senator Joseph McCarthy, a Republican from Wisconsin, campaigned to expose all communist sympathizers in the U.S. government.

    A. What was "McCarthyism"?

    B. What finally ended McCarthy's accusations?

29. Dwight Eisenhower was elected president in 1952, advocating "modern Republicanism," which tried to reduce federal spending without eliminating New Deal programs. Which of the following did *not* take place during Eisenhower's two administrations?

    A. Control of offshore oil fields was removed from the federal government and given to the states.

    B. Social Security benefits were extended.

    C. All federal subsidies to farmers were ended.

    D. The Department of Health, Education, and Welfare was created.

30. Under President Eisenhower, Congress authorized the largest public works project in U.S. history. What was this project?

31. Name the economist who wrote *The Affluent Society* (1958), suggesting that Americans should spend less money on consumer goods and more on improving education, housing, and the environment.

32. Church membership increased dramatically after World War II. In 1954, what words did Congress add to the Pledge of Allegiance?

33. In 1957, the Soviet Union launched *Sputnik*, the first man-made satellite to orbit the earth. How did the National Defense Education Act of 1958 respond to Americans' fears that the United States had lost its lead in science and technology?

34. What two states were added to the union in 1959?

35. In the 1950s, Congress adopted a new policy toward Native Americans known as ____________ . The policy was intended to end federal services to Native Americans and to place reservations under state control.

36. In the 1950s, black Americans increased their efforts to obtain equality in American society. In what case did the Supreme Court unanimously rule that "separate but equal" educational facilities were inherently unequal?

37. Name the author of the Supreme Court's opinion in the above case, who led the Court as chief justice from 1953 to 1969. His tenure marked an activist period of the Court, during which it strongly defended civil rights.

38. In 1955, Rosa Parks refused to give up her bus seat to a white person and was arrested for her defiance. Her act led to a year-long boycott of city buses by black citizens and thrust the boycott's leader, Reverend Martin Luther King, Jr., into the national spotlight.

    A. In what city did the boycott take place?

    B. What civil rights organization was formed in 1957, with Martin Luther King, Jr., as president?

39. In 1960, a group of black college students in Greensboro, North Carolina, began the sit-in movement, refusing to leave their seats at segregated lunch counters until they were served. The sit-ins soon spread throughout the South and spawned a new civil rights organization called ________________.

40. Identify the following novels written by black Americans in the 1950s.

    A. In this work, Ralph Ellison portrayed a nameless black man's search for his identity in American society.

    B. James Baldwin based this novel on his own experiences as a young preacher in Harlem.

41. In the 1950s, a group of writers known as "Beatniks" rebelled against society and wrote frankly about sexuality and drugs. Identify the authors of the following "Beat Movement" works.

    A. The long poem "Howl" (1956) attacked the dehumanization of modern society.

    B. The novel *On the Road* (1957) chronicled a hitchhiking trip across America.

42. Name the style of art in which painters such as Jackson Pollock moved away from realistic representation to abstract forms, with emphasis on emotion and color.

From Cold War to Detente

43. Under President John Kennedy, military spending increased. He moved from Eisenhower's threat of massive retaliation to the ________________ principle, preparing for many possibilities, from guerilla tactics to nuclear war.

44. Kennedy continued the plan begun under Eisenhower for an invasion of Cuba. What was the outcome of the 1961 Bay of Pigs invasion?

45. In October 1962, Kennedy announced that the Soviets were building missile launch pads in Cuba, just 90 miles from the U.S. mainland.

    A. What was Kennedy's first response to the situation?

    B. How did Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev react?

    C. What two actions were taken after the Cuban missile crisis to avoid bringing the United States and the Soviet Union to the brink of nuclear war in the future?

46. Which of the following was *not* a part of the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty signed by the United States and the Soviet Union in August 1963?

    A. Underground tests of nuclear weapons were banned.

    B. Atmospheric tests of nuclear weapons were banned.

    C. Underwater tests of nuclear weapons were banned.

    D. Outer space tests of nuclear weapons were banned.

47. On what occasion did President Kennedy utter the famous phrase in German, "*Ich bin ein Berliner*," meaning "I am a Berliner"?

Infielder Jackie Robinson became the first black American to play in the modern major leagues of baseball when he signed with the Brooklyn Dodgers in 1947. Robinson received rookie-of-the-year honors in 1947 and was named Most Valuable Player of the National League in 1949.

Thousands of Americans visit the Vietnam Veterans Memorial in Washington, D.C., each year to pay their respects to those who fought and died in America's longest war. The black granite wall, dedicated in 1982, contains the names of more than 58,000 men and women killed or missing in action in the war.

48. In 1961, Kennedy created two plans to build friendship with Third World nations and keep them out of the Soviet sphere of influence.

    A. What program offered billions of dollars in aid to Latin American nations to help them reform their economies and avoid revolutions?

    B. What program sent volunteers to teach and give technical advice to people in developing nations?

49. During the 1960s, the Soviet Union and the United States competed in the exploration of space. Identify the following U.S. astronauts.

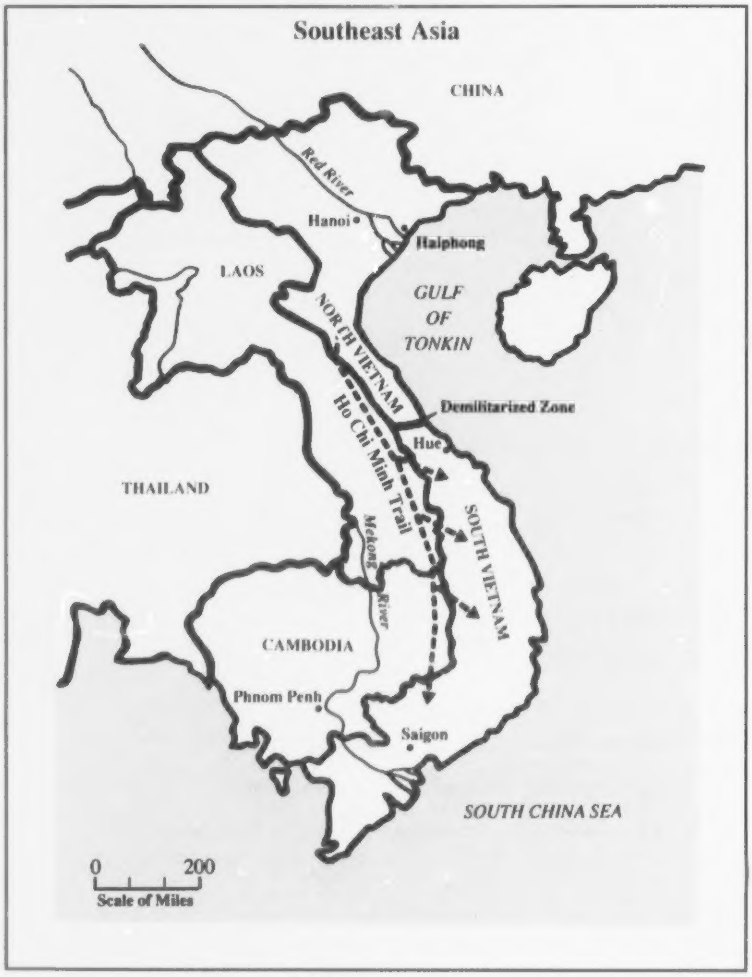
    A. In February 1962, he was the first American to orbit the earth.

    B. In July 1969, he was the first person to set foot on the moon.

50. How did U.S. involvement in Vietnam's civil war escalate under President Kennedy?

51. In 1960, the the National Liberation Front, or Viet Cong, was organized to fight against South Vietnam's Diem regime. Diem was losing popular support due to his harsh repression of political opponents and Buddhists. What was the fate of the Diem regime?

Answer questions 52-53 using the map below.


Southeast Asia
CHINA
Red River
Hanoi
Haiphong
LAOS
GULF OF TONKIN
NORTH VIETNAM
Demilitarized Zone
Hue
Ho Chi Minh Trail
THAILAND
SOUTH VIETNAM
Mekong River
CAMBODIA
Phnom Penh
Saigon
SOUTH CHINA SEA
0
200
Scale of Miles

52. How might the location of the Ho Chi Minh Trail, the Viet Cong supply route, widen the Vietnam conflict?

53. In August 1964, Kennedy's successor, President Lyndon Johnson, announced that the North Vietnamese had fired on the U.S. ships *Maddox* and *Turner Joy*. Where did these attacks (which some doubted had taken place) occur, and what was Johnson's reaction?

54. In 1965, the United States began Operation Rolling Thunder, regular bombing missions over North Vietnam. By 1968, U.S. forces in Vietnam, commanded by General William Westmoreland, had grown to more than 500,000.

    A. Why did the Viet Cong's Tet offensive in early 1968 cause Americans to begin to doubt that North Vietnam could be defeated?

    B. In March 1968, to what area did President Johnson declare he would limit U.S. bombing raids?

55. Preliminary peace talks between the United States and North Vietnam began in May 1968 in Paris, France, but the war continued. How did President Richard Nixon's policy of "Vietnamization," begun in 1969, lessen U.S. commitment in Vietnam?

56. Briefly describe the actions taken by the United States to destroy Viet Cong bases in Cambodia.

57. Opposition to American involvement in Vietnam grew stronger as the war progressed.

    A. At what site did 100,000 Americans protest the continuation of the war in October 1967?

    B. At what university did National Guardsmen kill four students during a 1970 protest against the U.S. invasion of Cambodia?

    C. How did publication of the Pentagon Papers in the *New York Times* in 1971 diminish public confidence in the government's war efforts?

58. Describe the key points of the cease-fire agreement that resulted in withdrawal of U.S. troops from Vietnam in 1973.

59. Under President Richard Nixon, the United States pursued a policy of cooperation with the Soviet Union and attempted to limit the arms race. Name Nixon's national security advisor, who promoted this policy, known as detente.

60. In 1972, Nixon traveled to the Soviet Union to meet Soviet leader Leonid Brezhnev. The two leaders signed an agreement limiting antiballistic missile (ABM) systems. Name this agreement.

61. What was the reason for the oil embargo imposed on the United States by Arab nations in 1973, and what was the U.S. response?

An Era of Protest

62. President Kennedy's domestic program was known as the New Frontier. In his inaugural address, President Kennedy challenged Americans by saying, "Ask not what your country can do for you—ask __________."

President Lyndon Johnson showed his weariness as the Vietnam War dragged on. After the Tet offensive in 1968, public opinion turned more strongly against the war, and it became clear that further U.S. troop commitments would not lead to victory. In March 1968, Johnson announced that he would not seek another term as president.

Richard Nixon, the first U.S. president to visit China, greeted revolutionary leader Mao Zedong in February 1972. The president's visit ended more than 20 years of strained relations between the two nations as Nixon and Chinese leader Zhou Enlai signed agreements to begin scientific and cultural exchanges.

63. Kennedy quickly took action to improve the nation's economy.

A. What method did Kennedy use to try to curb inflation?

B. What incident hurt the Kennedy administration's relationship with the business community?

64. Black Americans increased their demands for equality in the 1960s.

A. What group, formed in 1942, began the "freedom rides" in May 1961, traveling to the South by bus to integrate interstate transportation facilities?

B. What group organized voter-registration drives for blacks in the South?

C. What tactics did Birmingham, Alabama, police use against civil rights demonstrators in 1963, angering many Americans?

65. President Kennedy made efforts to support the growing demand for civil rights among blacks.

A. Who became the first black student to attend the University of Mississippi in 1962, under the protection of U.S. marshals sent by President Kennedy?

B. What was the purpose of the Twenty-fourth Amendment, passed by Congress in 1962 with Kennedy's support and ratified in 1964 after his death?

C. When did Kennedy honor his campaign promise to sign an executive order outlawing segregation in federally subsidized housing?

D. For what purpose did President Kennedy address Americans via television in June 1963, asking "Are we to say to the world, and much more importantly, to each other that this is a land of the free except for the Negroes . . . that we have no class or caste system, no ghettos, no master race, except with respect to Negroes?"

66. On November 22, 1963, while on a visit to Dallas, Texas, President Kennedy was fatally shot, and Lyndon Johnson was sworn in as the nation's new president.

A. Who was arrested and charged with the assassination, and what was his fate?

B. Who headed the commission charged with investigating the assassination, and what were its findings?

67. President Johnson pushed Kennedy's civil rights package through Congress as the Civil Rights Act of 1964. Johnson also supported the Voting Rights Act of 1965. List the major provisions of these acts.

68. In 1966, Stokely Carmichael, chairman of SNCC, began the __________ movement, which emphasized racial pride through black-controlled politics, businesses, and schools.

69. From 1964 to 1968, the frustrations of blacks in the nation's cities erupted in race riots. Where did a massive riot in 1965 take the lives of 34 people?

70. In 1967, Johnson appointed a National Advisory Commission on Civil Disorders, known as the Kerner Commission for its chairman, Governor Otto Kerner of Illinois. Briefly describe the conclusions of this group's study of the race riots of the 1960s.

Reverend Martin Luther King, Jr., delivered his famous "I Have a Dream" speech during a 1963 civil rights march in Washington, D.C., attended by more than 250,000 people. King dreamed that his children "will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the color of their skin but by the content of their character." King received the Nobel Peace Prize in 1964.

Answer questions 71-72 using the following excerpts by Stokely Carmichael and Martin Luther King, Jr.

> We cannot be expected any longer to march and have our heads broken in order to say to whites: come on, you're nice guys. For you are not nice guys. We have found you out.
>
> . . . A man needs a black panther on his side when he and his family must endure . . . loss of job, eviction, starvation, and sometimes death, for political activity. He may also need a gun and SNCC reaffirms the right of black men everywhere to defend themselves when threatened or attacked.
>
> As for initiating the use of violence, we hope that such programs as ours will make that unnecessary; but it is not for us to tell black communities whether they can or cannot use any particular form of action to resolve their problems. Responsibility for the use of violence by black men, whether in self-defense or initiated by them, lies with the white community.
>
> . . . Black power . . . means the creation of power bases from which black people can work to change statewide or nationwide patterns of oppression through pressure from strength—instead of weakness. (Stokely Carmichael, 1966)

> Probably the most destructive feature of Black Power is its unconscious and often conscious call for retaliatory violence. . . . The problem with hatred and violence is that they intensify the fears of the white majority, and leave them less ashamed of their prejudices toward Negroes.
>
> The ultimate weakness of violence is that it is a descending spiral, begetting the very thing it seeks to destroy. Instead of diminishing evil, it multiplies it. Through violence you may murder the liar, but you cannot murder the lie, nor establish the truth. . . . Returning violence for violence multiplies violence, adding deeper darkness to a night already devoid of stars. Darkness cannot drive out darkness; only light can do that. Hate cannot drive out hate; only love can do that. (Martin Luther King, Jr., 1967)

71. Would Carmichael or King be more likely to agree with the following statements?

    A. Blacks have the right to use violence to defend themselves against oppression by whites.

    B. White society is to blame for the Watts riot.

    C. Rioting will only increase the problems of blacks by making whites angrier and more oppressive toward them.

72. Stokely Carmichael's reference to a black panther refers to the Black Panther party, organized in California in 1966.

    A. Who were the two chief founders of the party?

    B. What tactic did the party favor for gaining political and economic equality for blacks?

73. Like blacks, Hispanic Americans suffered discrimination and also took action to improve their lot in society in the 1960s.

    A. Who tried to improve working conditions for California's Hispanic farm workers during the 1960s, organizing the United Farm Workers union using nonviolent tactics such as boycotts?

    B. What Texas-based political party, led by José Angel Gutiérrez, called for bilingual education and worked to elect Hispanics to public office?

    C. What group stressed militant action, but also sponsored school breakfast programs and Chicano, or Mexican-American, studies programs for children?

Muhammad Speaks
FREEDOM
CAN'T WAIT!

Malcolm X, a convert to the Nation of Islam religion, or Black Muslims, was a proponent of black separatism and the use of violence in self-defense. He was assassinated in 1965, perhaps by rival Black Muslims, after he had moderated his views on separatism.

IN HONOR OF
ALICE PAUL
1885-1977
Author of the Equal Rights Amendment
Aug 26, 1977
March Again for Equal Rights

In 1972, Congress passed the Equal Rights Amendment (ERA), which stated: "Equality of rights under the law shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of sex." The amendment was never ratified, although its deadline was extended from 1979 to 1982.

Mario Savio led the Free Speech Movement (FSM) at the University of California in Berkeley. In 1964, the FSM protested the university's ban on political activity in certain areas of campus, winning its battle after staging a sit-in at the administration building.

74. Name the group of students led by Tom Hayden and Al Haber, that issued the Port Huron Statement decrying the state of American society. The group led many antiwar marches during the 1960s.

75. During the 1960s, many students took part in a "counterculture" that sought to attack the status quo.

    A. What former Harvard psychologist encouraged young people to experiment with illegal drugs such as LSD?

    B. Who was a leading musical voice of the protest movements of the 1960s, with songs such as "Blowin' in the Wind"?

    C. What three-day rock music festival brought together some 300,000 young people from all over the United States in August 1969?

76. Name the type of art in which painters such as Andy Warhol and Roy Lichtenstein satirized the consumer society by turning common items such as soup cans and comic books into art.

77. Name the author who helped spark the feminist movement in the 1960s with *The Feminine Mystique* (1963), maintaining that women needed fulfillment outside the home. She founded the National Organization for Women (NOW) in 1966.

78. Name the leader of the STOP ERA organization, which successfully campaigned against ratification of the Equal Rights Amendment (ERA). The anti-ERA group believed the amendment would lessen protections for women.

79. The Equal Pay Act of 1963 guaranteed women equal pay for equal work. In 1988, women in general earned about ____________ percent of what men earned.

80. Native Americans also protested for their rights in the 1960s and 1970s.

    A. Where did members of the American Indian Movement (AIM) seize a trading post in 1973, demanding reforms in tribal government?

    B. How was U.S. policy toward Native Americans changed under President Nixon?

    C. Who wrote *Bury My Heart at Wounded Knee* (1971), which helped increase understanding of Native Americans' concerns?

81. In 1964, almost 20 percent of the nation's population lived in poverty. A 1962 book described the plight of the invisible poor in America's "affluent society." Name the book and its author.

82. President Johnson launched his "War on Poverty" with the Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, which authorized some $1 billion for programs for poor Americans. It created the Office of Economic Opportunity (OEO) to administer these programs. Identify the programs described below.

    A. This program gave job training to high school dropouts.

    B. This program helped students from poor families qualify to enter college.

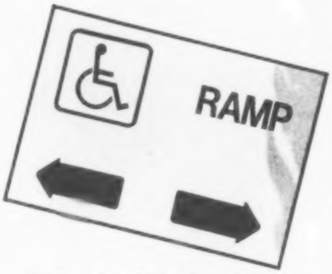
    C. This program's preschools prepared poor children for kindergarten.

    D. This program sent volunteers to teach and train people in impoverished areas in the United States.

83. Identify the following acts passed by Congress in 1965.
    A. This act provided medical care for Americans over 65 through social security taxes and optional low-cost medical insurance. The act also gave grants to states to help them create Medicaid programs to provide health care for the poor.
    B. This act provided more than $1 billion in federal aid to elementary and secondary schools, based on the number of needy children.
    C. This act provided federal scholarships to college undergraduates.
84. The 1965 Housing Act provided funds for low-income housing and set up what new department to coordinate federal housing programs?
85. The year 1968 was one during which hundreds of U.S. cities were shaken by violence.
    A. What event in April 1968 sparked race riots in U.S. cities?
    B. Who was murdered in June 1968, just after winning the Democratic presidential primary in California, and who was the assassin?
    C. Where was the 1968 Democratic convention, which erupted in violence between city police and protesters, held?
86. George Wallace, of the American Independent party, received 13 percent of the popular vote in the presidential election of 1968, running against Republican Richard Nixon and Democrat Hubert Humphrey. Briefly describe the platform of Wallace's party.

The Presidency in Crisis

87. In addition to ending the Vietnam War, President Richard Nixon had many problems to deal with at home.
    A. What economic condition combining high unemployment and a high inflation rate is associated with the 1970s?
    B. What Nixon administration program sought to return federal funds and responsibilities to the states?
    C. What program proposed by Nixon, but not passed by Congress, would have offered poor families a guaranteed income?
88. Nixon won the 1972 presidential election by a landslide, but his victory was soon tarnished by the Watergate scandal.
    A. For what act were five people, including James McCord, an official of the Committee to Re-elect the President (CREEP), arrested in June 1972?
    B. What action did Congress take regarding this crime?
    C. Over what issue did Watergate special prosecutor Leon Jaworski take President Nixon to court in 1973, and what was the Supreme Court's decision in *U.S. v. Nixon* (1974)?
    D. What three articles of impeachment against President Nixon were passed by the House Judiciary Committee in July 1974?
89. On August 9, 1974, Nixon became the first U.S. president to resign his office. Gerald Ford, who had replaced Spiro Agnew as vice president, became the nation's next president. Under what circumstances had Vice President Agnew resigned?



During the 1970s, Americans with physical handicaps gained access to many public places through the installation of ramps, elevators, and other aids. Under the 1973 Rehabilitation Act, programs receiving federal funds were required to make their facilities accessible to the handicapped.

Reporters Carl Bernstein (left) and Bob Woodward, working for the *Washington Post*, uncovered many of the facts about the Watergate scandal. The *Post* won a Pulitzer Prize for the team's work in 1973. Woodward and Bernstein wrote about Watergate in *All the President's Men* (1974) and *The Final Days* (1976).

President Carter united Egypt's president Anwar Sadat (left) and Israeli prime minister Menachem Begin (right) to discuss a peace agreement at the presidential retreat at Camp David, Maryland, in 1978. Israel and Egypt signed a peace treaty in 1979.

NO!
OUR CANAL
SAVE
CANAL

Many Americans opposed the Panama Canal Treaties, signed by President Carter and Panamanian president Omar Torrijos Herrera in 1977. The treaty provided for returning the canal to full Panamanian control on January 1, 2000.

90. The Watergate scandal led Congress to place restrictions on the "imperial presidency," the extension of executive power since the New Deal era. Identify the following acts limiting executive power.

    A. Because Nixon sometimes refused to spend appropriated money, Congress in 1974 passed this act, which prohibited the impoundment of federal money.

    B. This 1973 act decreased the president's power to commit troops to combat without congressional approval.

91. What did President Gerald Ford do in September 1974, hoping to end the Watergate crisis?

92. Inflation and recession continued to plague the U.S. economy under President Ford. What was Ford's anti-inflation campaign called?

93. In foreign policy, Ford faced continuing problems in Southeast Asia. Communists known as the ____________ took control of Cambodia in 1975. In May 1975, these communists seized the American ship ____________ . Ford quickly sent U.S. Marines, who recaptured the ship and saved the crew.

94. North and South Vietnam were reunited under communist rule in 1975. The former South Vietnamese capital of Saigon was renamed ____________ .

Into Our Third Century

95. The presidential election of 1976 pitted President Gerald Ford against Jimmy Carter, former governor of Georgia. Carter emphasized his lack of ties to the Washington bureaucracy and won the election. Energy conservation was one of Carter's top priorities. Which of the following energy policies proposed by Carter was *not* passed by Congress?

    A. five percent gasoline tax

    B. decontrol of domestic oil prices

    C. tax credits for energy-saving measures

    D. creation of a Department of Energy to oversee energy policy

96. Name four industries in which federal regulations were eased during the Carter administration to promote greater competition.

97. What 1979 event provoked protests against the use of nuclear power as an alternative energy source?

98. How did Congress respond to evidence that residents of Love Canal, New York, were being poisoned by chemical wastes dumped in their area?

99. President Carter's foreign policy stressed his concern for human rights. Carter's criticism of Soviet human rights violations contributed to strained U.S.-Soviet relations.

    A. What were the main points of the SALT II treaty of 1979 between the United States and the Soviet Union?

    B. What was the U.S. reaction to the Soviet Union's invasion of Afghanistan in December 1979, and when were Soviet troops withdrawn from the area?

    C. What was the key point of the Carter Doctrine, announced by President Carter after the invasion of Afghanistan?

100. In what year did the United States sever its ties with Taiwan and establish full diplomatic relations with the People's Republic of China?

101. In 1979, a revolution led by Ayatollah Khomeini, an Islamic religious leader, deposed the shah of Iran.

    A. What role had the United States previously played in Iran?

    B. What event caused Iranians to seize the American embassy in Tehran in November 1979, taking more than 50 hostages, and what were the kidnappers' demands?

102. In the 1980 elections, Republicans captured a majority of seats in the Senate for the first time since the 1950s. Republican Ronald Reagan defeated Jimmy Carter for the presidency, becoming the oldest person ever elected to that office. What independent presidential candidate captured seven percent of the vote in this election?

103. In his 1981 inaugural address, President Reagan declared, "____________ is not the solution to our problem. ____________ is the problem."

104. Reagan soon launched his economic policy, labeled "Reaganomics," which was based on the theory of **supply-side economics.** Which of the following is *not* a component of the economic plan supported by the president and passed by Congress in 1981?

    A. cuts in domestic spending, including cuts in food stamps, Medicare, Medicaid, and school meals

    B. tax cuts to promote investment and job creation

    C. tax increases for people in the highest tax brackets

    D. reductions in federal regulation of business

105. Which of the following was *not* a part of the tax reforms passed by Congress with Reagan's support in 1986?

    A. Many of the poorest Americans were removed from the tax rolls.

    B. Individual tax rates were reduced.

    C. Corporate tax rates were increased.

    D. Some tax shelters were eliminated.

106. Reagan had promised to balance the federal budget, but from 1980 to 1986 the deficit tripled.

    A. What act, passed in 1985 and revised in 1987, required the federal government to gradually eliminate the deficit by 1993, automatically imposing cuts if Congress fails to meet its budget targets?

    B. What portion of federal budget outlays increased by the largest percentage from 1980 to 1986?

    C. What portion of federal budget outlays increased by the largest dollar amount from 1980 to 1986?

107. Why did Reagan impose trade sanctions on the Soviet Union in 1981?

108. What 1983 event led Reagan to withdraw U.S. marines from a UN peace-keeping force sent to aid the government of Lebanon?

The 52 Americans held hostage in Teheran for 444 days were released on the day Ronald Reagan was inaugurated president in 1981.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Shortly before his inauguration, President-elect George Bush met with President Ronald Reagan and Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev in New York City. In 1989, there were many signs that the cold war might be ending as Gorbachev implemented his policy of *glasnost* ("openness") in the Soviet Union.

THERE IS NO ROOM AT THE INN

This statue vividly portrays the problem of homelessness. Estimates of the number of homeless people in America in 1988 ranged from 250,000 to more than 2 million. During the 1980s, federal funds for housing programs were cut by some 70 percent.

109. The Reagan administration favored a policy of "constructive engagement" in dealing with South Africa, but during the 1980s, Congress began to call for stricter sanctions against the nation due to its apartheid policy. Briefly explain "constructive engagement" and describe the bill dealing with South Africa passed over Reagan's veto in 1986.

110. For many years President Ferdinand Marcos ruled the Philippines as a dictator. The United States took no action against Marcos because he was a strong anticommunist and because the United States had two valuable military bases on the islands. In 1986, a coalition overthrew Marcos, and the United States refused to come to his aid. Name the coalition's leader, who became the new president of the Philippines.

111. In the 1980s, the cold war reached into the Central American nation of Nicaragua. President Carter had originally supported the Sandinistas, revolutionaries who overthrew the Somoza regime. As the Sandinistas strengthened their ties with Cuba and the Soviet Union, President Reagan began supporting the ____________, who fought against the Sandinistas.

112. In November 1986, a scandal involving White House staff members was made public. It became known as the Iran-*contra* affair.

A. Why was it illegal for Oliver North and other White House staff members to organize a network of private citizens and government officials to raise money and arms for the Nicaraguan *contras*?

B. How was Iran involved in this scandal?

113. From 1985 to 1988, President Reagan and the new Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev held five summit meetings to discuss nuclear arms limitations and to ease tensions between the two nations.

A. What dispute ended the 1986 summit in Reykjavik, Iceland?

B. What were the major points of the Intermediate-range Nuclear Forces (INF) treaty, signed in Washington, D.C., in 1987?

114. Although the Democrats regained control of the Senate in the 1986 elections, they failed to win the presidency in the 1980s.

A. What two candidates ran for president and vice president on the Democratic ticket in 1984, and why was it historic?

B. Who ran for the Democratic nomination for president in 1984 and 1988 under the "rainbow coalition" of minorities, women, and the poor?

C. Who became the nation's president in 1989?

6. The Living Constitution

During the summer of 1787 in Philadelphia, 55 delegates from 12 of the 13 states met to revise the Articles of Confederation. In the sweltering heat they debated and argued; at times it appeared the convention would break up because of disagreements. Finally, on September 17, the delegates concluded their deliberations and signed the Constitution. Few were happy with all of its provisions, but most agreed that it was the best document possible.

At the signing, Benjamin Franklin noticed the sun painted on the chair of George Washington, who was presiding at the convention. Franklin commented that artists found it difficult to distinguish between a rising and a setting sun. During the debates, he said, he had looked at the sun behind the president "without being able to tell whether it was rising or setting. But now at length I have the happiness to know that it is a rising and not a setting sun."

More than 200 years later, Americans are still governed by that Constitution, the oldest written national constitution still in operation. This chapter examines the framework for American government created by the Constitution, tracing its historical roots and outlining its fundamental principles. This chapter also describes the amending process through which the Constitution can be changed. Particular attention is focused on the first 10 amendments to the Constitution, known as the Bill of Rights, and on the Fourteenth Amendment, which together are the sources of many civil rights and civil liberties. This chapter contains many Supreme Court cases because, in the constitutional system, the judicial branch is the final arbiter of what the Constitution means—unless the Constitution is amended by "We, the People" to overrule the Court.

Without detracting from the authors of the Constitution, it can be argued that "We, the People" were writing a Constitution from 1607 to 1787. Government in the United States did not begin with the Declaration of Independence or the Constitution. Rather, the framers drew on their British heritage, their experiences in colonial, state, and national government, as well as on contemporary political thought.

It also can be argued that Americans have been writing a Constitution from 1787 to the present. The Constitution has been amended to meet the demands of a growing republic, and the protections of the Constitution have been expanded to groups originally excluded from its coverage. "We, the People"—the people of today and tomorrow, not just the people of 1787—ordain and establish the Constitution.

We the People

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Origins of American Government

1. The framers of the U.S. Constitution derived many of their ideas from British documents developed to limit the monarch's power.

   A. The ____________, signed by King John in 1215, guaranteed such fundamental rights as trial by jury and due process of law.

   B. The ____________, signed by Charles I in 1628, prevented the monarch from requiring homeowners to shelter troops without their consent.

   C. The ____________, signed by William and Mary of Orange in 1689, guaranteed the right of British subjects to petition the king; gave certain subjects the right to bear arms; and prohibited excessive bail and fines, and cruel and unusual punishment.

2. The framers of the Constitution were also influenced by events of the colonial period. Three types of colonial government existed: the **royal colony,** the **proprietary colony,** and the **charter colony.** Which type of colony had the most democratic form of government? Why?

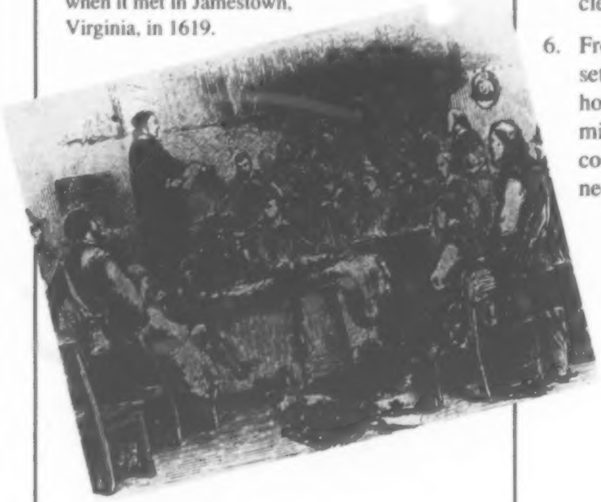
3. Delegates to the Constitutional Convention were also familiar with the political writings of their time, such as *Two Treatises of Government,* in which John Locke outlined his theory of a "social contract" between government and the people. Locke, an English philosopher, stated that individuals have certain natural rights to life, liberty, and property. If the government fails to protect these rights, people have a right to rebel and overthrow it. Name the landmark American document that echoed this view.

4. Some of the Constitution's provisions were drawn from state constitutions adopted around the time of the Declaration of Independence. What four characteristics were shared by most of the new state constitutions?

5. The first constitution of the United States was the Articles of Confederation. The U.S. Constitution, written in 1787, was designed to correct the defects of the Articles, although much of what went into the Constitution came directly from the Articles. List the major weaknesses of the Articles of Confederation.

6. From late 1786 to early 1787, a group of farmers in western Massachusetts, angered by high taxes and farm foreclosures, closed down courthouses and attempted to capture a federal arsenal. Although state militiamen quelled the rebellion, this uprising, known as ____________, convinced many people that a stronger national government was necessary.

The House of Burgesses, consisting of 22 elected delegates, became the first representative body in the English colonies in America when it met in Jamestown, Virginia, in 1619.



The Constitution

7. At the Constitutional Convention, a long debate ensued between delegates from large and small states over representation in the national legislature. Identify each of the following proposals.

   A. This plan, presented by Governor Edmund Randolph, called for a government with three branches: an executive, a judiciary, and a bicameral legislature. Representation in each house would be based upon state population or money contributions to the central government. Members of the lower house would be popularly elected, and then would select members of the upper house from lists of nominees of the state legislatures. The national legislature would select officials in the executive and judicial branches and would have the authority to cancel conflicting state laws and make states comply with national laws.

   B. This plan, presented by William Paterson, called for a unicameral legislature in which all states had equal representation. Representatives would be chosen by the state legislatures. The plan also called for a plural executive chosen by the national legislature and a supreme court appointed for life by the executive officers.

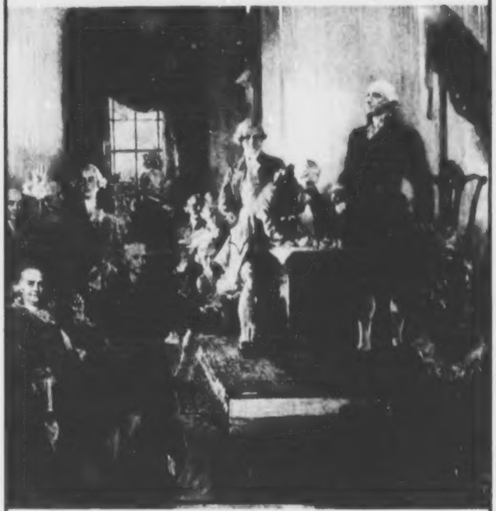
   C. This proposal, presented by Roger Sherman, called for a bicameral Congress. Members in the lower house would be apportioned among the states according to population and elected by the people. In the upper house, each state would have an equal number of representatives, who would be chosen by the state legislatures.

8. Several of the compromises included in the Constitution reflect regional divisions that existed between North and South. How did the framers of the Constitution resolve each of the issues outlined below?

   A. Most southern delegates wanted slaves to be counted in determining the number of representatives in the House; most northern delegates took the opposing view.

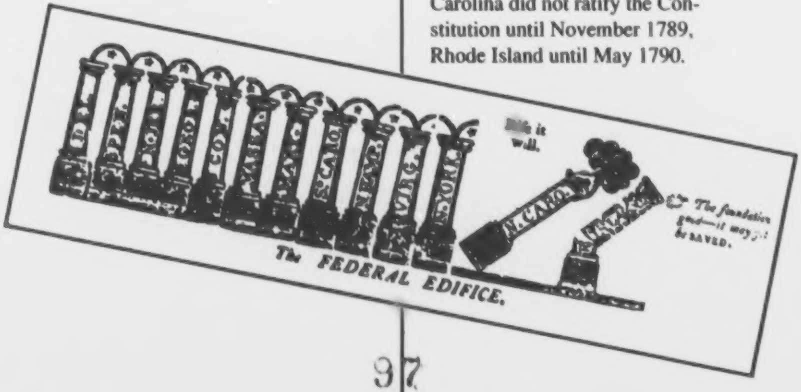
   B. Northern delegates wanted the national government to have the power to regulate commerce. Southerners feared that Congress might use this power to interfere with their exports of agricultural products and imports of slaves.

9. For the Constitution to take effect, popularly elected conventions in nine states had to approve. Why was this method of ratification chosen?



Delegates from 12 states met from May 25 to September 17, 1787, at Independence Hall in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, to revise the Articles of Confederation. George Washington presided as the 55 delegates debated the provisions of the new Constitution.

This woodcut commemorates the ratification of the Constitution by 11 states, indicated in order from left to right. North Carolina did not ratify the Constitution until November 1789, Rhode Island until May 1790.


CON.
S.CARO.
VIRG.
N.YORK
it will.
N.CARO.
The foundation good—it may yet be SAVED.
The FEDERAL EDIFICE.

James Madison, the "father of the Constitution," recorded the proceedings of the Constitutional Convention and helped secure ratification of the Constitution in Virginia. As a representative in the first federal congress, Madison sponsored the first 10 amendments to the Constitution, known as the Bill of Rights.

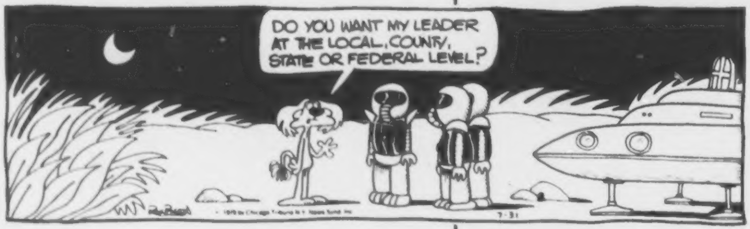
10. Two factions emerged in the debate over ratification: the Federalists, who favored the Constitution, and the Antifederalists, who opposed it. What were the two main objections of the Antifederalists to the Constitution?

11. From 1787 to 1788, Alexander Hamilton, James Madison, and John Jay wrote a series of 85 essays signed with the pen name "Publius." By what name are these essays collectively known, and why were they written?

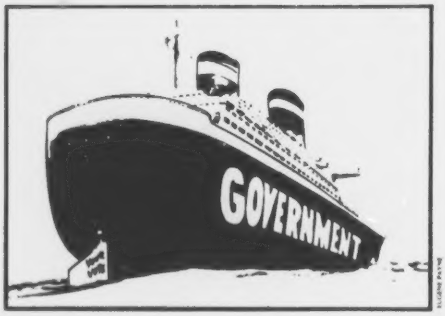
Constitutional Principles

12. Identify the following fundamental constitutional principles.
    - A. The government is established by the people and is accountable to the people.
    - B. The government possesses only those powers conferred upon it.
    - C. Power is divided among the three branches of government.
    - D. Power is divided between the national government and state governments.
    - E. Each branch can limit the power of the others through a number of constitutional restraints.

13. Name the fundamental constitutional principle that each of the following cartoons illustrates.


DO YOU WANT MY LEADER AT THE LOCAL, COUNTY, STATE OR FEDERAL LEVEL?
7-31

A



B

14. In *Federalist* 47, James Madison wrote: "The accumulation of all powers, legislative, executive, and judiciary, in the same hands, . . . may justly be pronounced the very definition of tyranny." To prevent such "tyranny," the framers adopted the idea of separation of powers proposed by French political philosopher Baron de Montesquieu. What are three ways that the Constitution separates the three branches?

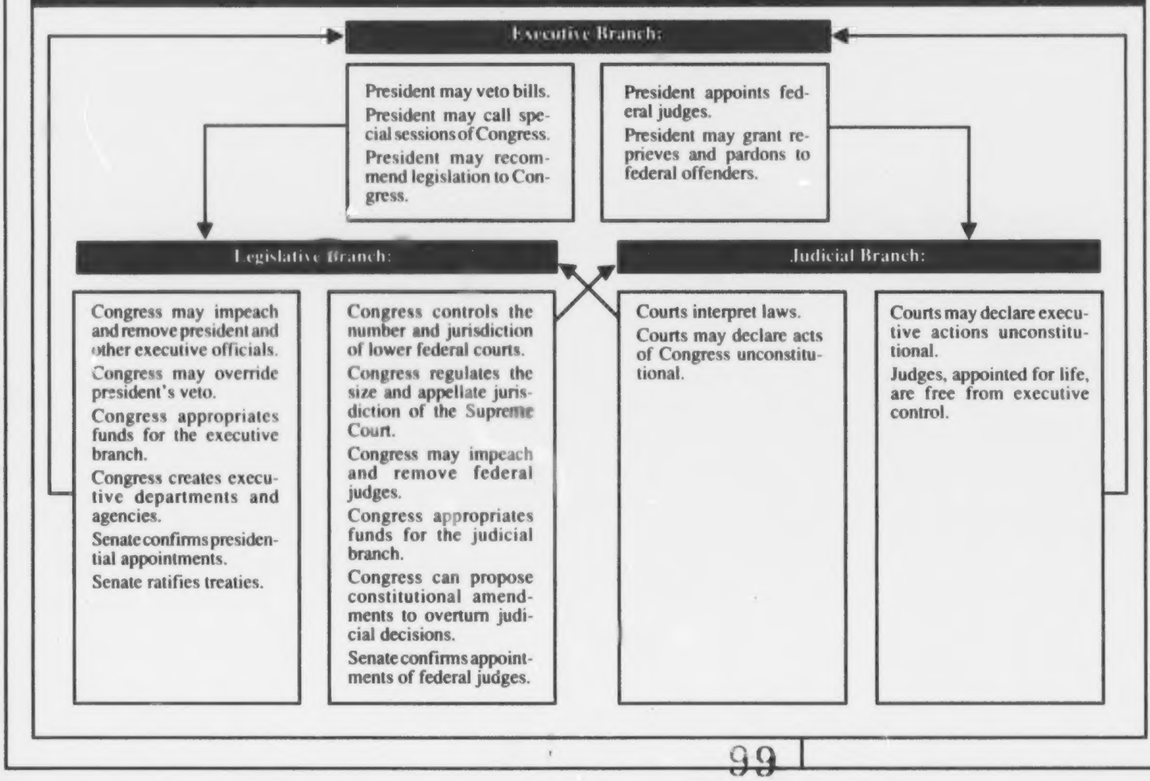
Answer question 15 using the following excerpt from James Madison's Federalist *51.*

> In order to lay a due foundation for that separate and distinct exercise of the different powers of government, which to a certain extent is admitted on all hands to be essential to the preservation of liberty, it is evident that each department should have a will of its own. . . .
>
> . . . The great security against a gradual concentration of the several powers in the same department consists in giving to those who administer each department the necessary constitutional means and personal motives to resist encroachments of the others. The provision for defense must in this, as in all other cases, be made commensurate to the danger of attack. Ambition must be made to counteract ambition. The interest of the man must be connected with the constitutional rights of the place. It may be a reflection on human nature that such devices should be necessary to control the abuses of government. But what is government itself but the greatest of all reflections on human nature? If men were angels, no government would be necessary. If angels were to govern men, neither external nor internal controls on government would be necessary. In framing a government which is to be administered by men over men, the great difficulty lies in this: you must first enable the government to control the governed; and in the next place oblige it to control itself. A dependence on the people is, no doubt, the primary control on the government; but experience has taught mankind the necessity of auxiliary precautions.

15. According to Madison, why did the Constitution establish a system in which each branch of government can check the power of the others?

Answer question 16 using the chart below.

Checks and Balances



President may veto bills.
President may call special sessions of Congress.
President may recommend legislation to Congress.

President appoints federal judges.
President may grant reprieves and pardons to federal offenders.

Congress may impeach and remove president and other executive officials.
Congress may override president's veto.
Congress appropriates funds for the executive branch.
Congress creates executive departments and agencies.
Senate confirms presidential appointments.
Senate ratifies treaties.

Congress controls the number and jurisdiction of lower federal courts.
Congress regulates the size and appellate jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.
Congress may impeach and remove federal judges.
Congress appropriates funds for the judicial branch.
Congress can propose constitutional amendments to overturn judicial decisions.
Senate confirms appointments of federal judges.

Courts interpret laws.
Courts may declare acts of Congress unconstitutional.

Courts may declare executive actions unconstitutional.
Judges, appointed for life, are free from executive control.

16. *Hypothetical situation:* One region of a state's population doubles in two years, causing its federal district courts to overflow with cases. Determine which branch of the federal government, if any, has the constitutional power to:

A. appoint additional judges for the district.

B. enact legislation requiring traffic offenders to pay a fine without being tried.

C. establish additional district courts.

D. propose a constitutional amendment that would require the courts to expand in direct proportion to the population.

Federalism

Answer questions 17-18 using the following excerpt from James Madison's Federalist *10.*

> The federal Constitution forms a happy combination in this respect; the great and aggregate interests being referred to the national, the local and particular to the State legislatures. . . .
>
> Hence, it clearly appears that the same advantage which a republic has over a democracy in controlling the effects of faction is enjoyed by a large over a small republic—is enjoyed by the Union over the States composing it. . . .
>
> The influence of factious leaders may kindle a flame within their particular States, but will be unable to spread a general conflagration through the other States. . . . A rage for paper money, for an abolition of debts, for an equal division of property, or for any other improper or wicked project will be less apt to pervade the whole body of the Union than a particular member of it; in the same proportion as such a malady is more likely to taint a particular county or district than an entire State.

17. According to Madison, what advantage does a federal system have?

18. In this excerpt, Madison refers to the advantage that a republic has over a democracy. How does a republic differ from a democracy?

19. The framers created a federal system for the United States because a **confederation** had proved too weak and a **unitary government** was politically undesirable. Which of the following is *not* an advantage of a federal system?

A. centralization of power is prevented

B. close contact between government and the people

C. government is cheap and efficient

D. political experimentation is encouraged

20. The national government possesses certain **expressed powers.** Although these expressed powers are divided among the three branches of the federal government, most of them are found in what article and section of the Constitution?

21. The national government also has certain **implied powers.** What is the constitutional basis for the implied powers?

Through the expressed power to regulate commerce, the national government has vastly expanded its role in the federal system. Congress has used the commerce clause to pass a wide variety of legislation, including the ban on discrimination in public accommodations in the Civil Rights Act of 1964. The Supreme Court first sanctioned a broad interpretation of the commerce power in *Gibbons v. Ogden* (1824).

22. The Supreme Court first sanctioned the concept of implied powers for the federal government in the case of ____________ . Speaking for the unanimous Court, Chief Justice John Marshall declared:

> Let the end be legitimate, let it be within the scope of the Constitution, and all means which are appropriate, which are plainly adapted to that end, which are not prohibited, but consist with the letter and spirit of the Constitution, are constitutional.

23. The national government also possesses other powers not mentioned in the Constitution that belong to it simply because it is the government of a sovereign state in the world community. What are these powers called?

24. The Constitution provides for a division of powers between the federal government and the states, which is spelled out in the Tenth Amendment. Identify whether each of the following functions is:

    a. an exclusive power of the federal government.

    b. a **reserved power** of the state governments.

    c. a **concurrent power.**

    d. a power prohibited to both the federal and state governments.

    A. administering elections

    B. admitting new states

    C. borrowing money

    D. coining money

    E. creating local units of government

    F. enacting **bills of attainder**

    G. establishing immigration and naturalization laws

    H. granting titles of nobility

    I. issuing patents

    J. levying taxes

    K. maintaining court systems

    L. passing ***ex post facto* laws**

    M. providing public education

25. The Constitution also prohibits Congress from suspending the **writ of *habeas corpus*,** with two exceptions. What are they?

26. How does Article VI, section 2 of the Constitution resolve possible conflicts between national and state laws? By what name is this clause known?

27. Article IV of the Constitution imposes several duties on the national government with respect to the states. Which of the following does *not* illustrate such a duty?

    A. guaranteeing states a republican form of government

    B. maintaining a system of interstate highways

    C. protecting states against invasion and domestic violence

    D. respecting states' territorial integrity

The Port Authority of New York and New Jersey was established by the two states in 1921 to administer jointly their shared waterfront. Although Article I, section 10, of the Constitution prohibits states from entering into any treaty, alliance, or confederation, states may, with the consent of Congress, enter into interstate compacts.

Proposed Constitutional Amendments Never Ratified

1789	Change the apportionment of representatives
1789	Postpone changes in congressional pay until after a House election
1810	Void the citizenship of any American accepting a title of nobility or other honor from a foreign power
1861	Prohibit federal interference with slavery
1924	Allow Congress to regulate or prohibit child labor through legislation
1972	Guarantee equal rights for men and women
1978	Allow the District of Columbia to elect senators and representatives as if it were a state

Since 1789, approximately 10,000 amendments have been proposed in Congress. Of those, only 33 have been submitted to the states for their approval. Just 26 amendments have been adopted in more than 200 years.

28. Through its constitutional power to tax and spend, the national government has increased its power relative to the states. Under the federal system, the national government often provides funds to assist state and/or local programs. Two types of federal **grants-in-aid** are categorical grants and block grants. Which of these two types of grants gives the federal government the most influence over local programs? Why?

29. *Hypothetical situation:* Three months after you are married in one state, you and your spouse move to a different state. Which of the following statements regarding the legality of your marriage certificate is true?

    A. The full faith and credit clause in Article IV of the Constitution requires other states to honor your marriage certificate.

    B. The privileges and immunities clause in Article IV of the Constitution requires other states to honor your marriage certificate.

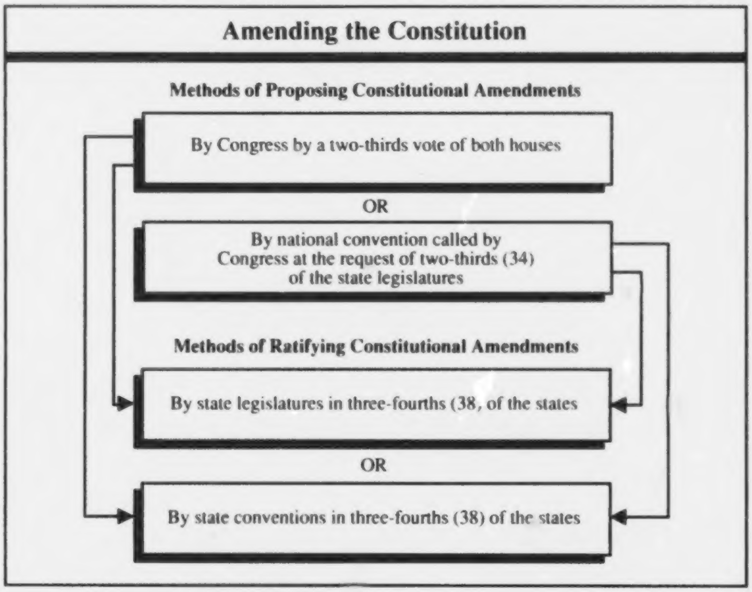
    C. Your marriage certificate is not valid in any other state.

    D. Your marriage certificate has to be reissued by another state, similar to a driver's license.

30. Article IV of the Constitution provides for interstate cooperation in criminal, as well as civil, matters. For example, if a person charged with a crime in Oregon were found in Nevada, the Oregon governor could request the governor of Nevada to extradite, or arrest and return, the accused. If the Nevada governor refused the extradition request, could he or she be compelled to return the fugitive? Why or why not?

The Amendment Process

Answer questions 31-32 using the chart below.


Amending the Constitution

Methods of Proposing Constitutional Amendments
By Congress by a two-thirds vote of both houses
OR
By national convention called by Congress at the request of two-thirds (34) of the state legislatures
Methods of Ratifying Constitutional Amendments
By state legislatures in three-fourths (38) of the states
OR
By state conventions in three-fourths (38) of the states

31. By what method have all constitutional amendments to date been proposed? How else can they be proposed?

32. What method for ratifying proposed amendments to the Constitution has been used for every amendment adopted, except one? What method of ratification was used for the Twenty-first Amendment?

33. Who determines which method of ratification will be used and the time limit for ratification?

34. What is the the one change in the Constitution that cannot be made, according to Article V?

35. How does the formal amendment process reflect the principle of federalism?

36. Many important features of the American governmental system are not mentioned in the Constitution. Is a constitutional amendment required to enact each of the following changes?

    A. decreasing the number of Supreme Court justices

    B. eliminating the electoral college system

    C. eliminating the cabinet

    D. establishing a third major political party

    E. establishing a two-term limit for senators

The Bill of Rights

37. Congress submitted the first 10 amendments to the Constitution, known as the Bill of Rights, to the states for ratification in September 1789. What had several states done to make sure a bill of rights was added?

38. The Bill of Rights was intended to prevent the federal government, not the states, from encroaching upon the rights of citizens. However, the Supreme Court has "incorporated" most of the amendments in the Bill of Rights by holding that they apply to the states under the due process clause of the Fourteenth Amendment. How does the Fourteenth Amendment give protection against the states that the Bill of Rights did not?

In *Barron v. Baltimore* (1833), the Supreme Court held that the Bill of Rights restricted only the national government, not the states. Since 1897, however, the Court has selectively incorporated provisions of the Bill of Rights into the Fourteenth Amendment.

The Incorporation of the Bill of Rights

Year	Amendment	Provision Held within Meaning of the Fourteenth Amendment's Due Process Clause	Supreme Court Case
1897	Fifth	Just compensation clause	*Chicago, Burlington & Quincy Railroad Co. v. Chicago*
1925	First	Freedom of speech	*Gitlow v. New York*
1931	First	Freedom of press	*Near v. Minnesota*
1932	Sixth	Right to counsel in capital felonies	*Powell v. Alabama*
1937	First	Freedom of assembly, petition	*DeJonge v. Oregon*
1940	First	Free exercise clause	*Cantwell v. Connecticut*
1947	First	Establishment clause	*Everson v. Board of Education*
1948	Sixth	Right to public trial	*In re Oliver*
1949	Fourth	Protection from unreasonable searches, seizures	*Wolf v. Colorado*
1961	Fourth	Exclusionary rule	*Mapp v. Ohio*
1962	Eighth	Prohibition of cruel and unusual punishment	*Robinson v. California*
1963	Sixth	Right to counsel in non-capital felonies	*Gideon v. Wainwright*
1964	Fifth	Protection from self-incrimination	*Malloy v. Hogan*
1965	Sixth	Right to confront adverse witnesses	*Pointer v. Texas*
1966	Sixth	Right to an impartial jury	*Parker v. Gladden*
1967	Sixth	Right to speedy trial	*Klopfer v. North Carolina*
1967	Sixth	Right to obtain favorable witnesses	*Washington v. Texas*
1968	Sixth	Right to trial by jury in non-petty criminal cases	*Duncan v. Louisiana*
1969	Fifth	Prohibition of double jeopardy	*Benton v. Maryland*
1972	Sixth	Right to counsel in imprisonable misdemeanor cases	*Argersinger v. Hamlin*

Freedom of Religion

39. The establishment clause of the First Amendment prohibits Congress from making any laws "respecting an establishment of religion." Many of the controversies over the establishment clause concern religion and schools. In its first establishment clause case, *Everson v. Board of Education* (1947), the Supreme Court upheld a New Jersey law allowing localities to reimburse parents for the cost of busing students to both public and parochial schools. Why did the Court sanction this program?

40. In *Lemon v. Kurtzman* (1971), the Supreme Court outlined a three-part test for determining whether government aid to church-affiliated schools violates the establishment clause. Describe its provisions.

41. Another church-state issue is the question of prayer in the public schools. In *Engel v. Vitale* (1962), the Supreme Court outlawed the use of a nondenominational prayer composed by New York officials for recitation by students. Also, in *Abington School District v. Schempp* (1963), the Court struck down a Pennsylvania law requiring Bible readings. Many states have passed laws providing for a daily moment of silence. Why did the Supreme Court strike down an Alabama moment-of-silence law in *Wallace v. Jaffree* (1985)?

42. Although the Supreme Court has banned officially sponsored prayer in public schools, in *Marsh v. Chambers* (1983) it sanctioned the employment of chaplains by legislatures to open each day's session with a prayer. Why?

43. *Hypothetical situation:* To celebrate Easter, your town uses tax funds to sponsor a display that includes religious, as well as secular, holiday symbols. Does this violate the establishment clause? How does the Supreme Court's decision in a 1984 case from Pawtucket, Rhode Island, affect your position?

44. The free exercise clause of the First Amendment states that "Congress shall make no law . . . prohibiting the free exercise" of religion. However, the Supreme Court generally distinguishes between religious beliefs, which are absolutely protected, and religious practices, which may be restricted. Religious beliefs do not usually exempt one from obeying otherwise valid and nondiscriminatory laws. Identify the following Supreme Court cases involving the free exercise clause.

    A. A state cannot force Amish children to attend school past the eighth grade.

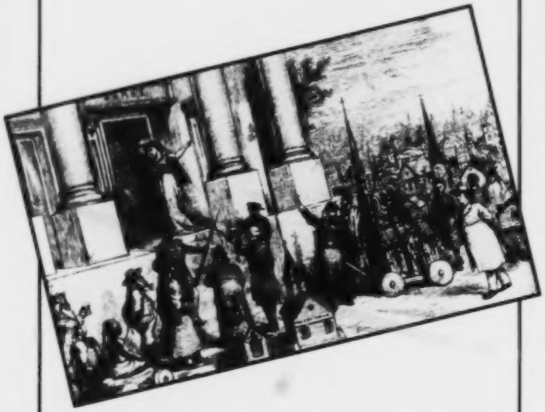
    B. Congress may ban religious practices, such as polygamy, that are violations "of social duties or subversive of good order."

    C. Orthodox Jewish merchants may be forced to observe Sunday closing laws ("blue laws"), even though Sunday is not their Sabbath.

    D. The U.S. Air Force may prohibit Orthodox Jews from wearing yarmulkes (skullcaps) while on duty.

    E. The Amish must pay Social Security taxes even though participation in the Social Security system violates their religious beliefs.

45. *Hypothetical situation:* You are fired from your job for refusing to work on Saturday, your sabbath day. You refuse to take available jobs that also require you to work on Saturday. Can your state deny you unemployment compensation? What 1963 Supreme Court decision supports your claim for benefits?



This Thomas Nast cartoon from 1871 entitled *Church and State—No Union upon Any Terms*, shows Columbia rejecting the pleas of several religious denominations. In *Everson v. Board of Education* (1947), the Supreme Court agreed with Thomas Jefferson that the First Amendment erects "a wall of separation between church and state."

Freedom of Speech

46. The First Amendment also states that "Congress shall make no law . . . abridging the freedom of speech." But the right of free speech is not absolute. The Supreme Court has employed several standards and tests to decide whether a restriction on freedom of expression is allowed by the Constitution. Name the cases in which the following constitutional tests were developed.

    A. clear and present danger test: Congress may ban speech that creates a "clear and present danger" of bringing about "substantive evils" it has a right to prevent

    B. bad tendency test: legislatures may ban speech that has a tendency to lead to illegal action

    C. imminent danger test: danger must be "imminent" for speech that advocates illegal action to be restricted

47. The First Amendment protects some types of speech to a greater degree than others. Which type of expression—**pure speech, speech plus,** or **symbolic speech**—enjoys the greatest constitutional protection?

48. *Hypothetical situation:* A principal suspends you and five other students from high school for wearing yellow ribbons to protest the taking of American hostages in Lebanon. You feel that your symbolic expression of belief is protected by the First Amendment. What Supreme Court case *best* supports your claim that your symbolic speech is constitutionally protected, and what was the ruling in that case?

49. Some forms of speech are not protected by the Constitution. In the case of______________, the Supreme Court ruled that "fighting words"—public insults calculated to elicit a violent response—fall into this category.

50. The Supreme Court also has held that under certain circumstances Congress may forbid and punish speech it considers seditious.

    A. In what case did the Court unanimously uphold the validity of the Espionage Act of 1917, declaring in Justice Holmes's words that freedom of speech is not absolute and does not, for example, "protect a man in falsely shouting fire in a theater and causing a panic"?

    B. In what case did the Court uphold the constitutionality of the Smith Act of 1940, which made it unlawful to advocate the violent overthrow of any government in the United States?

    C. How did the Supreme Court's ruling in *Yates v. United States* (1957) sharply limit the use of the Smith Act?

When young men were arrested for burning their draft cards to protest the Vietnam War, the Supreme Court upheld their arrests. In *United States v. O'Brien* (1968), the Court ruled that their conduct was not symbolic speech protected by the First Amendment, since it interfered with Congress's power to "raise and support armies."

The right of demonstrators "peaceably to assemble" is secured by the First Amendment. However, in *Cox v. New Hampshire* (1941), the Supreme Court ruled that governments may regulate the "time, place, and manner" of parades and demonstrations on public property.

KEEP
ABORTION
LEGAL
RTH

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Freedom of the Press

51. The First Amendment also prohibits Congress from "abridging the freedom . . . of the press." Identify the cases in which the following principles regarding freedom of the press were established by the Supreme Court.

    A. Public school officials have the broad power to censor school-sponsored student publications.

    B. The press is protected from **prior restraint,** except in certain exceptional situations such as wartime.

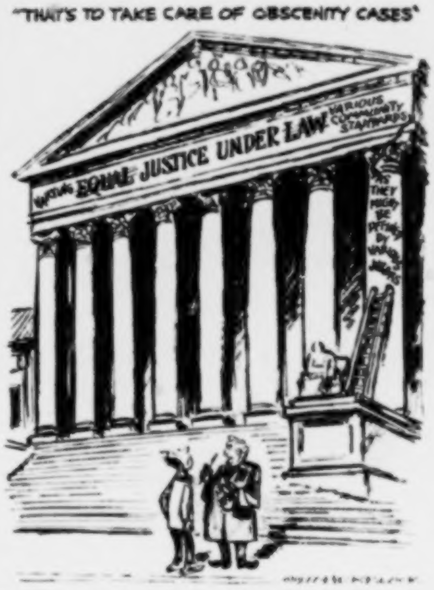
    C. The press may publish classified material unless the government can prove that publication of the material would jeopardize national security.

52. Although the First Amendment does not protect defamatory remarks, criticism of public officials is not considered defamation unless it meets a stringent test.

    A. In what case did the Supreme Court rule that a public official can recover libel damages for a false statement about his or her official conduct only if he or she can prove that "the statement was made with actual malice—that is the knowledge that it was false or with reckless disregard of whether it was false or not"?

    B. How does this decision help promote free and vigorous debate of public issues?

Answer questions 53-54 using the cartoon at left.


"THAT'S TO TAKE CARE OF OBSCENITY CASES"
EQUAL JUSTICE UNDER LAW
VARIOUS COMMUNITY STANDARDS
THEY MIGHT BE DEFINED BY VARIOUS JUDGES

© 1977 by *Herblock in* The Washington Post

53. The First Amendment does not protect obscenity. This cartoon suggests that the Supreme Court:

    A. allows local judges and juries to apply contemporary community standards to determine whether material is obscene.

    B. believes that all sexually explicit material is obscene.

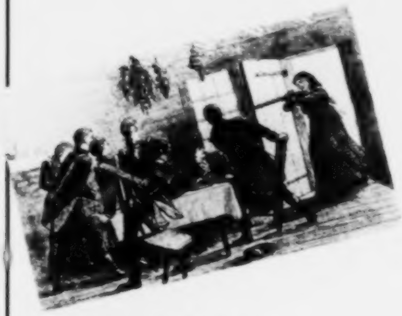
    C. has not ruled on what constitutes an obscene publication.

    D. leaves decisions in obscenity cases up to local prosecutors.

54. The Supreme Court first attempted to find an adequate definition of obscenity in *Roth v. United States* (1957). In what case did the Supreme Court develop the current standard for obscenity, depicted in the cartoon, and what three-part test for obscenity did that case establish?

Other Civil Liberties

55. The Fourth Amendment protects individuals against unreasonable searches and seizures by government agents. It also requires a valid warrant for a search to be conducted in many cases. To enforce this protection, the Supreme Court in the case of _____________ introduced the **exclusionary rule,** which was extended to the states in *Mapp v. Ohio* (1961).



Because of the colonists' experience with British military officials, the Bill of Rights limits the military power of the national government. The Second Amendment guarantees the right of each state to keep a militia. The Third Amendment prohibits the national government from quartering troops in private homes in peacetime without the homeowners' consent.

56. In the 1980s, the Supreme Court narrowed the scope of the exclusionary rule. Identify the Supreme Court cases in which the following exceptions to the exclusionary rule were established.

    A. Evidence seized improperly as a result of "honest mistakes" by police may be used at a trial.

    B. If police acted in "good faith," i.e., they had good reason to believe their search was legal, the evidence may be used, even though the warrant was technically invalid.

    C. Illegally obtained evidence is admissible if it would have "inevitably" been discovered by lawful means.

57. In *Katz v. United States* (1967), the Supreme Court ruled that the Fourth Amendment prohibits more than just physical intrusions and seizures and that electronic surveillance requires a valid warrant. What Supreme Court decision did *Katz* reverse?

58. The Fifth and Sixth Amendments contain several procedural safeguards for people suspected or accused of crimes.

    A. In what case did the Supreme Court overturn the conviction of a suspect who had been taken into custody and not been advised of his rights to remain silent and to have his attorney present during police interrogation?

    B. How did the Court's decision in *Miranda v. Arizona* (1966), which was also based on the Fifth Amendment protection against self-incrimination and the Sixth Amendment right to counsel, change police procedures?

59. The Eighth Amendment prohibits "cruel and unusual" punishment. Whether capital punishment is cruel and unusual is debated.

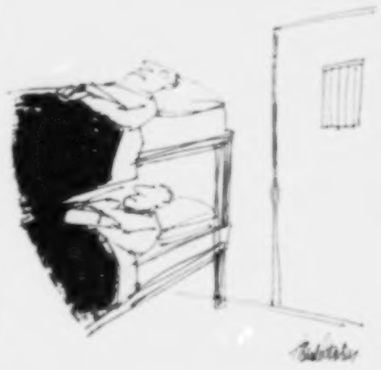
    A. In what case did the Supreme Court invalidate all the death penalty statutes existing then because they were "wantonly" and "freakishly" imposed?

    B. In what later case did the Court hold that "the punishment of death [for the crime of murder] does not invariably violate the Constitution"?

60. The Ninth Amendment states that the people retain other rights not specifically mentioned in the Constitution. One such right is the right to privacy, which according to the Supreme Court is derived from the First, Third, Fourth, Fifth, Ninth, and Fourteenth Amendments.

    A. In what case did the Supreme Court strike down, as a violation of the right to privacy, a Connecticut law that made birth control devices illegal?

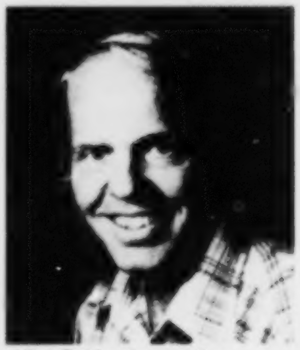
    B. In what case did the Court strike down state laws prohibiting abortions in the first trimester of pregnancy, holding that they violated a woman's right to privacy?



"What's so great about due process? Due process got me ten years."

Drawing by Handelsman; © 1970 The New Yorker Magazine, Inc.

Due process of law is guaranteed by the Fifth Amendment, which limits the national government, and by the Fourteenth Amendment, which limits state and local governments. Both the laws themselves (substantive due process) and the the ways they are carried out (procedural due process) must be fair.



Allan Bakke charged that affirmative action in medical school admissions violated the Fourteenth Amendment's equal protection clause. In *Regents of the University of California v. Bakke* (1978), the Supreme Court struck down the university's rigid quota system and ordered Bakke be admitted. However, the Court also held that race can be considered as one of several factors in admissions.

The Fourteenth Amendment

61. The Fourteenth Amendment guarantees the "equal protection of the laws," that is it prohibits unreasonable discrimination. It was ratified after the Civil War with the primary purpose of protecting former slaves. Name the Supreme Court cases that established the principles described below.

    A. The equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment prohibits only state-imposed discrimination, not private action.

    B. State laws requiring "separate but equal" public accommodations for blacks and whites do not violate the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.

    C. Segregation of public schools under the "separate but equal" doctrine violates the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.

    D. Busing students outside their neighborhood can be used as a means to end segregation of public schools.

62. In the absence of an Equal Rights Amendment, laws that distinguish between the sexes have been challenged on what constitutional basis?

63. Laws that distinguish between the sexes are subject to a less stringent constitutional test than laws that use racial classifications. Identify the cases in which the Supreme Court reached the following decisions.

    A. A federal law that automatically provides certain benefits to servicemen and their families, but requires servicewomen to prove that their husbands are dependents, violates the Fifth Amendment's due process clause.

    B. A state law that makes only men criminally liable for statutory rape does not violate the Fourteenth Amendment's equal protection clause.

    C. A preference for fathers over mothers in administering the estates of their deceased children violates the Fourteenth Amendment's equal protection clause.

    D. A state law prohibiting the sale of beer to males under 21, but to females under 18, violates the Fourteenth Amendment's equal protection clause.

Although many women have enlisted in the armed forces, the Supreme Court in *Rostker v. Goldberg* (1981) held that Congress may exclude women from the draft without violating the due process clause of the Fifth Amendment.

7. The Legislative Branch

The first Congress under the Constitution was due to convene on March 4, 1789, but a quorum of legislators had not arrived in New York City by then. Representative Fisher Ames of Massachusetts peevishly complained: "This is a very mortifying situation. . . . The public will forget the government before it is born." The House finally achieved its quorum of 30 representatives on April 1, a date some considered inauspicious since it was All Fools' Day. Five days later, the Senate began its deliberations.

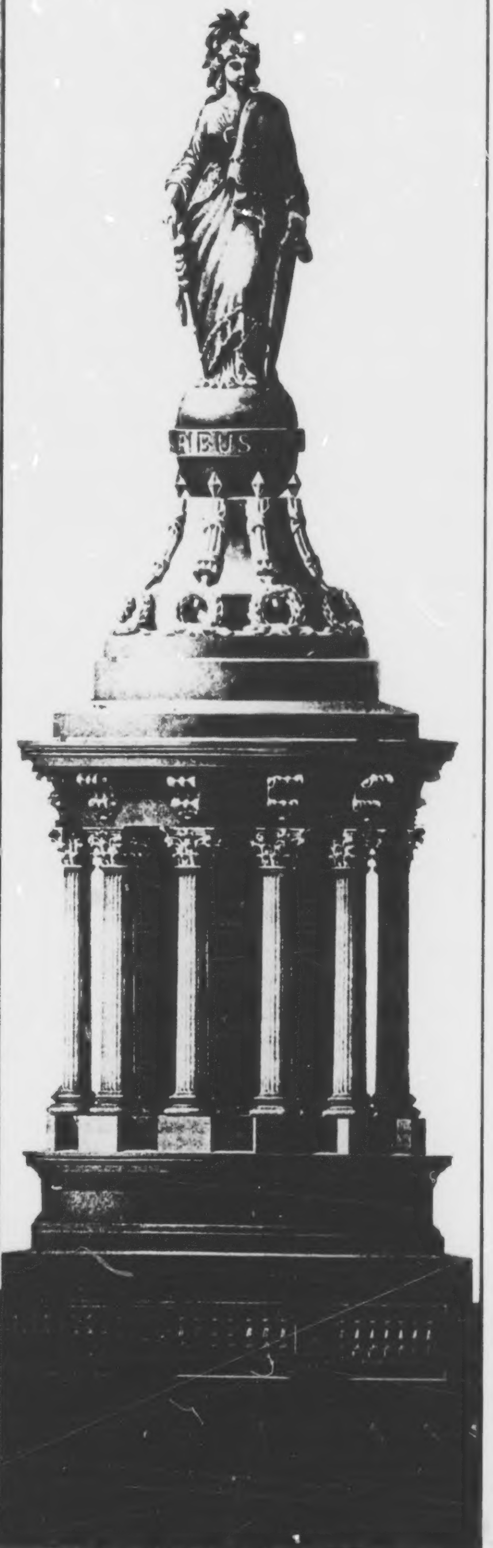
Today, Congress involves more people, handles more legislation, and controls more money than the members of that first federal Congress could ever have imagined. Congress now meets year round, instead of a few months each year. Senators are now directly elected by the people, and representatives have about 20 times as many constituents as in 1789. More members seek reelection than in the 1790s.

But despite these and other changes, Congress runs on the same principles as it did in 1789. The first and longest article of the Constitution deals with Congress. Most of the powers of the national government are delegated to Congress, indicating that the framers of the Constitution intended for Congress to be the dominant institution in the national government. Legislative power is shared by the House and Senate, as the framers also intended. Within each chamber, power is dispersed through the committee system.

Some argue that this dispersal of power makes Congress inefficient, that the complexity of the legislative process leads to paralysis. Others counter that Congress was never intended to act swiftly; the framers were more concerned with preventing despotism than with promoting efficiency. The statue of Freedom atop the dome of the U.S. Capitol, pictured at right, symbolizes that concern.

Some worry that Congress is unrepresentative because its membership does not reflect the diversity of American society. They fear that members vote according to the wishes of special interest groups, rather than the wishes of their constituents. Others argue that members of Congress are too responsive to the wishes of their districts or states, that their desire for reelection causes them to ignore the best interests of the country as a whole.

This chapter examines the power of Congress under the Constitution "to make all laws." As you learn about the structure, powers, and functions of Congress, consider how effectively it deals with issues of national concern. Does Congress have too much power, or not enough?



BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Senate President George Bush and Speaker of the House Jim Wright preside over a joint session of Congress held to count the 1988 electoral college vote, which Bush won. Joint sessions, in which both houses of Congress meet together in the larger House chamber, are not part of the lawmaking process but are used for special occasions.

Originally a body of just 59 legislators, the House of Representatives reached its present size of 435 members after the 1910 census. The Reapportionment Act of 1929 established a permanent method of redistributing House seats after each census. Today, the average congressional district has more than 500,000 residents.

The Nation's Legislature

1. The decision of the framers of the Constitution to establish a bicameral Congress was influenced by all of the following *except:*

   A. A two-chambered legislature made a compromise possible between the Virginia and the New Jersey Plans.

   B. In a bicameral Congress, each house checks the other's power.

   C. The British Parliament, most colonial assemblies, and most of the state legislatures in 1787 were bicameral.

   D. The Continental Congress and the Congress under the Articles of Confederation were bicameral.

2. How often does the Constitution require Congress to meet?

3. Each two-year term of Congress has been numbered consecutively since the first Congress met in 1789. What is the number of the present Congress?

4. The Twentieth Amendment, also known as the **lame duck** amendment, shortened the lag between congressional elections and the start of the new term. When does each term of Congress now begin?

5. Each congressional term is divided into two regular sessions—one each year. According to the Constitution, neither house may end a session without the consent of _____________.

6. If a crisis were to occur when Congress was not in session, who could call a special session of the legislature?

The House of Representatives

7. What are the constitutional qualifications for serving in the House of Representatives, the lower house of Congress?

8. What other requirement is customary?

Answer question 9 using the following excerpt from Federalist 52, *written by James Madison.*

> As it is essential to liberty that the government in general should have a common interest with the people, so it is particularly essential that the [House of Representatives] should have an immediate dependence on, and an intimate sympathy with, the people. Frequent elections are unquestionably the only policy by which this dependence and sympathy can be effectively secured.

9. Based on this excerpt, why did the framers of the Constitution decide that members of the House of Representatives should be elected every two years?

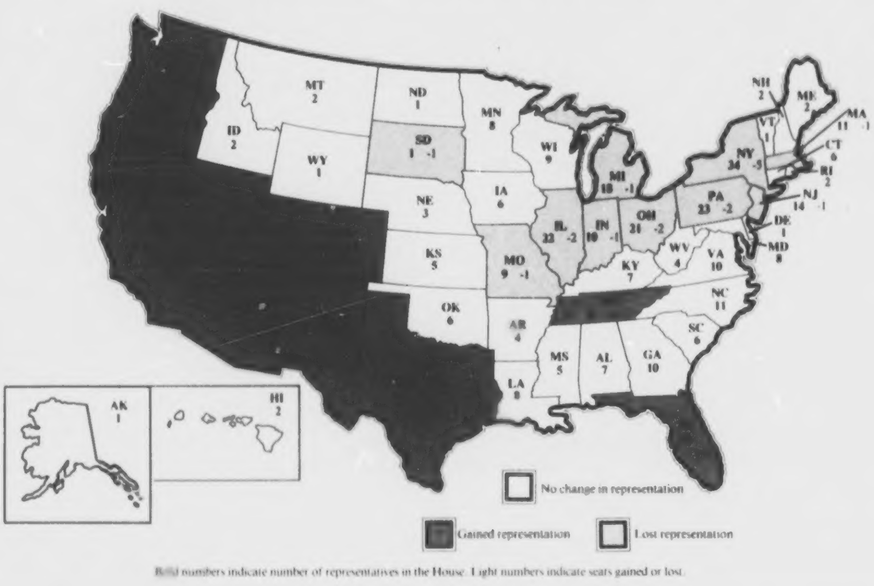
10. In *Federalist* 57, James Madison wrote: "Who are to be the electors of the federal representatives? Not the rich, more than the poor; not the learned, more than the ignorant; not the haughty heirs of distinguished names, more than the humble sons of obscure and unpropitious fortune." According to the Constitution, who is qualified to vote for members of the House of Representatives?

11. How is the total number of seats in the House determined?

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

12. Because representation in the House is based on population, the Constitution directs Congress to redistribute House seats among the states after each decennial census. What is this called?

Changes in House Seats after 1980 Census


MT 2
ND 1
MN 8
ID 2
SD 1 -1
WI 9
WY 1
MI 18 -1
NY 34 -5
NE 3
IA 6
IL 22 -2
IN 10 -1
OH 21 -2
PA 23 -2
KS 5
MO 9 -1
KY 7
WV 4
VA 10
OK 6
AR 4
NC 11
SC 6
MS 5
AL 7
GA 10
LA 8
AK 1
HI 2
NH 2
ME 2
VT 1
MA 11 -1
CT 6
RI 2
NJ 14 -1
DE 1
MD 8
No change in representation
Gained representation
Lost representation

Bold numbers indicate number of representatives in the House. Light numbers indicate seats gained or lost.

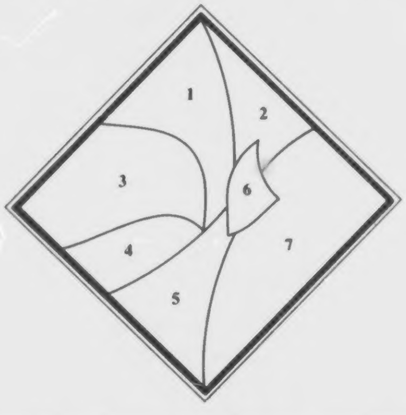
The redistribution of seats in the House of Representatives after the 1980 census reflects a shift in the population from the North to the South and West. Reapportionment will occur again in 1991, after the 1990 census, and take effect with the 1992 congressional elections.

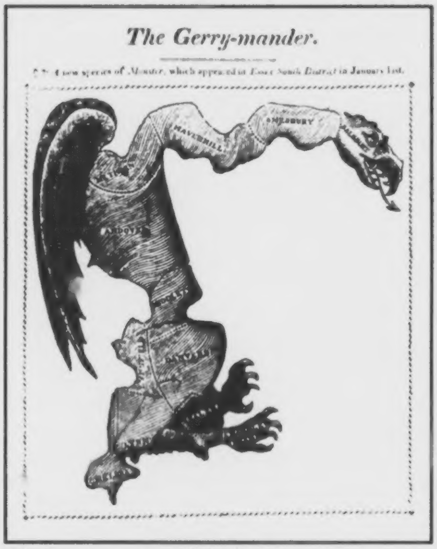
13. The Constitution does not mention congressional districts. In 1842, Congress directed that House members be elected from districts within each state rather than at-large from the state as a whole. Who determines the boundaries of congressional districts?

14. Until the 1960s, many congressional districts were of widely varying populations and rural areas were overrepresented. How did the Supreme Court's ruling in *Wesberry v. Sanders* (1964) affect such malapportionment?

Answer questions 15-17 using the map below.

State X's Congressional Districts




The Gerry-mander.
A new species of Monster, which appeared in Essex South District in January last.
HAVERHILL
AMESBURY
ANDOVER

The term "gerrymandering" was derived from this cartoon, which illustrates the practice of drawing election districts to favor a political party or politician. Artist Gilbert Stuart reputedly added the head, wings, and claws to a map of this oddly shaped district, which was drawn in 1812 by Governor Elbridge Gerry's supporters in the Massachusetts legislature.

15. How many representatives does State X have in the House of Representatives?

16. Which of the following statements about State X's population can be determined from the map?

    A. District 4 has more people than District 6.

    B. State X has a total population of less than 500,000 persons.

    C. State X has a total population of more than 3 million persons.

    D. The total population of State X has increased since the 1960 census.

17. Which area of State X is most densely populated?

18. The District of Columbia, American Samoa, Guam, and the Virgin Islands are each represented by a delegate, and Puerto Rico by a resident commissioner, in the House of Representatives. How do the powers and privileges of these five individuals differ from those of House members?

19. According to the Constitution, when a House seat becomes vacant, how is a replacement to be chosen?

The Senate

20. Currently, 100 people serve in the Senate. How is the total number of seats in the upper house of Congress determined?

21. How long is the term of office for senators?

22. Why is the Senate considered to be a "continuous body"?

23. Since 1913, senators have been elected by the people. By whom were senators chosen before adoption of the Seventeenth Amendment?

24. From what geographic areas are senators elected?

25. According to the Seventeenth Amendment, who is qualified to vote for members of the Senate?

26. What are the constitutional requirements for serving in the Senate?

27. According to the Seventeenth Amendment, when a vacancy occurs in the Senate, how may a replacement be chosen?

Congressional Elections

28. The following sentences describe the procedure by which members of Congress are elected. Number these steps in sequence:

____ A. The candidate becomes a member of Congress.

____ B. The candidate collects signatures to get his or her name on the ballot for his or her party's primary election.

____ C. The candidate decides to run.

____ D. The candidate plans a primary race, unless there are no opponents for the party's nomination.

____ E. The candidate wins the general election.

____ F. The candidate wins the primary and appears on the ballot for the general election as his or her party's nominee.

29. Most campaigns for the House and Senate are individual efforts. Party leaders at the national level have little control over the choice of congressional candidates. What effect does this election process have on congressional operations?

30. About 90 percent of House members and about 70 percent of senators seeking reelection are returned to office. Congressional **incumbents** enjoy all of the following advantages over challengers *except:*

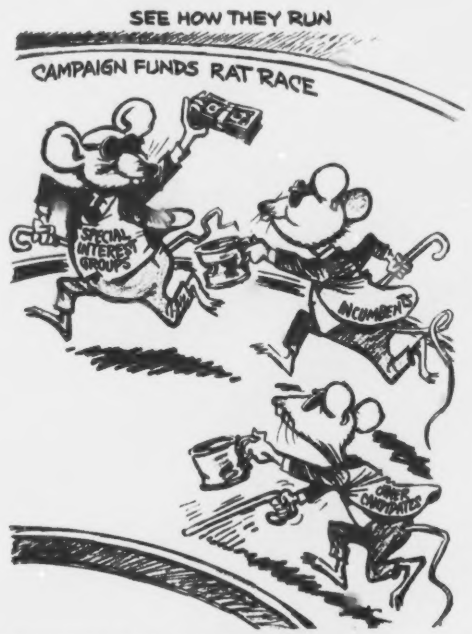
    A. a greater share of federal matching funds for their campaigns

    B. a large staff that can help **constituents** deal with the federal government

    C. committee posts that relate especially to the needs of their districts or states and provide **pork barrel** projects

    D. greater name recognition through free mailings to constituents, free trips home, and subsidized radio and television messages

Answer question 31 using the cartoon below.



© *1979 by Herblock in* The Washington Post

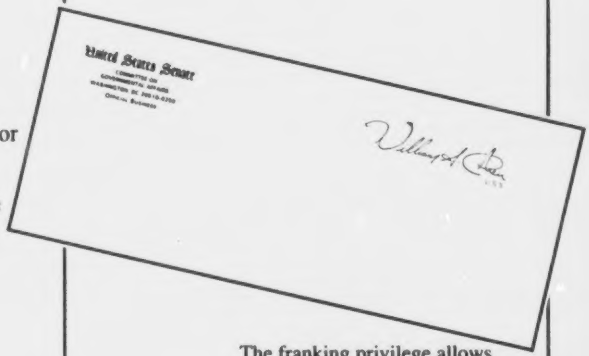
31. This cartoon suggests all of the following *except:*

    A. Congressional candidates are responsive to the wishes of special interest groups.

    B. Congressional elections are publicly financed.

    C. Incumbents find it much easier than challengers to raise campaign funds from the **political action committees (PACs)** of special interest groups.

    D. In the current system of financing congressional campaigns, candidates beg for money from special interest groups.



United States Senate

The franking privilege allows members of Congress to send mail postage-free to their constituents using their facsimile signature, or frank, instead of a postage stamp. Although Congress has limited the use of the frank in the weeks preceding elections, the amount of franked mail still jumps dramatically in election years, prompting complaints from challengers.

In 1870, Hiram Revels (R., Mississippi) became the first black to serve in Congress when he filled the Senate seat once held by Jefferson Davis.

Feminist Jeannette Rankin, a Republican from Montana, was the first woman to serve in Congress. She was elected to the House in 1916 and again in 1940. A pacifist, Rankin voted against U.S. entry into World War I and was the only member of Congress to vote against U.S. entry into World War II.

The Members of Congress and Their Jobs

32. Describe in a sentence the "average" member of Congress.

33. To develop a profile of your members of Congress, you could use all of the following sources *except:*

    A. *Almanac of American Politics*, published by National Journal

    B. *Congress A to Z*, published by Congressional Quarterly

    C. *Congressional Directory*, published by Congress

    D. *Politics in America*, published by Congressional Quarterly

34. Members of Congress who see themselves as delegates vote as their constituents want them to, regardless of what they personally believe is best for the country. Those who view themselves as ____________ use their best judgment on issues, regardless of the preferences of "the folks back home."

35. Members of Congress are paid out of the U.S. Treasury. How are their salaries determined?

36. The Constitution confers certain special legal privileges and freedoms on members of Congress. What are they?

37. In addition to these constitutional grants of immunity, Congress has exempted itself from many laws. Identify which of the following laws, if any, apply to Congress.

    A. Civil Rights Act of 1964, which prohibits discrimination in employment on the basis of race, religion, national origin, or sex

    B. Equal Pay Act, which requires that men and women receive equal pay for equal work

    C. National Labor Relations Act, which requires employers to recognize and bargain with employee unions

    D. Occupational Safety and Health Act, which requires employers to meet certain safety and health standards

38. Although Congress is exempt from many laws, members of Congress are subject to rules of conduct and penalties that do not apply to all Americans. Both houses of Congress have drawn up codes of ethics—rules and guidelines for the behavior of members. Which of the following is a feature of those ethics codes?

    A. Every member of Congress must file an annual financial disclosure statement.

    B. A member of Congress may keep up to $5,000 earned for each speech or article.

    C. House members may keep outside earned income of up to 40% of their yearly congressional salaries.

    D. Senators may keep honoraria of up to 50% of their yearly congressional salaries.

39. *Hypothetical situation:* You are a Republican challenger who appears to have narrowly defeated the incumbent Democrat for a seat in the House of Representatives. The incumbent, however, disputes certain votes and claims victory. The Democrat-controlled House votes along party lines to seat your opponent. Can a judge order you seated? Why or why not?

40. According to the Constitution, "Each house shall be the judge of the . . . qualifications of its own members." Both houses of Congress have denied seats to members-elect who met the constitutional requirements for office. How did the Supreme Court's ruling in *Powell v. McCormack* (1969) affect this practice?

41. The Constitution provides that "Each house may . . . punish its members for disorderly behavior, and . . . expel a member." Why is it easier for either house of Congress to **censure** a member than to expel a member?

42. Congress has only expelled 19 members to date. In 1797, the Senate expelled William Blount of Tennessee for conspiring to lead an attack on Spanish Florida and Louisiana. In 1980, the House expelled Michael Myers of Pennsylvania after he was convicted of bribery in the Abscam scandal. Under what circumstances were the other 14 senators and 3 representatives expelled?

The Organization of Congress

43. The Constitution provides for a Speaker of the House to preside over that body. How is this officer chosen?

44. Political analysts consider the most powerful officer in Congress to be the Speaker of the House because he or she does all of the following *except:*

    A. appoint members of select and conference committees

    B. decide who will be recognized to speak on the House floor

    C. refer bills to committee

    D. rule on questions of parliamentary procedure

    E. select chairmen of standing committees

45. The Constitution provides for two Senate officers, whose duties are largely ceremonial. The vice president of the United States serves as the Senate president. In the vice president's absence, the president *pro tempore* of the Senate serves as its alternate presiding officer. How is he or she chosen?

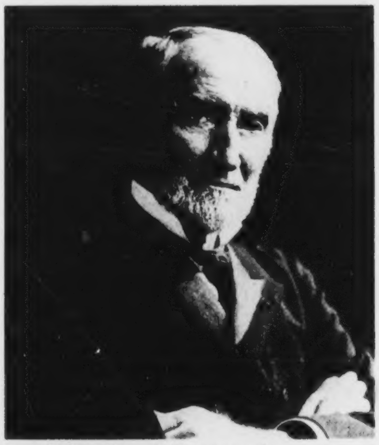
46. State the role of each of the following congressional officers in debating and voting on legislation.

    A. president of the Senate

    B. president *pro tempore* of the Senate

    C. Speaker of the House

47. Although the Constitution does not mention political parties, party leadership plays an important role in the way Congress operates. Who is the majority party's principal leader in (a) the House? (b) the Senate?



Republican Joseph Cannon, who served as Speaker from 1903 to 1911, was the most powerful Speaker in history. Until stripped of most of his powers in 1910, "Uncle Joe" chaired the Rules Committee, recognized only those members who had previously secured permission from him to speak during House floor debate, and assigned members to committees.

48. Each house of Congress also has other party officers who are selected by their respective party **caucuses.** Explain the primary role that each of the following congressional party leaders plays in the legislative process:

    A. majority and minority leaders

    B. majority and minority whips

Staff and Specialized Offices

49. Since 1955, the number of congressional staff persons has more than tripled, prompting one member of Congress to remark that "we are becoming a Government of staffs."

    A. Describe the difference between personal staff and committee staff.

    B. What is the principal task of members' personal staffs?

50. Each member's personal staff is divided between Washington, D.C., and home offices. Identify the functions of the following personal staff members in the Capitol Hill office:

    A. administrative assistant (A.A.)

    B. legislative assistant (L.A.)

    C. press secretary or aide

51. How does congressional staff affect Congress's position relative to the executive branch?

52. Which of the following is *not* a criticism of congressional staff?

    A. A large staff generates more legislative work, requiring even more staff to handle it.

    B. Congressional staff costs too much money.

    C. Congressional staff exercises too much power.

    D. Congressional staff helps members of Congress perform their legislative duties.

The Library of Congress, established in 1800, is one of the largest libraries in the world. Although its primary responsibility is to provide unbiased information to Congress, the library's materials may be used by anyone over high-school age.

53. In addition to the increasing number of staff members, Congress has created several support agencies to provide nonpartisan and objective research. Identify each of the agencies below.

    A. Created in 1914, this branch of the Library of Congress prepares research reports and tracks the status of bills.

    B. Created in 1921, this office conducts special audits and investigates executive branch spending and policies.

    C. Established in 1972, this office evaluates policies and programs with a significant use of or impact on technology.

    D. Established in 1974, this office advises Congress on the cost and likely economic effect of proposed legislation.

The Committee System

54. Although the Constitution does not mention congressional committees, much of the business of Congress is done in committee. Identify the types of committees described below.

    A. These committees are permanent bodies that handle most of the legislation considered by Congress.

    B. These committees are created for a limited time and specific purpose. Their role is usually investigative rather than legislative.

    C. These committees have membership drawn from both houses of Congress.

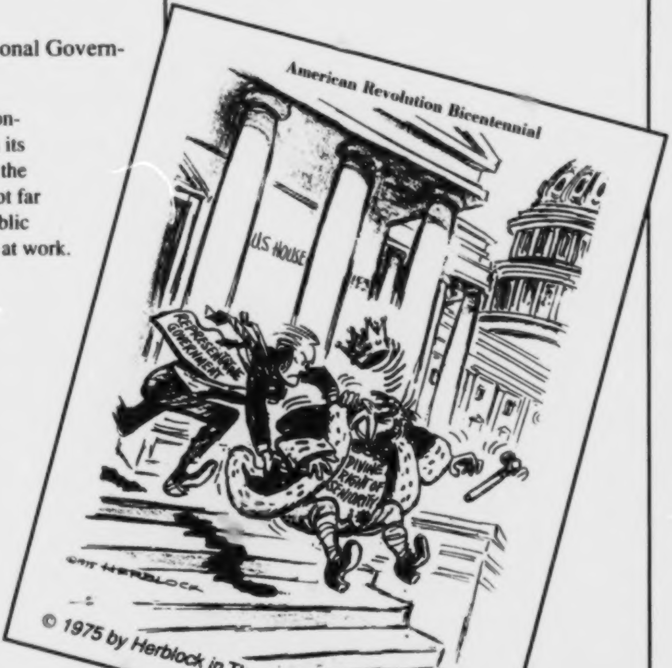
    D. These committees, which have membership drawn from both houses, are temporary bodies formed to reconcile differences between similar legislation passed by the House and Senate.

Answer question 55 using the following excerpt from Congressional Government *(1885), written by Woodrow Wilson.*

> The House sits, not for serious discussion, but to sanction the conclusions of its committees as rapidly as possible. It legislates in its committee-rooms; not by the deliberations of majorities, but by the resolutions of specially-commissioned minorities; so that it is not far from the truth to say that Congress in session is Congress on public exhibition, whilst Congress in its committee-rooms is Congress at work.

55. What is the main point of this excerpt?

This cartoon depicts an event in 1975, when House Democrats unseated three persons who had become committee chairmen by virtue of seniority. The defeat of these incumbents established that the seniority system is not inviolable.


American Revolution Bicentennial
U.S. HOUSE
REPRESENTATIVE GOVERNMENT
DIVINE RIGHT OF SENIORITY
HERBLOCK

© 1975 by Herblock in The Washington Post

Answer question 56 using the chart below.

Congressional Committees

House

Standing:

Agriculture
Appropriations
Armed Services
Banking, Finance, and Urban Affairs
Budget
District of Columbia
Education and Labor
Energy and Commerce
Foreign Affairs
Government Operations
House Administration
Interior and Insular Affairs
Judiciary
Merchant Marine and Fisheries
Post Office and Civil Service
Public Works and Transportation
Rules
Science, Space, and Technology
Small Business
Standards of Official Conduct
Veterans' Affairs
Ways and Means

Select and Special:

Aging
Children, Youth, and Families
Hunger
Intelligence
Narcotics Abuse and Control

Joint Committees

Economic
Library
Printing
Taxation

Senate

Standing:

Agriculture, Nutrition, and Forestry
Appropriations
Armed Services
Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs
Budget
Commerce, Science, and Transportation
Energy and Natural Resources
Environment and Public Works
Finance
Foreign Relations
Governmental Affairs
Judiciary
Labor and Human Resources
Rules and Administration
Small Business
Veterans' Affairs

Select and Special:

Aging
Ethics
Indian Affairs
Intelligence

56. Identify the standing committee that most likely would be the first to review:

A. tax bills

B. the proposed budget of an independent agency created by a recent legislative act

C. a bill introduced in the House of Representatives that would establish a new preschool education program for underprivileged families

D. a bill introduced in the House of Representatives that would change the boundaries of a national park

E. the ratification of a new treaty with China

F. the qualifications of the president's nomination for a justice of the Supreme Court

G. the federal budget proposed by the president

H. a bill designed to conserve our use of oil

57. In general, the member of the majority party who has had the longest continuous service on the committee becomes chairman. What is this custom called?

58. Traditionally, committee chairmen dominated their committees. Identify which of the following changes made in the 1970s reduced the power of committee chairmen.

    A. All committee and subcommittee meetings must be open to the public unless members, in open session, vote to close the meeting.

    B. Committee chairmen are elected by the majority party, instead of automatically chosen on the basis of seniority.

    C. No member of Congress is allowed to chair more than one committee.

    D. Some other committee members are guaranteed staff assistance.

59. Despite the changes of the 1970s, committee chairmen are still influential. Name three powers of committee chairmen.

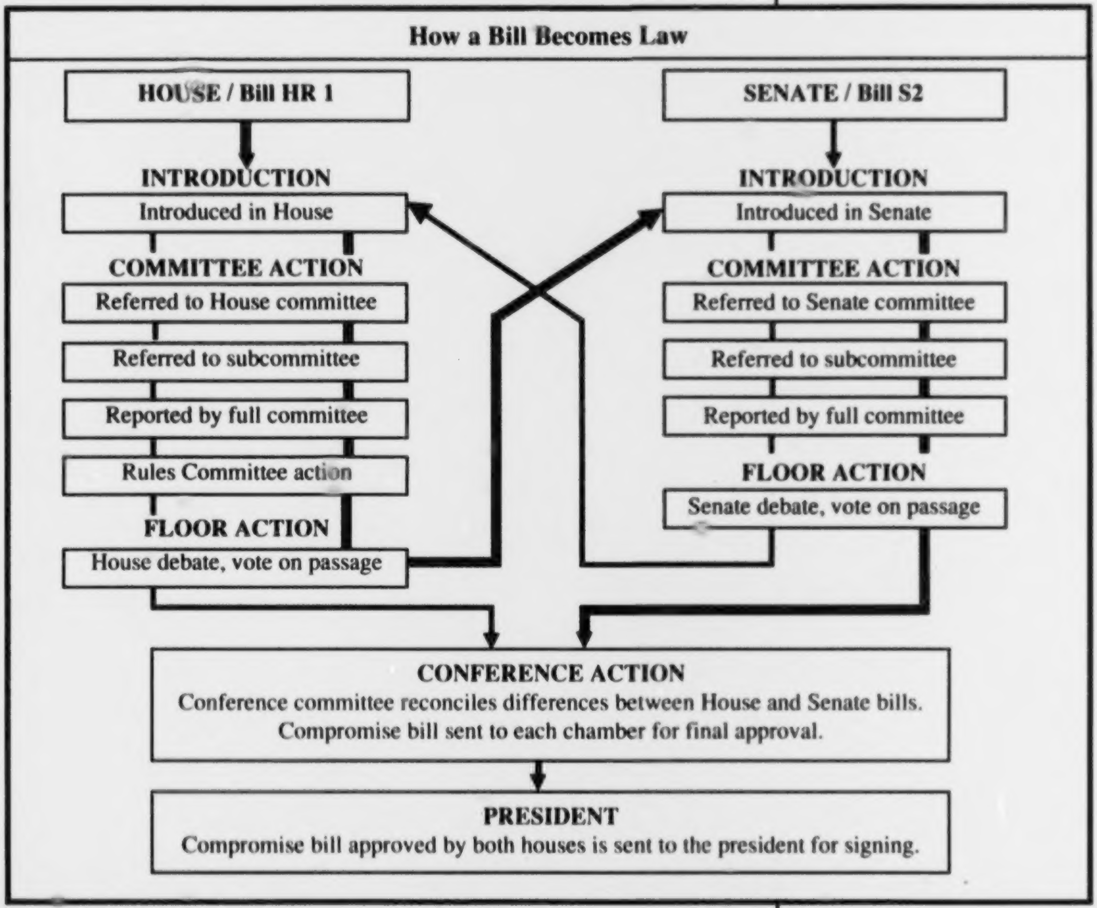
60. How are the members of the standing committees chosen?

The Legislative Process

61. Legislative proposals originate from many sources, including the executive branch and special interest groups. However, only a ____________ may introduce a bill in that house of Congress.

62. What types of bills does the Constitution state must originate in the House?

This chart shows the normal way in which a bill becomes a law. Approximately 10,000 measures are introduced during each term of Congress. Fewer than 10 percent are enacted.



How a Bill Becomes Law

HOUSE / Bill HR 1
INTRODUCTION
Introduced in House
COMMITTEE ACTION
Referred to House committee
Referred to subcommittee
Reported by full committee
Rules Committee action
FLOOR ACTION
House debate, vote on passage
SENATE / Bill S2
INTRODUCTION
Introduced in Senate
COMMITTEE ACTION
Referred to Senate committee
Referred to subcommittee
Reported by full committee
FLOOR ACTION
Senate debate, vote on passage
CONFERENCE ACTION
Conference committee reconciles differences between House and Senate bills.
Compromise bill sent to each chamber for final approval.
PRESIDENT
Compromise bill approved by both houses is sent to the president for signing.

H CON RES YEA NAY PRES TIME

The electronic voting system in the House, introduced in 1973, has made roll call voting more efficient. By inserting a plastic card in a voting box, a member can vote "yea," "nay," or "present." A lighted board above the Speaker's rostrum shows how each member has voted.

63. How is a measure introduced in (a) the House? (b) the Senate?

64. After a measure is introduced, it is numbered, printed, and referred to the appropriate committee by the Speaker of the House or the presiding officer of the Senate. Identify how the following types of proposals would be designated.

    A. **bills**

    B. **joint resolutions**

    C. **concurrent resolutions**

    D. **resolutions**

65. In most cases, after a bill is sent to a standing committee, the committee chairman refers the measure to a subcommittee for study and initial hearings. What five options does a full committee have for acting on a bill?

66. Most bills die in committee when the committee decides not to report the bill out for consideration by the full house. This is called ____________ .

67. If a measure is stalled in a House committee, how can it be forced out?

68. After a bill is reported by a standing committee, it is placed on a calendar. The Senate has only two calendars, the Executive Calendar, on which treaties and nominations are listed, and the Calendar of Business (General Orders), to which all legislation is assigned. Identify on which of the five House legislative calendars the following types of measures are placed.

    A. **public bills** raising revenue or appropriating money

    B. public bills not raising revenue or appropriating money

    C. noncontroversial public bills

    D. **private bills**

    E. discharge petitions

69. In the House, most major bills do not go directly from a calendar to the floor of the House. Instead, the Rules Committee plays a critical role in scheduling legislation. The Rules Committee issues a rule for each bill, without which the bill is virtually dead. The House Rules Committee makes all of the following decisions *except:*

    A. how much money should be appropriated for new programs

    B. how much time will be permitted for floor debate on a measure in the House

    C. the extent to which a measure can be amended on the floor of the House

    D. which bills reported out by committees will be scheduled for floor action in the House

70. In the Senate, the majority leader, often in consultation with the minority leader, schedules legislation for floor action. How do most measures reach the Senate floor?

71. For either chamber of Congress to do business, the Constitution requires that a quorum—a majority of the members—must be present. How does the House consider legislation when a quorum is not present?

72. Because of its large size, the House of Representatives severely limits floor debate. All debate must be germane—relevant to the measure under discussion. In contrast, floor debate in the Senate is usually unlimited and need not be germane. In 1957, Senator Strom Thurmond of South Carolina spoke for a record 24 hours and 18 minutes in an attempt to block the Civil Rights Act. What is this Senate action called and when is it used?

73. Under a rule adopted in 1917, the Senate may limit debate through cloture. How is this procedure invoked?

74. During floor consideration of a measure, amendments are often proposed. In the House, all amendments generally must be related to the subject of the bill. In the Senate, riders, or nongermane amendments, may be added to a bill. Which of the following is *not* true concerning such amendments?

   A. Appropriations measures are favorite targets for riders.

   B. When called an "amendment," a bill that is stalled in committee can get onto the Senate floor.

   C. The Congress and the president may approve a measure that they oppose because it has been attached to a popular bill.

   D. The Supreme Court routinely strikes down such amendments as unconstitutional.

75. There are four different procedures for voting in Congress: **voice votes, division votes, teller votes,** and **roll call votes.**

   A. Which method of voting is used most often?

   B. Which method of voting is only used in the House of Representatives?

   C. Which method of voting does the Constitution require be used to override a presidential veto?

76. Any measure enacted by Congress must have been passed by both houses in identical form. When neither the House nor Senate will accept the other's version of a measure, a conference committee is formed to reconcile the two versions. Why is a conference committee's report (the compromise bill) seldom rejected by either house?

77. Once a measure has been given final approval by both houses, it is sent to the president of the United States. Four options are then available to the president. What happens to the measure if:

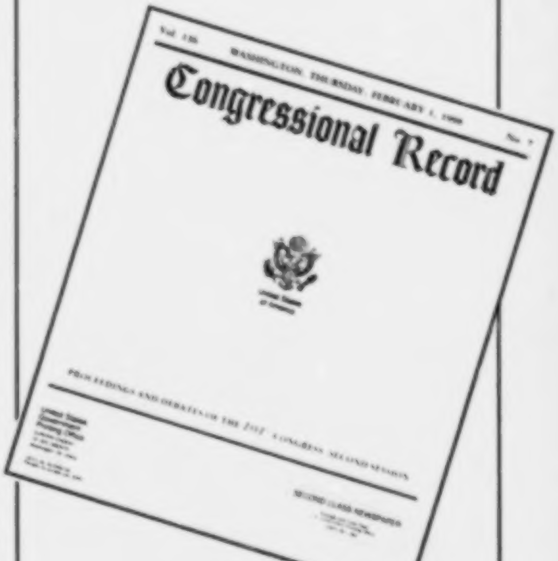
   A. the president signs it?

   B. the president vetoes (refuses to sign) it?

   C. the president does not act on the measure within 10 days (Sundays excepted) of receiving it, and Congress is still in session?

   D. the president does not act on the measure within 10 days (Sundays excepted) of receiving it, during which time Congress adjourns?

78. How many members of Congress must vote to override a presidential veto for the bill to become law?



Congressional Record

The *Congressional Record*, published daily when Congress is in session, provides an account of each chamber's debate and votes, although it is subject to corrections by members and may include remarks never actually delivered. An official report of actions taken is provided in each chamber's *Journal*, as required by the Constitution.

The Powers of Congress

79. One of the most important powers of Congress is its power to tax. What four specific limits does the Constitution place on the congressional taxing power?

80. Why is the Sixteenth Amendment significant to the taxing power of Congress?

81. What kind of trade does the Constitution expressly give Congress the power to regulate?

82. List four explicit limits the Constitution places on the commerce power of Congress.

83. Congress shares with the president power over U.S. foreign relations and national defense. If a foreign government with which the United States maintained diplomatic relations were overthrown, Congress could take all of the following actions *except:*

    A. declare war on the country

    B. refuse to provide U.S. aid to the new government

    C. reject the ambassador to the United States appointed by the new government

    D. reject the president's appointment of a U.S. ambassador to the new government

84. Following Watergate, Congress turned increasingly to the **legislative veto** in an effort to exert more control over the executive branch. Why did the Supreme Court declare legislative vetoes to be unconstitutional in *Immigration and Naturalization Service v. Chadha* (1983)?

85. Congress has important responsibilities related to the selection of the president and the vice president of the United States. What are they?

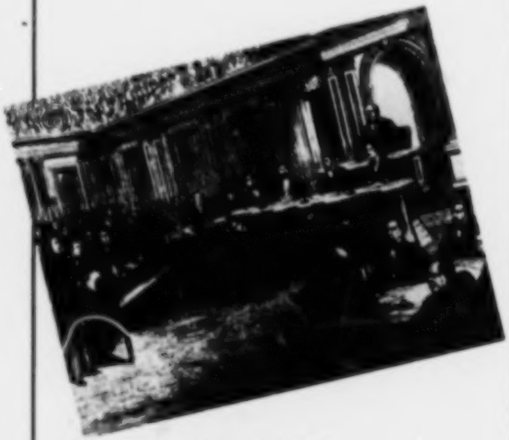
86. One of the most important functions of Congress is its role in amending the Constitution. How does the process of passing a joint resolution proposing an amendment to the Constitution differ from the regular process to pass a bill?

87. Congress is granted the power to impeach and remove civil officers of the United States. According to Alexander Hamilton in *Federalist* 65, the impeachment process was "designed as a method of national inquest into the conduct of public men." What role does each house of Congress play in the impeachment process?

88. The Constitution requires the president to seek the "advice and consent" of the Senate in two areas. What are they?

89. What types of federal positions are most likely to be subject to **senatorial courtesy?**

90. Although the power to conduct investigations is not specifically granted to Congress in the Constitution, both houses of Congress use investigations to gather information and to review the effectiveness of existing laws. Investigations also allow Congress to find out whether programs are being administered as Congress intended they should be. What is this process called?



This engraving shows the 1868 impeachment trial of President Andrew Johnson, who was acquitted by one vote. As of 1989, only seven federal officials, all judges, have been removed from office through the impeachment process.

8. The Executive Branch

Some of the most heated debates at the Constitutional Convention concerned the nature of the executive. British rule had made the colonists suspicious of centralized power, particularly in a single individual. But due to their experiences under the Articles of Confederation, the delegates agreed on the need for an executive authority to administer and enforce the law. The delegates disagreed about the composition, powers, length of term, and method of selecting the executive. Some wanted a weak executive, chosen by, and subordinate to, Congress. Others favored a strong president, chosen independently of Congress and with distinct powers.

The compromises finally agreed to by those delegates are spelled out in Article II of the Constitution. In contrast with Article I, which contains a lengthy and detailed list of congressional powers, Article II deals with the executive branch in a sketchy fashion. Article II creates the offices of president and vice president and mentions executive departments, but it does not clearly define the structure of the executive branch and the power of the president.

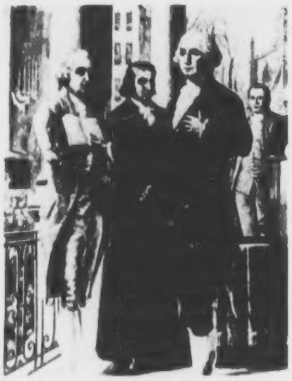
The debate over the nature and extent of the executive power has continued for more than 200 years. Congress dominated the national government for most of the nineteenth century, except for the Jackson and Lincoln administrations. However, a major economic depression and two world wars spurred an expansion of the federal government and presidential power in the twentieth century.

In *Federalist* 70, Alexander Hamilton wrote: "Energy in the executive is a leading character in the definition of good government." But in the wake of Watergate, some scholars argue that presidential power has expanded to the point that it is inconsistent with democratic government. Others counter that the president is too weak to satisfy public expectations and solve the nation's problems.

This chapter examines the structure and powers of the executive branch: the president, the vice president, the cabinet, and executive departments and agencies—a vast array of offices and agencies with nearly three million civilian employees. Consider the president's role in our government as you study the questions in this chapter. How much power does and should the president have?

SEAL OF THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

BEST COPY AVAILABLE



George Washington became the nation's first president on April 30, 1789, when he swore to "preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States." Washington was inaugurated on the balcony of the nation's first capitol, Federal Hall in New York City.

The President

1. What are the three constitutional requirements for holding the presidency?
2. At the Constitutional Convention, several proposals concerning the length of the president's term in office were made. Which proposal was finally accepted by the framers?
3. How was the president's term affected by the provisions of the Twentieth Amendment?
4. Although the Constitution originally placed no limit on the number of terms a president might serve, George Washington established the two-term tradition by refusing to seek a third term. President Franklin Roosevelt, who won four terms in office, broke the tradition. Since passage of the Twenty-second Amendment, to how many terms may a president be elected?
5. If Gerald Ford had been elected in 1976, would he have been eligible for reelection in 1980 under the provisions of the Twenty-second Amendment? Why or why not?
6. Who fixes the president's pay?
7. Why does the Constitution prohibit a change in the president's salary during his or her term?

The Vice President

8. What are the constitutional qualifications for holding the vice presidency?
9. Which of the following duties is *not* assigned to the vice president by the Constitution?

   A. to act as the president's chief foreign emissary

   B. to help decide the question of presidential disability

   C. to preside over the Senate

   D. to succeed a president who dies, resigns, or who is removed from office
10. Until ratification of the Twenty-fifth Amendment, if the office of vice president became vacant, it remained vacant until the next presidential election. Under the terms of the Twenty-fifth Amendment, how is a replacement chosen?

DEMOCRATIC
NATIONAL
CONVENTION

In 1988, Democratic presidential candidate Michael Dukakis, governor of Massachusetts, chose Senator Lloyd Bentsen of Texas as his running mate. A vice-presidential candidate is usually chosen to "balance the ticket" by appealing to a different bloc of voters than the presidential candidate.

Answer question 11 using the following excerpt from a newspaper opinion column written by Norman Sherman, press secretary to former Vice President Hubert Humphrey.

> The job of vice president prepares you to be president only in the sense that you are there in case the president dies. The rest is robotics.
>
> It is a job of no consequence, of few real and many quite forgettable accomplishments and, more's the pity, of self-delusion that you are an irreplaceable player in important acts of state. . . .
>
> The job of the vice president means you are not homeless and you do draw a regular paycheck. Beyond that, you are what the president allows you to be, but you have no real authority, no real responsibility and no independent clout. And almost everyone inside knows that.
>
> A vice president goes as a messenger wherever he goes, trappings of derivative power substituting for the real thing. The secretaries of state and defense have more authority on foreign affairs and defense policy. And, on domestic issues, each Cabinet officer, no matter how lowly or mediocre, has more authority in his or her field than the vice president.

11. Based on the comments below, which of the following vice presidents would *disagree* most strongly with the view expressed in this excerpt?
    - A. The vice presidency is "the most insignificant office that ever the invention of man contrived or his imagination conceived." (John Adams)
    - B. "Once there were two brothers. One ran away to sea; the other was elected vice president, and nothing was ever heard of either of them again." (Thomas Marshall)
    - C. The vice presidency "isn't worth a pitcher of warm spit." (John Nance Garner)
    - D. The role of the vice president is to bring to the president "advice on broad issues, strategies, and political problems." (Walter Mondale)

Presidential Succession

12. Which constitutional amendment confirmed the practice, begun by John Tyler in 1841, that if the presidency becomes vacant, the vice president succeeds to that office?

13. Under the terms of the Twenty-fifth Amendment, if the president becomes incapacitated, he or she may designate the vice president as acting president. If the president does not do so, who is granted the authority to declare that the president is "unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office"?

14. The president may resume the powers and duties of the office by informing Congress that no disability exists. If the vice president and a majority of the cabinet challenge the president's assertion, who determines whether the president is able to resume office?

Presidents of the United States

President	Term	Party
1. George Washington	1789-1797	None
2. John Adams	1797-1801	Federalist
3. Thomas Jefferson	1801-1809	Dem.-Rep.
4. James Madison	1809-1817	Dem.-Rep.
5. James Monroe	1817-1825	Dem.-Rep.
6. John Quincy Adams	1825-1829	Dem.-Rep.
7. Andrew Jackson	1829-1837	Democrat
8. Martin Van Buren	1837-1841	Democrat
9. William H. Harrison	1841	Whig
10. John Tyler	1841-1845	Whig
11. James K. Polk	1845-1849	Democrat
12. Zachary Taylor	1849-1850	Whig
13. Millard Fillmore	1850-1853	Whig
14. Franklin Pierce	1853-1857	Democrat
15. James Buchanan	1857-1861	Democrat
16. Abraham Lincoln	1861-1865	Republican
17. Andrew Johnson	1865-1869	Republican
18. Ulysses S. Grant	1869-1877	Republican
19. Rutherford B. Hayes	1877-1881	Republican
20. James A. Garfield	1881	Republican
21. Chester A. Arthur	1881-1885	Republican
22. Grover Cleveland	1885-1889	Democrat
23. Benjamin Harrison	1889-1893	Republican
24. Grover Cleveland	1893-1897	Democrat
25. William McKinley	1897-1901	Republican
26. Theodore Roosevelt	1901-1909	Republican
27. William H. Taft	1909-1913	Republican
28. Woodrow Wilson	1913-1921	Democrat
29. Warren G. Harding	1921-1923	Republican
30. Calvin Coolidge	1923-1929	Republican
31. Herbert Hoover	1929-1933	Republican
32. Franklin D. Roosevelt	1933-1945	Democrat
33. Harry S. Truman	1945-1953	Democrat
34. Dwight D. Eisenhower	1953-1961	Republican
35. John F. Kennedy	1961-1963	Democrat
36. Lyndon B. Johnson	1963-1969	Democrat
37. Richard M. Nixon	1969-1974	Republican
38. Gerald R. Ford	1974-1977	Republican
39. Jimmy Carter	1977-1981	Democrat
40. Ronald Reagan	1981-1989	Republican
41. George Bush	1989-	Republican

Under the Presidential Succession Act of 1947, it is possible for the Speaker of the House, president *pro tempore* of the Senate, and cabinet secretaries, according to the seniority of their departments, to become president. However, the Twenty-fifth Amendment makes it unlikely that the vice-presidency would be vacant.

Presidential Line of Succession

Vice President
Speaker of the House
President *Pro Tempore* of the Senate
Secretary of State
Secretary of the Treasury
Secretary of Defense
Attorney General
Secretary of the Interior
Secretary of Agriculture
Secretary of Commerce
Secretary of Labor
Secretary of Health and Human Services
Secretary of Housing and Urban Development
Secretary of Transportation
Secretary of Energy
Secretary of Education
Secretary of Veterans Affairs

President Gerald Ford and Vice President Nelson Rockefeller assumed their offices under the terms of the Twenty-fifth Amendment. For the first time in U.S. history, neither of the top two executive branch officials had been elected to either the presidency or the vice-presidency.

Choosing the President

15. The Constitution makes no provision for the nomination of presidential candidates. From 1800 until 1824, congressional caucuses nominated candidates for president. What was the major criticism of the caucus as a nominating method?

16. Today, the presidential candidates of the two major parties are nominated at national party conventions. How are delegates to each party's national convention apportioned among the states?

17. To win the party's nomination, a candidate needs a majority of convention delegates. Convention delegates are chosen two basic ways: by presidential primaries and caucuses. Which method is most common?

18. Depending on the state involved, presidential primaries are either a delegate selection process, a preference election, or both. A presidential preference primary, in which voters indicate the candidate they prefer but convention delegates are not bound to observe that preference, is commonly referred to as a ______________ .

19. What is a binding presidential preference primary?

20. How do open and closed primaries differ?

21. What is the difference between "winner-take-all" and proportional presidential preference primaries?

22. Which of the following is *not* a criticism of presidential primaries?

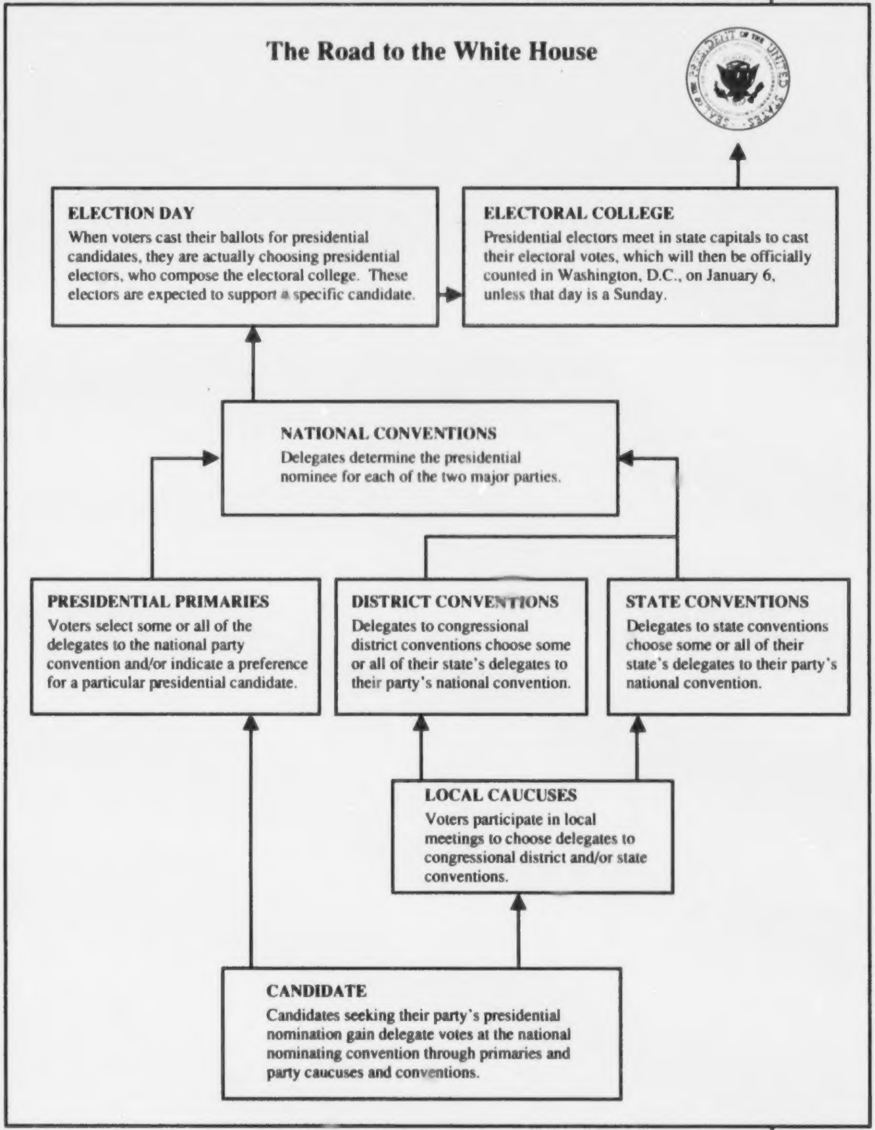
    A. Primaries make the delegate selection process more democratic by allowing public participation in the nomination process.

    B. Primaries increase the campaign costs of running for president by adding another election to be won.

    C. Primaries are divisive, because they lead to public conflicts among members of the same political party.

    D. The growth of primaries has added to both the candidates' and the public's fatigue by lengthening the presidential campaign.

23. What are some common characteristics that the presidential candidates of the two major parties have shared?
24. Because running for president is quite costly, the federal government now helps finance presidential campaigns. How is money for the Presidential Election Campaign Fund raised?
25. Federal matching funds are available in presidential primaries. How does a candidate become eligible for these matching funds?
26. The two major party presidential nominees automatically qualify for public subsidies to cover the costs of the general election campaign. How can minor party candidates qualify for public funding?
27. What limits are placed on presidential candidates who accept the federal campaign subsidy for the general election campaign?
28. What is the principal expenditure of each candidate's campaign?



The Road to the White House

ELECTION DAY
When voters cast their ballots for presidential candidates, they are actually choosing presidential electors, who compose the electoral college. These electors are expected to support a specific candidate.
ELECTORAL COLLEGE
Presidential electors meet in state capitals to cast their electoral votes, which will then be officially counted in Washington, D.C., on January 6, unless that day is a Sunday.
NATIONAL CONVENTIONS
Delegates determine the presidential nominee for each of the two major parties.
PRESIDENTIAL PRIMARIES
Voters select some or all of the delegates to the national party convention and/or indicate a preference for a particular presidential candidate.
DISTRICT CONVENTIONS
Delegates to congressional district conventions choose some or all of their state's delegates to their party's national convention.
STATE CONVENTIONS
Delegates to state conventions choose some or all of their state's delegates to their party's national convention.
LOCAL CAUCUSES
Voters participate in local meetings to choose delegates to congressional district and/or state conventions.
CANDIDATE
Candidates seeking their party's presidential nomination gain delegate votes at the national nominating convention through primaries and party caucuses and conventions.

This chart depicts the long road to the White House. Presidential candidates often announce their candidacy years before the general election in order to rally support and raise money for their campaigns.

During election years, the two major parties hold national conventions to select their presidential and vice-presidential candidates, adopt the party's platform, and unite behind the ticket. The first national convention to nominate a presidential candidate was held by the Anti-Masonic party in 1831.

Answer questions 29-30 using the following excerpt from a speech made by George Mason at the Constitutional Convention.

> It would be as unnatural to refer the choice of a proper character for chief Magistrate to the people, as it would be to refer a trial of colours to a blind man. The extent of the Country renders it impossible that the people can have the requisite capacity to judge of the respective pretensions of the Candidates.

29. Because the framers of the Constitution agreed with Mason's argument, they established the ____________ to select the president and vice president.

30. Which of the following *best* supports the claim that Mason's argument against direct popular election of the president is now obsolete?

    A. advances in telecommunications

    B. the corruption of existing electors

    C. the improvement of education

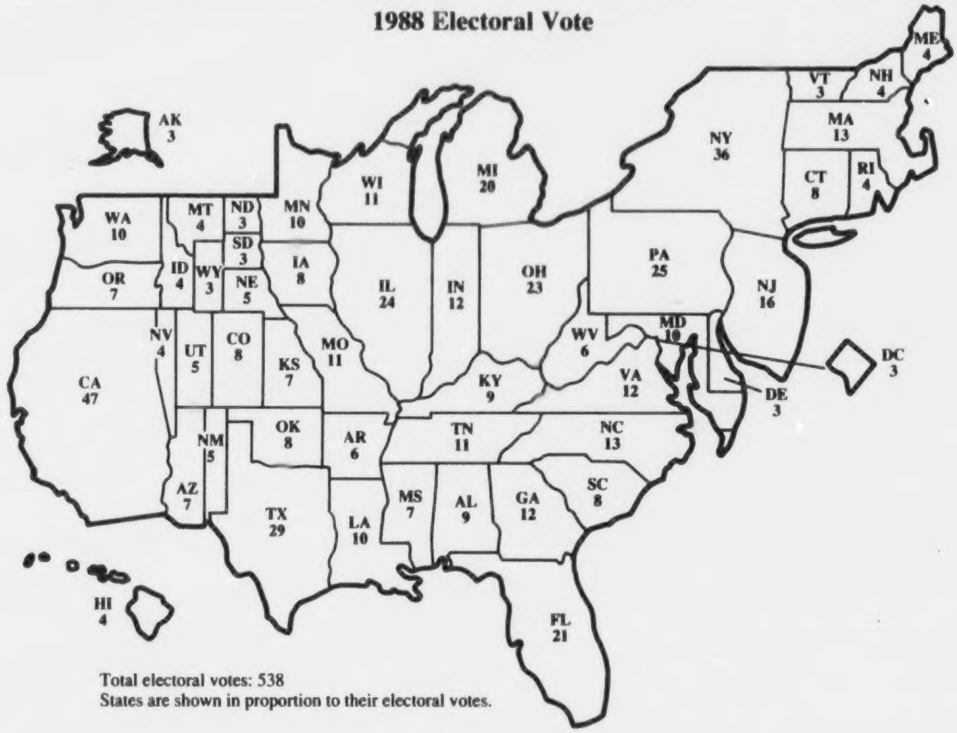
    D. an increase in urban population

31. The original version of the electoral college system did not allow electors to cast separate ballots for president and vice president. What problems did this create?

32. What major change did the Twelfth Amendment make in the electoral college system?

Answer questions 33-35 using the map below.

1988 Electoral Vote


ME 4
VT 3
NH 4
AK 3
MA 13
NY 36
RI 4
CT 8
MI 20
WI 11
WA 10
MT 4
ND 3
MN 10
SD 3
IA 8
PA 25
OR 7
ID 4
WY 3
NE 5
IL 24
IN 12
OH 23
NJ 16
MD 10
NV 4
UT 5
CO 8
KS 7
MO 11
WV 6
DC 3
CA 47
KY 9
VA 12
DE 3
NM 5
OK 8
AR 6
TN 11
NC 13
AZ 7
MS 7
AL 9
GA 12
SC 8
TX 29
LA 10
HI 4
FL 21

Total electoral votes: 538
States are shown in proportion to their electoral votes.

33. How is the number of electoral votes for each state and the District of Columbia determined?

34. What is the total number of electors?

35. How many electoral votes are needed to win the presidency?

36. Whom does the Constitution specifically bar from being electors?

37. When are presidential electors chosen?

38. How does every state except Maine award its electoral votes?

39. Where and when do electors cast their ballots for president and vice president?

40. One major criticism of the electoral college system is that a presidential candidate may lose the popular vote but win the electoral vote and become president. Name the three elections in which the candidate with fewer popular votes became president.

41. A second criticism of the electoral college system is that it violates the "one person, one vote" principle. How does the electoral college system benefit:

    A. states with a large population

    B. states with a small population

42. Critics of the electoral college system also dislike the fact that electors sometimes do not vote for the candidate that won the popular vote in their states. How do the actions of such "faithless electors" compare with the framers' conception of the role of electors?

43. Several plans to reform the electoral college have been suggested. Identify each of the following plans described below.

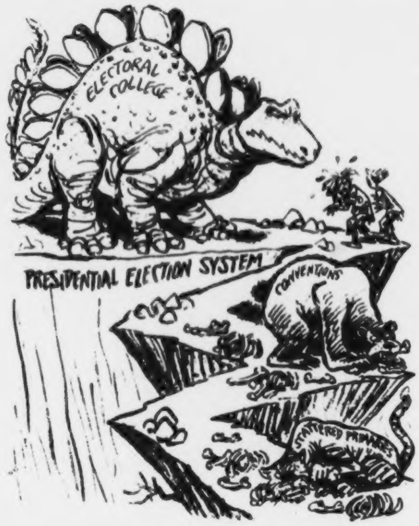
    A. Electoral votes in each state would be cast in proportion to the popular vote received by that candidate in that state.

    B. Electors would be chosen in the same way as U.S. representatives and senators, rather than solely at-large.

    C. The president would be chosen by a nationwide popular vote, and electors would be eliminated.

    D. An additional 102 electoral votes would be granted to the winner of the popular vote; 321 votes would be needed to win the presidency.

Answer question 44 using the cartoon at right.



"Whew! Can't we find some other route?"

from The Herblock Gallery *(Simon & Schuster, 1968)*

44. This cartoon suggests all of the following *except:*

    A. Presidential primaries and conventions eliminate many presidential aspirants.

    B. The electoral college is outdated.

    C. The presidential election system should not be reformed.

    D. Winning the presidency is difficult.

Powers of the Presidency

Answer question 45 using the following passages written by Presidents Theodore Roosevelt and William Howard Taft.

> My view was that . . . every executive officer in high position, was a steward of the people bound actively and affirmatively to do all he could for the people. . . . I declined to adopt the view that what was imperatively necessary for the Nation could not be done by the President unless he could find some specific authorization to do it. My belief was that it was not only his right but his duty to do anything that the needs of the Nation demanded unless such action was forbidden by the Constitution or by the laws. . . . I did not usurp power, but I did greatly broaden the use of executive power. (Theodore Roosevelt)

> My judgment is that the view of Mr. Roosevelt, ascribing an undefined residuum of power to the President, is an unsafe doctrine. . . . The true view of the executive function is, as I conceive it, that the President can exercise no power which cannot be fairly and reasonably traced to some specific grant of power or justly implied and included within such express grant. . . . Such specific grant must be either in the federal Constitution or in an act of Congress passed in pursuance thereof. There is no undefined residuum of power which he can exercise because it seems to him to be in the public interest. (William Howard Taft)

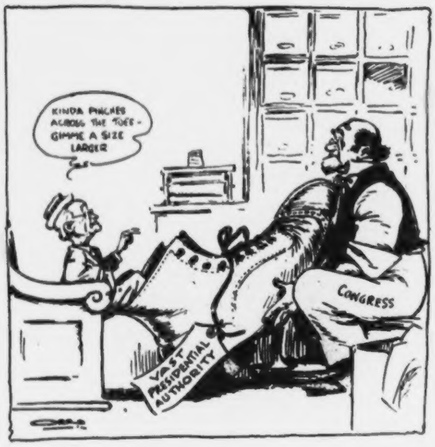
45. Determine whether each of the following presidents would agree more strongly with the opinion given by Taft or by Roosevelt.

    A. Warren Harding

    B. Calvin Coolidge

    C. Franklin Roosevelt

    D. Lyndon Johnson


KINDA PINCHES ACROSS THE TOES - GIMME A SIZE LARGER
CONGRESS
VAST PRESIDENTIAL AUTHORITY

Answer questions 46-48 using the cartoon at left.

46. What does this cartoon suggest about the power of the president relative to Congress?

47. To what factor does this cartoon attribute the twentieth-century growth in presidential power?

48. State whether Harry Truman, the president pictured in this cartoon, would agree or disagree with the following statement by Woodrow Wilson: "The president is at liberty, both in law and in conscience, to be as big a man as he can. His capacity will set the limit; and if Congress be overborne by him, it will be no fault of the Constitution."

49. The Constitution makes the president the nation's chief executive by delegating to the president the power to execute federal laws. How, in executing and enforcing the law, does the executive branch influence the meaning of the law?

50. Presidents use their authority as chief executive to issue executive orders, which are not mentioned in the Constitution. In 1948, for example, President Harry Truman issued an executive order barring segregation of the U.S. armed forces. What are executive orders?

51. Why is the president's power to appoint and remove top administration officials important?

52. According to the Constitution, which government officials may the president appoint?

53. Under what two circumstances may presidents appoint federal officials without the "advice and consent" of the Senate?

54. What are three major constraints on the president's power to appoint federal officials?

55. Except for the complicated and seldom-used impeachment process, the Constitution does not say by whom or under what circumstances appointed officials may be dismissed. In the case of ______________, the Supreme Court, led by Chief Justice William Howard Taft, ruled that the president has the authority to remove anyone he or she has appointed.

56. How did the Supreme Court's decision in *Humphrey's Executor v. United States* (1935) affect the president's power to dismiss appointed officials?

57. Presidents have claimed the right to withhold information from Congress and the courts because of the principle of separation of powers and the need for confidentiality in executive communications. What is this practice, which is not mentioned in the Constitution, called?

58. What did the Supreme Court decide about this practice of withholding information in *United States v. Nixon* (1974)?

59. The president is often referred to as the nation's chief legislator because the Constitution delegates several legislative powers to the president. What are these legislative powers?

60. Which legislative power of the president has never been used?

61. How can the threat of a presidential veto affect the legislative process?

62. How would an item veto expand the legislative powers of the president?

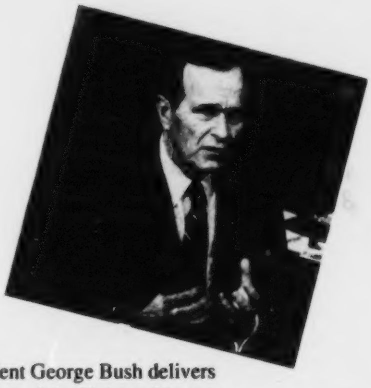
63. As part of the system of checks and balances, the Constitution also gives certain judicial powers to the president, including the power to grant reprieves and pardons. In 1974, President Gerald Ford pardoned his predecessor, Richard Nixon, for any crimes he might have committed during his presidency. Is this an example of an absolute or a conditional pardon?

64. What limits does the Constitution place on the president's power to grant reprieves and pardons?

65. In 1977 President Carter gave amnesty to all Vietnam War draft evaders. How does an amnesty differ from a pardon?

66. The president is often called the nation's chief diplomat. The Constitution grants the president several diplomatic powers, including the power to negotiate agreements with foreign leaders on behalf of the United States. How do treaties differ from executive agreements?

67. The Constitution states that the president "shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers." What diplomatic power of the president is implied by this phrase?



President George Bush delivers the State of the Union address to a joint session of Congress, as the Constitution requires. In 1913, Woodrow Wilson revived the practice of delivering the annual address in person. The state of the union address allows the president to outline his policies and set clear legislative priorities.

68. *Hypothetical situation:* An American military base abroad is attacked by military forces of the host nation. Which of the following actions could the president take within the limits of his or her powers as commander in chief?

    A. appropriate money to finance defense of the military base

    B. declare a state of war against the host nation

    C. order the National Guard (state militias) and U.S. military forces into combat against the attackers

    D. raise and support armies in case the action rapidly escalates

69. Several presidents have used their power as commander in chief of the nation's armed forces to wage undeclared wars. Which of the following are provisions of the War Powers Act of 1973, passed over President Nixon's veto, which restricts the president's use of U.S. troops in combat abroad?

    A. The president may not commit U.S. troops to combat abroad unless Congress declares war, a law authorizes such action, or there is a national emergency.

    B. If the president sends troops into battle abroad without congressional authorization, he or she must report to Congress within 48 hours.

    C. That troop commitment must end within 60 days, unless Congress authorizes a longer period. The 60-day deadline may be extended for as much as 30 days.

    D. Congress may direct the president to disengage U.S. troops at any time, by passing a concurrent resolution (a legislative veto) to that effect.

The Executive Branch

70. Under what circumstances was the Executive Office of the President (EOP) created?

71. The White House Office includes the president's closest advisers. What is the role of the president's chief of staff, a key position in the White House Office?

72. By law, what officials compose the National Security Council (NSC), which Congress established in 1947 to advise the president on all matters that bear on the nation's security?

73. Identify each of the following groups that make up the EOP.

    A. This office advises the president about scientific and technological developments.

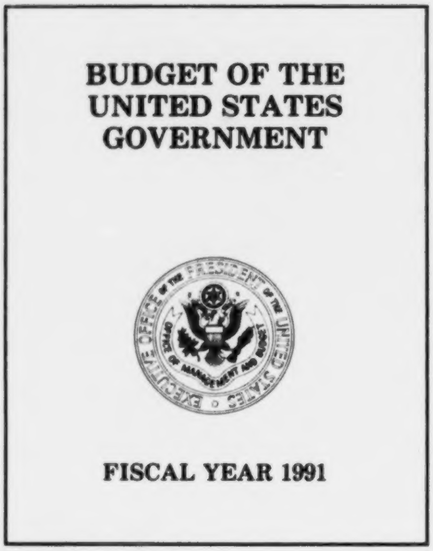
    B. This office advises the president on domestic policy issues.

    C. This office advises the president on matters relating to foreign trade. The head of this office, who has the status of an ambassador, represents the president in foreign trade negotiations.

    D. This office assists the president in environmental policy matters.

    E. This office, which is headed by three economists, helps prepare the president's annual economic report to Congress.

    F. This office provides support services to the other units within the EOP.



BUDGET OF THE
UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT

FISCAL YEAR 1991

The preparation and execution of the federal budget, which is submitted annually by the president to Congress, is overseen by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB). The director of OMB is appointed by the president with Senate approval.

The Executive Branch of the Federal Government

President

Vice President

Executive Office of the President

Council of Economic Advisers (CEA)
Council on Environmental Quality
National Security Council (NSC)
Office of Management and Budget (OMB)
Office of Administration
Office of Policy Development
Office of Science and Technology Policy
Office of the U.S. Trade Representative
White House Office (WHO)

Executive Departments

Department of State
Department of the Treasury
Department of Defense
Department of Justice
Department of the Interior
Department of Agriculture
Department of Commerce
Department of Labor
Department of Health and Human Services
Department of Housing and Urban Development
Department of Transportation
Department of Energy
Department of Education
Department of Veterans Affairs

Major Independent Agencies

Selected Independent Executive Agencies
Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)
Commission on Civil Rights
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
Federal Election Commission (FEC)
General Services Administration (GSA)
National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)
National Science Foundation (NSF)
Small Business Administration (SBA)

Selected Government Corporations
National Railroad Passenger Corporation (Amtrak)
Export-Import Bank of the United States
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC)
Tennessee Valley Authority (TVA)
U.S. Postal Service (USPS)

Selected Independent Regulatory Commissions
Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC)
Federal Communications Commission (FCC)
Federal Reserve System, Board of Governors
Federal Trade Commission (FTC)
Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC)
National Labor Relations Board (NLRB)
Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC)
Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)

74. The president appoints the head of each of the 14 executive departments subject to Senate confirmation. Who may establish or eliminate cabinet departments?

75. What two important, but often conflicting, roles do cabinet members perform?

76. Name the unit within the Department of the Treasury that:

    A. collects import duties and enforces customs laws

    B. collects nearly all federal taxes

    C. designs, engraves, and prints U.S. currency, postage stamps, and securities

    D. manages the public debt

    E. manufactures U.S. coins and holds the federal government's reserves of gold and silver

77. The Department of Defense is structured to ensure civilian control of the military. Identify the following officials in the Department of Defense, whom the president appoints with Senate approval.

    A. This official is a civilian who has not been on active military duty for at least 10 years. He or she helps formulate and implement the nation's defense policy and heads the Department of Defense.

    B. These civilian officials direct each of the three military departments within the Department of Defense.

    C. These five individuals, who are the principal military advisors to the president, are also the highest ranking uniformed officers in the nation's armed services.

The executive branch consists of the president, the vice president, the Executive Office of the President, the 14 executive departments, and about 200 independent agencies.

78. Identify the role of the following officials in the Department of Justice.

    A. attorney general

    B. solicitor general

    C. U.S. attorneys

79. Name the executive department and the agency or office in that department that:

    A. administers the food stamp program and the national school lunch program

    B. enforces federal job safety and health standards

    C. enforces federal laws that protect consumers from impure and unsafe food and drug products

    D. forecasts the weather in the United States

80. Name the executive department and the agency or office in that department that:

    A. administers America's national parks and historic sites

    B. compiles evidence and locates witnesses for most cases involving violations of federal laws

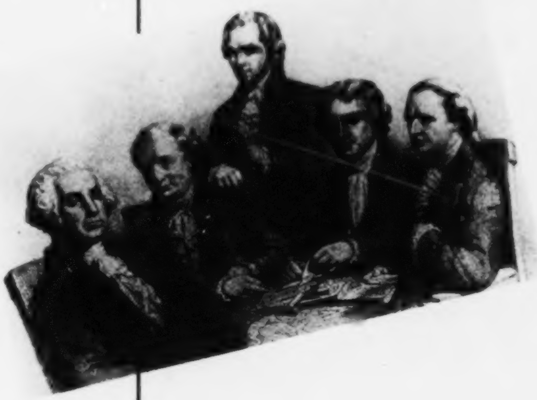
    C. enforces federal maritime laws on the navigable waters of the United States

    D. issues U.S. passports

81. Since the 1880s, Congress has created many independent agencies located outside of the executive departments. Into what three general categories can these independent agencies be divided?

82. What is the principal difference between independent executive agencies—such as the General Services Administration (GSA), the federal government's housekeeping agency—and executive departments?

Secretary of Labor Frances Perkins, appointed by President Franklin Roosevelt in 1933, was the first woman to hold a cabinet post.



George Washington established the cabinet as a presidential advisory board. The first cabinet consisted of (left to right after Washington) Secretary of War Henry Knox, Secretary of the Treasury Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of State Thomas Jefferson, and Attorney General Edmund Randolph.

Nuclear facilities, such as Oregon's Trojan Power Plant, are licensed and regulated by the Nuclear Regulatory Commission (NRC), an independent regulatory commission.

83. Congress has created a number of independent regulatory commissions to regulate various aspects of the nation's economy. The Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC), for example, protects the public from dangerous products. What steps has Congress taken to ensure that independent regulatory commissions are truly independent of the executive branch?

84. How are independent regulatory commissions exceptions to the principle of separation of powers?

85. Congress has set up several government corporations to carry out certain businesslike activities. America's first government corporation, the ______________, was chartered in 1791.

86. Most government corporations, like their private sector counterparts, are run by a board of directors and produce income, which is reinvested in the enterprise. How do government corporations differ from private corporations?

The Civil Service

87. When he became president in 1789, George Washington set out to hire the most qualified persons for the federal work force. However, both he and his successor, John Adams, tended to favor members of the Federalist party. How did Thomas Jefferson respond to this situation when he took office in 1801?

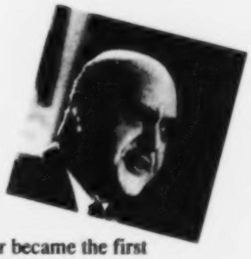
88. When Andrew Jackson became president in 1829, he replaced almost 20 percent of federal officeholders with his political allies. Which of the following arguments was *not* used by Andrew Jackson to defend his version of the spoils system?

    A. Federal jobs are so simple that everyone can handle them.

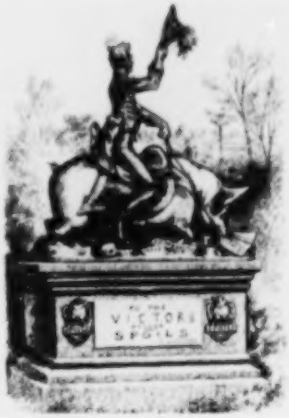
    B. Federal workers should be shifted frequently to prevent them from becoming unresponsive to the people.

    C. The spoils system produces a highly qualified federal workforce.

    D. The winning party should be able to control all the offices of the federal government.



Robert Weaver became the first black cabinet member when President Lyndon Johnson appointed him to head the Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) in 1966.



Andrew Jackson is called the father of the spoils system, the practice of rewarding political supporters and friends with government jobs. The term derives from Senator William Marcy's 1832 statement, "To the victor belong the spoils of the enemy."

89. The spoils system dominated federal hiring until 1883, when Congress, pushed by President Chester Arthur, passed the Civil Service Act.

    A. What 1881 event provided an impetus for civil service reform?

    B. What was the major purpose of this legislation, which is commonly known as the Pendleton Act?

90. The Pendleton Act originally covered only about 10 percent of federal employees. Today, approximately 90 percent of federal workers are under the merit system. Who was given the power by the Pendleton Act to extend the coverage of the merit system?

91. The Pendleton Act also established a three-member bipartisan commission to administer the law. The Civil Service Reform Act of 1978 replaced the 95-year-old Civil Service Commission with two new independent executive agencies. Identify these agencies, which are described below.

    A. This agency recruits, examines, and trains most federal employees. Its director is appointed by the president with Senate approval.

    B. This three-member bipartisan panel, which is appointed by the president with Senate consent, protects the integrity of the merit principle and the rights of federal employees.

92. How are the rights of federal civil servants limited by the Hatch Act of 1939?

9. The Judicial Branch

Under the Articles of Confederation, there was no national court system to interpret and apply the laws of the United States. Most delegates to the Constitutional Convention accepted the need for a separate and relatively independent national judiciary. Many agreed with Alexander Hamilton's statement in *Federalist* 22: "A circumstance which crowns the defects of the Confederation . . . [is] the want of a judiciary power. Laws are a dead letter without courts to expound and define their true meaning and operation."

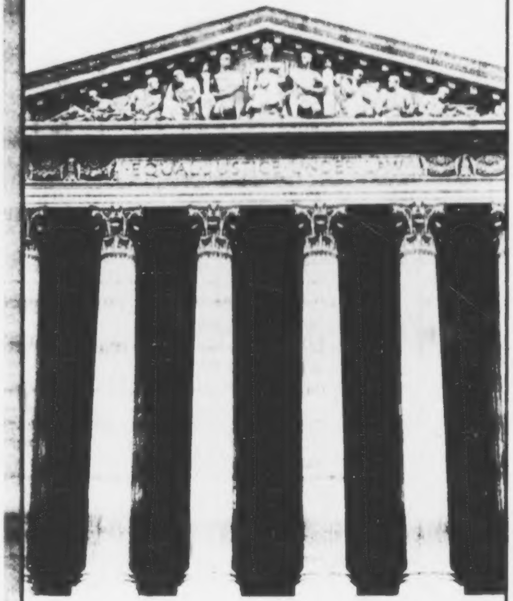
To rectify this defect, the authors of the Constitution provided for a national judiciary in Article III. In contrast to Article I and Article II of the Constitution, which set out in considerable length and detail the powers and prerogatives of Congress and the executive, Article III is brief, simply sketching the outline of a federal judiciary. The only court specifically created by the Constitution is the Supreme Court; the only judicial office mentioned in the Constitution is that of chief justice.

Congress filled in the skeletal structure of the federal court system with the Judiciary Act of 1789 and subsequent statutes. Congress has established a system of federal trial and appellate courts with general jurisdiction beneath the Supreme Court. Congress has also created several courts with more specialized jurisdiction.

This chapter focuses on the jurisdiction, structure, and power of the federal judiciary, with special emphasis on the Supreme Court. But keep in mind that the United States has a dual court system. In addition to the national judiciary, each of the 50 states has its own court system. State courts are discussed in chapter 10.

In *Federalist* 78, Alexander Hamilton called the judiciary the "least dangerous" branch of government. Courts had neither the executive's power of the sword nor the legislature's power of the purse, he argued, so they posed little threat to democratic government.

Yet some contemporary political analysts worry about an "imperial judiciary" with no constraints on its power, accountable neither to the voters nor the literal words of the Constitution. Others argue that without an active judiciary, constitutional rights become meaningless—a "dead letter," in Hamilton's words. As you study the questions in this chapter, consider the proper role of an unelected judicial branch in a democracy of "We, the people."

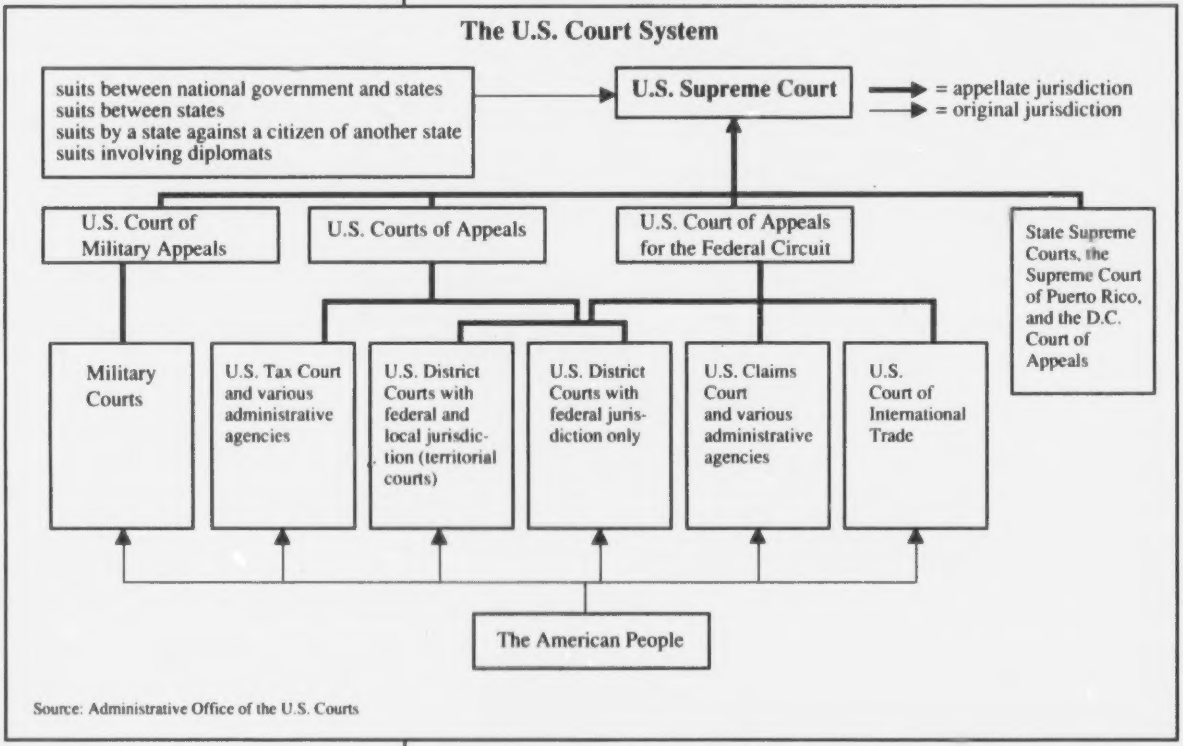


BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Federal Court System

1. Article III, section 2 of the Constitution sets forth the types of cases that the federal courts may hear. On either of what two general bases do the federal courts have **jurisdiction** over cases?

Answer question 2 using the chart below.



The U.S. Court System

suits between national government and states
suits between states
suits by a state against a citizen of another state
suits involving diplomats
U.S. Supreme Court
= appellate jurisdiction
= original jurisdiction
U.S. Court of Military Appeals
U.S. Courts of Appeals
U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit
State Supreme Courts, the Supreme Court of Puerto Rico, and the D.C. Court of Appeals
Military Courts
U.S. Tax Court and various administrative agencies
U.S. District Courts with federal and local jurisdiction (territorial courts)
U.S. District Courts with federal jurisdiction only
U.S. Claims Court and various administrative agencies
U.S. Court of International Trade
The American People

Source: Administrative Office of the U.S. Courts

2. Determine the courts that have **original** and **appellate jurisdiction** over the following types of cases:

   A. civil cases between taxpayers and the Internal Revenue Service involving the underpayment of federal taxes

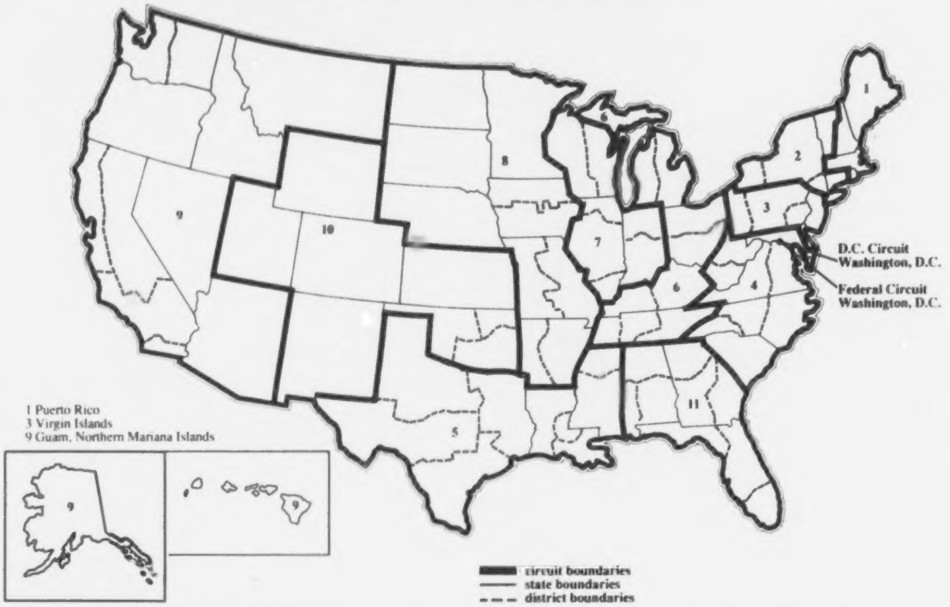
   B. civil cases involving international trade and customs duties

   C. civil and criminal cases in the Virgin Islands, Guam, and the Northern Mariana Islands

   D. claims for damages against the federal government for the taking of private property for public use without just compensation

   E. criminal cases involving federal law

   F. offenses against military law by members of the armed services



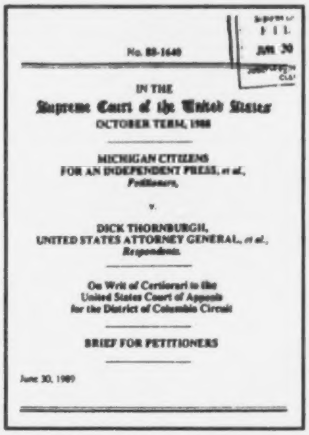
Federal Judicial Circuits and Districts

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
D.C. Circuit Washington, D.C.
Federal Circuit Washington, D.C.
1 Puerto Rico
3 Virgin Islands
9 Guam, Northern Mariana Islands
circuit boundaries
state boundaries
district boundaries

Source: Administrative Office of the U.S. Courts

3. Congress has created two kinds of lower federal courts. Constitutional courts are formed under Article III to exercise "the judicial power of the United States." Legislative (or special) courts hear cases arising out of the legislative powers vested in Congress by the Constitution. Explain under what constitutional authority Congress created the following legislative courts in the national judiciary.
   - A. Court of Military Appeals
   - B. District of Columbia courts of local jurisdiction
   - C. territorial courts
   - D. U.S. Claims Court
   - E. U.S. Tax Court
4. Federal district judges are assisted by a variety of judicial personnel. Identify the court officer who:
   - A. assists the judge in court administration and managing the court's caseload.
   - B. handles bankruptcy cases.
   - C. issues arrest warrants, sets bail in federal criminal cases, and may try those charged with minor offenses.
   - D. makes arrests in federal criminal cases, summons jurors, and serves legal documents.

Congress created the district courts, which hear the bulk of federal cases, under the Judiciary Act of 1789. Congress established the modern federal appellate court system in 1891 to reduce the workload of the U.S. Supreme Court. In 1982, Congress created the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit, which has nationwide appellate jurisdiction over certain kinds of civil cases.



No. 88-1640

JUN 30

IN THE
Supreme Court of the United States
OCTOBER TERM, 1988

MICHIGAN CITIZENS
FOR AN INDEPENDENT PRESS, *et al.*,
Petitioners,

v.

DICK THORNBURGH,
UNITED STATES ATTORNEY GENERAL, *et al.*,
Respondents.

On Writ of Certiorari to the
United States Court of Appeals
for the District of Columbia Circuit

BRIEF FOR PETITIONERS

June 30, 1989

A brief is a written document submitted to a court setting forth the arguments and citing evidence and precedents that support the position taken by the person who submits the brief. Interested parties not directly involved in a suit also may file *amicus curiae* ("friend of the court") briefs.

The Supreme Court in Action

5. Why is the Supreme Court considered to be the nation's "court of last resort"?

6. When does the regular annual session of the Supreme Court begin?

7. Most cases reach the U.S. Supreme Court by a discretionary **writ of *certiorari*.** What is the procedure followed for requesting and issuing writs of *certiorari*?

8. The Supreme Court limits the types of cases it will hear. Which of the following is *not* a question a justice might ask in considering whether a case is **justiciable** by the Supreme Court?

   A. Does the **plaintiff** have **standing** to sue?

   B. Does the suit involve an actual controversy between real adversaries?

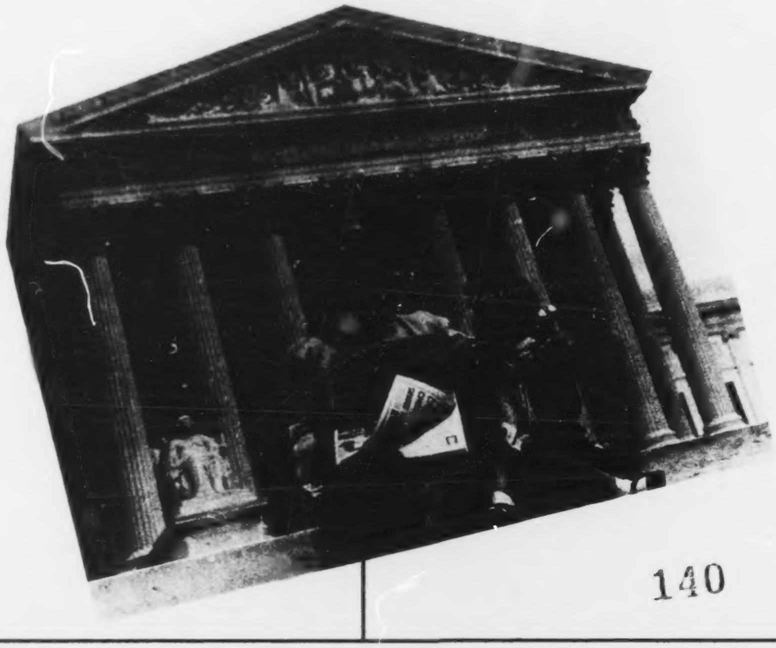
   C. Does the suit involve a moot question, one that makes no difference?

   D. Does the suit involve a political question that should be resolved by another branch of government?

   E. Is the issue ripe for review, or is litigation premature?

   F. Is the plaintiff an adult?

9. If the Supreme Court accepts a case, briefs are submitted and the case is put on the Court's docket. After reading the briefs and hearing oral arguments, the justices meet in conference. The chief justice usually opens the discussion of each case, then asks the other justices, in order of seniority, to present their views. After discussion, they vote on the case in reverse order of seniority, with the chief justice voting last. Six justices constitute a quorum for the decision of a case. What happens in the event of a tie vote?



In the landmark case of *Brown v. Board of Education* (1954), the Supreme Court declared segregated public schools throughout the country unconstitutional. Because *Brown* was a **class action suit,** the Court's decision affected not only the plaintiff, Linda Brown, but all others similarly situated.

10. At the conference, the chief justice, if in the majority, decides which justice will write the **majority opinion.** When the chief justice is in the minority, the most senior justice among the majority makes the assignment. Any justice may issue a **concurring opinion** or a **dissenting opinion.** Determine whether each of the following excerpts is from the majority opinion, the dissenting opinion, or one of the three concurring opinions in *Katz v. United States* (1967).

    A. "If I could agree with the Court that eavesdropping carried on by electronic means (equivalent to wire-tapping) constitutes a 'search' or 'seizure,' I would be happy to join the Court's opinion."

    B. "The Fourth Amendment protects people, not places. What a person knowingly exposes to the public, even in his own home or office, is not a subject of Fourth Amendment protection. . . . But what he seeks to preserve as private, even in an area accessible to the public, may be constitutionally protected."

    C. "In joining the Court's opinion, I note the Court's acknowledgment that there are circumstances in which it is reasonable to search without a warrant. . . . We should not require the warrant procedure . . . if the President . . . [or] the Attorney General, has considered the requirements of national security and authorized electronic surveillance as reasonable."

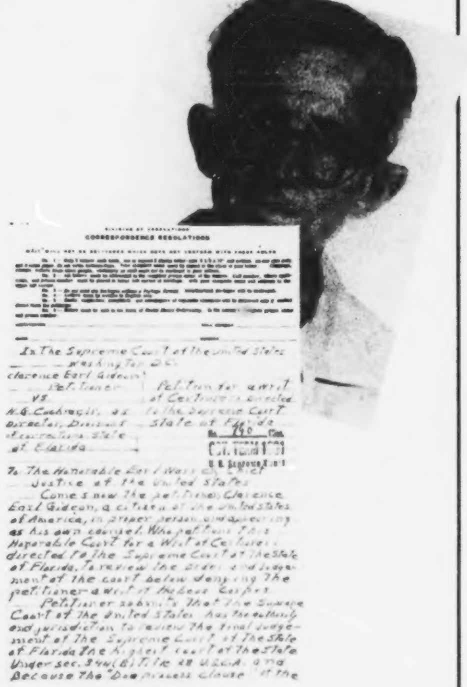
The Scope of the Judicial Power

Answer question 11 using the following excerpt from Federalist 78, *written by Alexander Hamilton.*

> No legislative act, therefore, contrary to the Constitution, can be valid. To deny this would be to affirm that the deputy is greater than his principal; that the servant is above his master; that the representatives of the people are superior to the people themselves. . . .
>
> . . . It is far more rational to suppose that the courts were designed to be an intermediate body between the people and the legislature in order, among other things, to keep the latter within the limits assigned to their authority. The interpretation of the laws is the proper and peculiar province of the courts. A constitution is, in fact, and must be regarded by the judges as, a fundamental law. It therefore belongs to them to ascertain its meaning, as well as the meaning of any particular act proceeding from the legislative body. If there should happen to be an irreconcilable variance between the two, that which has the superior obligation and validity ought, of course, to be preferred; or, in other words, the Constitution ought to be preferred to the statute, the intention of the people to the intention of their agents.

11. What power of the federal courts, not specifically mentioned in the Constitution, does Hamilton describe in this excerpt?

12. The Supreme Court first asserted the power referred to by Hamilton in the case of *Marbury v. Madison* (1803). William Marbury, who had been appointed a justice of the peace by outgoing President John Adams, asked the Court to issue a **writ of *mandamus*,** as it had been authorized to do by the Judiciary Act of 1789. The writ would compel Secretary of State James Madison to deliver Marbury's judicial commission. Why did the Court refuse?



CORRESPONDENCE REGULATIONS

In The Supreme Court of The United States
Washington D.C.
clarence Earl Gideon
Petitioner
vs.
H.G. Cochran, jr., as
Director, Divisions
of corrections State
of Florida

Petition for awrit
of Certiorari Directed
to The Supreme Court
State of Florida

No. 890 Misc.
OCT. TERM 1961
U.S. Supreme Court

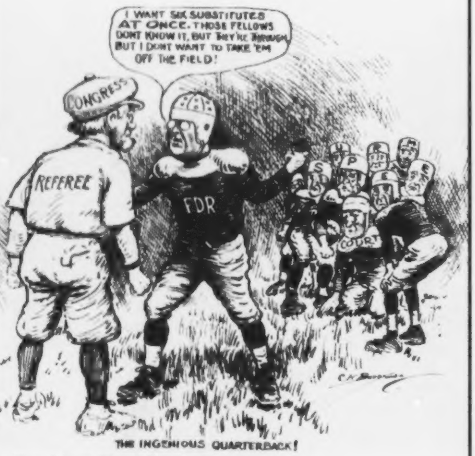
To The Honorable Earl Warren, Chief Justice of the United States

Comes now the petitioner, Clarence Earl Gideon, a citizen of the United States of America, in proper person, and appearing as his own counsel. Who petitions This Honorable Court for a Writ of Certiorari directed to The Supreme Court of The State of Florida. To review the order and Judgement of the court below denying The petitioner a writ of Habeus Corpus.

Petitioner submits That The Supreme Court of The United States has The authority and jurisdiction to review The final Judgement of The Supreme Court of The State of Florida The highest court of The State Under sec. 344(B) Title 28 U.S.C.A. and Because The "Due process clause" of the

Clarence Earl Gideon sent a handwritten petition for *certiorari* (in pencil on prison stationery) to the Supreme Court asking that his conviction be set aside because he had not been provided with an attorney. His petition was granted. Persons unable to afford the often considerable costs of filing at the Supreme Court may file *in forma pauperis* (in the manner of a pauper) petitions, such as that from Gideon.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE


I WANT SIX SUBSTITUTES AT ONCE. THOSE FELLOWS DONT KNOW IT, BUT THEY'RE THROUGH BUT I DONT WANT TO TAKE 'EM OFF THE FIELD!
CONGRESS
REFEREE
FDR
S
U
P
R
E
M
E
COURT
C.K. Berryman
THE INGENIOUS QUARTERBACK!

President Franklin D. Roosevelt urged Congress to increase the size of the Supreme Court in 1937, after the Supreme Court, voting 5-4, declared several New Deal laws unconstitutional. Although Roosevelt's "court-packing" plan failed, the Court began upholding, 5-4, some important New Deal legislation—prompting the comment, "A switch in time saved nine!"

13. The Supreme Court has used its power to declare acts of Congress and presidential actions unconstitutional sparingly. After *Marbury*, the Court did not declare another federal law unconstitutional until 1857. Name this case, in which the Court invalidated the Missouri Compromise, holding that Congress lacked the power to ban slavery from the territories.

14. The federal courts also have the power to overturn state statutes and local ordinances that violate the Constitution or conflict with federal law. The Supreme Court first held a state law contrary to the Constitution in *Fletcher v. Peck* (1810). Has the Supreme Court used its power of judicial review to overturn laws *more* or *less* frequently at the state and local levels than at the national level?

Answer questions 15-17 using the following excerpts, written by Chief Justice William H. Rehnquist and legal writer Charles Black.

> Once we have abandoned the idea that the authority of the courts to declare laws unconstitutional is somehow tied to the language of the Constitution that the people adopted, a judiciary exercising the power of judicial review appears in a quite different light. Judges then are no longer the keepers of the covenant; instead they are a small group of fortunately situated people with a roving commission to second-guess Congress, state legislators, and state and federal administrative officers concerning what is best for the country. . . .
>
> . . . It should not be easy for any one individual or group of individuals to impose by law their value judgments upon fellow citizens who may disagree with those judgments. Indeed, it should not be easier just because the individual in question is a judge. (William H. Rehnquist)

> To the judicial process as to other processes in government, are committed the conservation and furtherance of democratic values. The judge's task is to identify those values in the constitutional plan, and to work them into life in the cases that reach him. Tact and wise restraint ought to temper any power, but courage and the acceptance of responsibility have their place too. . . .
>
> The judicial power is one of the accredited means by which our nation seeks its goals. . . . Intellectual freedom, freedom from irrational discrimination, immunity from unfair administration of law—these (and others similar) are constitutional interests which the Court can protect on ample doctrinal grounds. They often cannot win protection in rough-and-tumble politics. The Supreme Court is more and more finding that its highest institutional role is the guarding of such interests. (Charles Black)

15. In his dissenting opinion in *Lochner v. New York* (1905), Justice John Marshall Harlan—an advocate of **judicial restraint**—wrote, "A legislative enactment, Federal or state, is never to be disregarded or held invalid unless it be, beyond question, plainly and palpably in excess of legislative power." Which of the above excerpts more clearly resembles Harlan's argument?

16. Which excerpt advocates **judicial activism?**

17. Determine whether each of the following statements more closely reflects the reasoning in Rehnquist's passage or in Black's passage.

    A. Judges should feel free to boldly apply the Constitution to social and political questions.

    B. Judges should defer policy judgments to the executive and legislative branches.

    C. Judges should play an active role in shaping society along with the executive and legislative branches.

18. Besides legal philosophy, other factors influence judicial decisions. Among the constraints on judges of the lower federal courts is the rule of ***stare decisis.*** What are the advantages of this legal principle?

19. Under the system of checks and balances, federal judges also are subject to restraint by the Congress. Congress regulates the structure and jurisdiction of the federal courts and appropriates funds for the national judiciary. It also can propose constitutional amendments to overturn Supreme Court decisions. Identify which amendments to the Constitution reversed the following Supreme Court decisions.

    A. *Chisholm v. Georgia* (1793)

    B. *Dred Scott v. Sandford* (1857)

    C. *Pollock v. Farmers' Loan & Trust Co.* (1895)

20. Although federal judges escape much of the pressure that elected officials face, they are not immune to public opinion. For example, public opinion played an important role in the "flag-salute" cases of the early 1940s. The Supreme Court upheld compulsory flag-salute laws in *Minersville School District v. Gobitis* (1940), a decision that was widely criticized. Just three years later, in the case of ____________ , the Supreme Court reversed itself, ruling that such laws violated the free exercise clause of the First Amendment.

Federal Judges

21. Describe the role of each of the following in the selection of federal judges.

    A. attorney general

    B. president

    C. American Bar Association

    D. Senate Judiciary Committee

    E. Senate

22. How does the practice of senatorial courtesy, which is not mentioned in the Constitution, affect the appointment of federal district judges?

23. How long do federal judges serve?

24. According to Article II, section 4, of the Constitution, how may constitutional court judges be removed from office?

25. Although Congress may lower the salaries of legislative court judges, the Constitution prohibits Congress from reducing the pay of constitutional court judges. Why was this provision included?

Roger B. Taney, chief justice of the United States from 1836 to 1864, was chosen by President Andrew Jackson because he supported states' rights. Taney is remembered principally as the author of the majority opinion in the *Dred Scott* case, which diminished the Court's prestige.

John Jay, author of five *Federalist* papers, became the first chief justice of the United States in 1789. Jay resigned in 1795 to become governor of New York.

26. Which of the following statements about federal judges, if any, is *not* true?

    A. Many are graduates of prestigious colleges and law schools.

    B. Most are members of the political party of the president who appointed them.

    C. Most are white, male, and Protestant.

    D. Most were lawyers or state judges before appointment to the federal bench.

Law and the Legal System

27. Name the type of judge-made law brought to America by the English colonists that is based on custom and judicial precedents, rather than statutes enacted by legislatures.

28. A second inheritance from English law is equity, a kind of law based on fairness rather than statutes or precedents. One form of relief in an equity case is an injunction, a court order prohibiting a certain act. What can equity achieve that common law cannot?

29. What term describes the written laws enacted by Congress, state legislatures, and local governments that also provide a foundation for the American legal system?

30. What provides the basis for federal constitutional law?

31. The rules and regulations issued by governmental agencies are known as ____________ law.

32. Federal courts hear cases involving navigation, shipping, and commerce on the high seas and on the navigable waters of the United States. What type of law is applied in these cases?

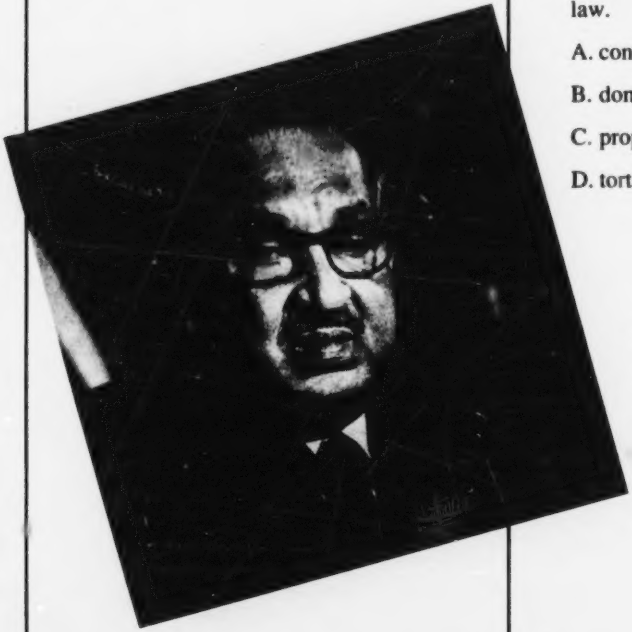
33. Civil law is the noncriminal legal code regulating the private rights of individuals, groups, or businesses. Describe the following types of civil law.

    A. contracts

    B. domestic relations

    C. property

    D. torts



Thurgood Marshall, who served earlier as solicitor general, became in 1967 the first black member of the U.S. Supreme Court. As head of the NAACP Legal Defense Fund, Marshall won 29 of the 32 cases he argued before the Supreme Court, including *Brown v. Board of Education* (1954).

34. Criminal law defines offenses that, although they harm an individual, are considered to be offenses against society as a whole. Therefore, government—not the actual victims—prosecutes criminal cases. Identify whether each of the following criminal offenses is a **misdemeanor** or a **felony.**

    A. arson

    B. disturbing the peace

    C. homicide

    D. jaywalking

    E. kidnapping

    F. public intoxication

    G. petty theft

35. The American judicial process relies on the ____________ system. The courts serve as neutral arenas in which contending parties present their arguments before impartial arbiters.

The Criminal Process

Questions 36-50 relate to the hypothetical case of Rhonda Roe, an adult charged with committing a federal felony.

36. Following arrest, Roe, now called the ____________ , or person accused of a crime, was booked and brought before a U.S. magistrate.

37. The magistrate set ____________ , money the accused may be required to post as a guarantee that he or she will appear in court at the proper time, at $1,000.

38. At Roe's initial appearance, the magistrate also set a date for a ____________ , where a judge determined that **probable cause** existed to believe that Roe committed the crime.

39. Roe's case then went to a hearing by a grand jury. After hearing the U.S. attorney's charges, the grand jury issued an ____________ , a formal charge stating that there was sufficient evidence against Roe to warrant her criminal trial.

40. At the ____________ , the formal charge was read to Roe and she was asked to enter a plea. Roe answered the charge by entering a plea of "not guilty."

41. Rather than choosing a ____________ , or trial by a judge, Roe opted for a trial by a petit or trial jury.

42. Before the trial, both the prosecution and defense issued ____________ , court orders directing witnesses to appear or evidence to be supplied for a judicial proceeding.

43. The prosecution and defense also engaged in ____________ . Each side allowed the other to examine any evidence in their possession before the trial.

44. As part of the pretrial proceedings, witnesses were asked to give ____________ , formal statements under oath that are recorded.

John Marshall, a staunch Federalist appointed by John Adams in 1801, served as the fourth chief justice of the United States until his death in 1835. Marshall helped establish the federal judiciary as an equal branch of government and worked to secure the supremacy of the federal government over the states.

Sandra Day O'Connor became in 1981 the first woman to serve on the U.S. Supreme Court. O'Connor, a former Arizona state senator, was also the first female majority leader of a state legislature.

45. Both sides entered pretrial motions. Roe's attorney asked the court for a change of ____________ , or location, because of negative pretrial publicity.

46. Just before the trial began, a trial jury and alternates were selected from citizens residing within the district. This process of jury selection is known as ____________ .

47. Several prospective jurors were disqualified "for cause" because they were considered prejudiced for or against the defendant. Both lawyers were also able to disqualify a limited number of jurors without stating a reason by ____________ .

48. The trial began with opening statements by the prosecutor and defense attorney. After the prosecutor called witnesses, the defense questioned them to try to discredit their testimony, a process called ____________ . Following questioning of the defense witnesses, each side made a closing statement.

49. The judge then read a set of instructions to the jury, explaining the law governing the case and what they must find to render a ____________ , or decision.

50. The jury deliberated for three hours, finally voting for Roe's ________ , declaring her not guilty.

51. In many criminal cases, the prosecutor and defense attorney engage in plea bargaining before the trial. Often, the prosecutor will reduce the charges if the defendant agrees to plead guilty. What advantage does each side derive from this practice?

10. State and Local Governments

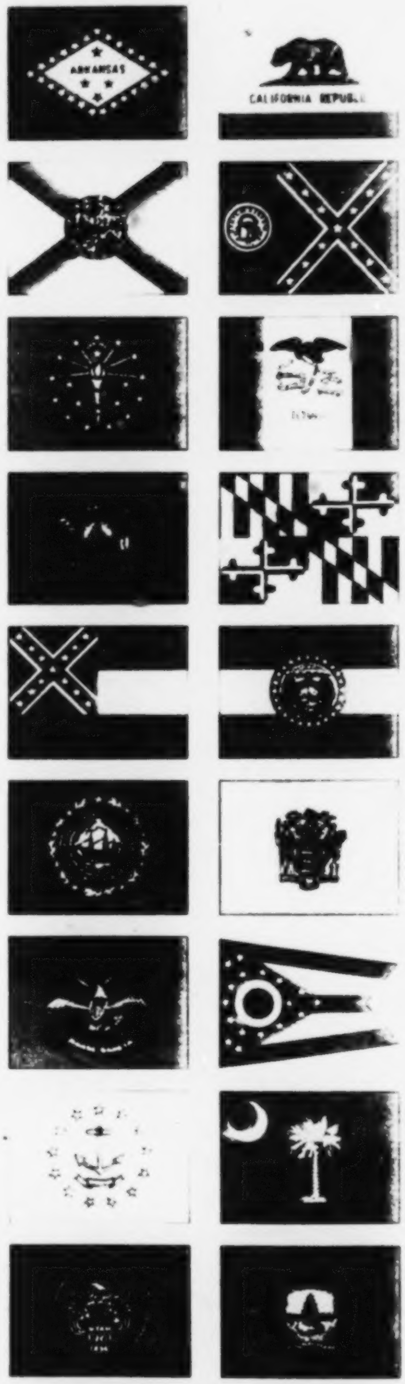
The delegates to the Constitutional Convention faced a difficult challenge: how to provide for a national government capable of dealing with the nation's problems while at the same time preserving the existing state governments. To resolve this problem, the delegates agreed on a federal system, one in which two separate governments operate over the same territory. The national government deals with matters of national concern; the states and their local governments act in matters of local concern.

State and local governments have the major responsibility in many areas of immediate concern to people, such as public education and law enforcement. As James Madison stated in *Federalist* 45: "The powers reserved to the several states will extend to all the objects which, in the ordinary course of affairs, concern the lives, liberties, and properties of the people." One important power of the states—the police power—allows them to enact laws and regulations promoting the public's health, safety, morals, and welfare.

For the past two centuries, Americans have debated the relative position of the national and state governments and the scope of their powers. States' rights advocates protest the expansion of the national government's powers relative to those of the states. They see state and local governments as closest to the people and best able to address their concerns in a responsible and innovative fashion. U.S. Supreme Court Justice Louis Brandeis, for example, referred to the states as laboratories of democracy. Nationalists, on the other hand, champion a stronger national government. They view the states as resistant to change and incapable of dealing with the nation's many pressing problems.

The division of power and responsibility between the national government and the states is a distinctive feature of the American governmental system. The previous government chapters focused on the national government. This chapter addresses the 50 states and their local governments. It examines the state constitutions; the legislative, executive, and judicial branches of state government; and the different types of local government.

As you study the questions in this chapter, consider the role of state and local governments in our federal system. Are the states and their local governments the best forums in which "We, the people" govern?



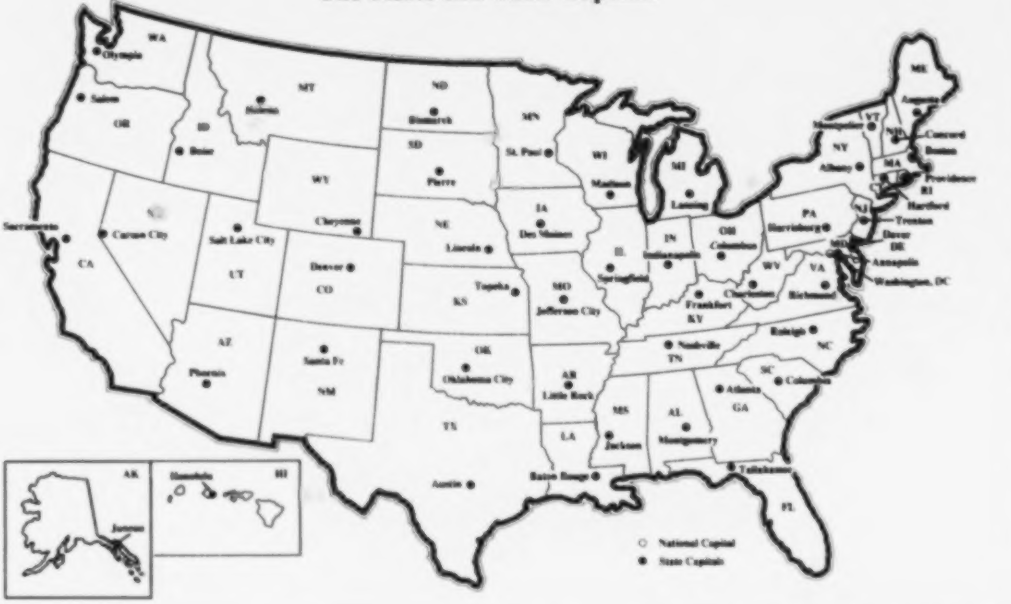
BEST COPY AVAILABLE

State Constitutions

1. Each of the 50 states has a written constitution that establishes the framework for that state's government. What is the relationship between each state's constitution and the U.S. Constitution, federal laws, and national treaties?
2. What is the relationship between a state constitution and other forms of state and local law within that state?
3. Every state constitution contains a bill of rights. Which of the following statements about a state bill of rights is *not* true?
   A. Rights guaranteed by a state constitution are not dependent on those guaranteed by the U.S. Constitution.
   B. A state bill of rights may provide more expansive protection of rights than the U.S. Bill of Rights.
   C. The state bill of rights protects individuals against the national government, its officers, and agencies.
   D. The state bill of rights protects individuals against the state, its officers, and agencies.
4. Every state constitution prescribes the method(s) by which the constitution can be formally altered. Why must constitutions provide for formal amendment?
5. Changes in state constitutions can be proposed by the legislature, a constitutional convention, a constitutional revision commission, or the voters themselves.
   A. What device is most commonly used for writing a new constitution or thoroughly revising an existing one?
   B. How are amendments to state constitutions usually proposed?
   C. How can voters in many states directly propose amendments to the state constitution?
6. How are amendments to state constitutions ratified in every state except Delaware?
7. State constitutions are longer than the federal Constitution. Why has the typical state constitution become such a lengthy document?
8. Why have many scholars criticized state constitutions for their amount of detail?

With the adoption of its second constitution in 1780, Massachusetts set a pattern for constitution-making. Its constitution was drafted by a popularly elected convention and then submitted to the voters for their approval. The Massachusetts constitution is the oldest written constitution in the United States that is still in effect.

The States and Their Capitals


WA
Olympia
Salem
OR
ID
Boise
MT
Helena
ND
Bismarck
SD
Pierre
MN
St. Paul
WI
Madison
MI
Lansing
WY
Cheyenne
NE
Lincoln
IA
Des Moines
IL
Springfield
IN
Indianapolis
OH
Columbus
PA
Harrisburg
NY
Albany
VT
Montpelier
NH
Concord
ME
Augusta
MA
Boston
RI
Providence
Hartford
NJ
Trenton
Dover
DE
MD
Annapolis
Washington, DC
VA
Richmond
WV
Charleston
KY
Frankfort
TN
Nashville
NC
Raleigh
SC
Columbia
GA
Atlanta
AL
Montgomery
MS
Jackson
LA
Baton Rouge
AR
Little Rock
MO
Jefferson City
KS
Topeka
OK
Oklahoma City
TX
Austin
NM
Santa Fe
AZ
Phoenix
CO
Denver
UT
Salt Lake City
NV
Carson City
CA
Sacramento
FL
Tallahassee
AK
Juneau
HI
Honolulu
○ National Capital
● State Capitals

This map shows the states and their capitals, where the seats of state governments are located.

State Legislatures

9. Each of the 50 states has a legislature, usually called the legislature or the general assembly, whose main purpose is to make law for the state. Every state except Nebraska has a bicameral legislature.

   A. What major argument is usually made for bicameralism?

   B. What major argument is usually made for unicameralism?

10. Every state constitution provides for the apportionment of legislative seats within the state. For many years, rural areas were overrepresented and urban areas underrepresented in state legislatures. What two practices accounted for this imbalance?

11. Rural overrepresentation in state legislatures came to an end in the 1960s. How did the Supreme Court's decision in *Baker v. Carr* (1962) help end malapportionment of state legislatures?

Answer questions 12-13 using the following excerpt from the majority opinion of the U.S. Supreme Court in Reynolds v. Sims *(1964), written by Chief Justice Earl Warren.*

> Legislators represent people, not trees or acres. Legislators are elected by voters, not farms or cities or economic interests. As long as ours is a representative form of government, and our legislatures are those instruments of government elected directly by and directly representative of the people, the right to elect legislators in a free and unimpaired fashion is a bedrock of our political system . . . .
>
> We hold that, as a basic constitutional standard, the Equal Protection Clause requires that the seats in both houses of a bicameral state legislature must be apportioned on a population basis.

12. What was the ruling of the U.S. Supreme Court in the above case?

13. According to the U.S. Supreme Court, malapportionment of state legislatures violates the _____________ Amendment to the U.S. Constitution.

14. In general, what legal requirements for membership in the state legislature do state constitutions establish?

15. For what terms are members of the lower house of the state legislature, generally called the House of Representatives, elected in the majority of states?

16. For what terms are members of the upper house of the state legislature, which is called the Senate in every state, chosen in the majority of states?

17. Most state legislatures hold their regular legislative sessions on an annual basis. Why do most state legislatures now meet yearly rather than every two years?

18. In what state does the legislative session run continuously for two years?

19. Special sessions of the legislature may be called by the governor in every state, and by the _____________ in most states.

20. Every state legislature has a set of leaders. The presiding officer of the lower house in each of the 49 bicameral legislatures is called the speaker of the house. What powers do most of these speakers have that the Speaker of the U.S. House of Representatives does not have?

21. Although the senate chooses its own presiding officer in many states, who serves as president of the senate in most states?

22. State legislatures do much of their work in committees. Standing committees and joint committees help screen legislation while the legislature is in session. What do interim committees, which meet between sessions, contribute to the legislative process?

23. The legislative process in the states is similar to that in Congress. However, many states allow voters to directly participate in state lawmaking through the initiative and referendum. What is the initiative?

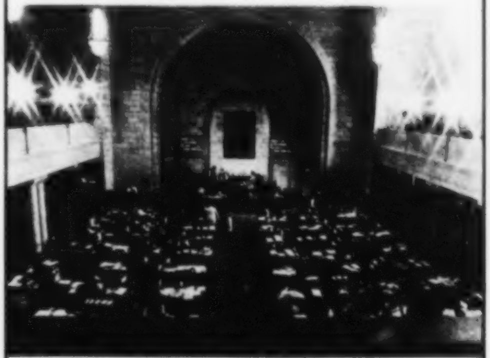
24. What is the difference between the direct initiative and the indirect initiative, the two basic forms of the initiative device?

25. The referendum allows voters to approve or reject legislative acts. Identify the three basic forms of the referendum that are described below.

    A. The legislature must submit a measure, such as a proposed amendment to the state constitution, to the electorate.

    B. The legislature voluntarily refers a measure, usually involving a controversial issue, to the voters.

    C. The people, through the petition process, require the legislature to submit a measure that it has passed to the voters for final action.



This photo depicts Nebraska's unicameral legislature. Members of the Nebraska Senate, unlike legislators in other states, are elected on a nonpartisan basis.

Governors and State Administrations

26. Each state has a popularly elected governor who is the chief executive officer of the state. In general, what formal qualifications must one meet in order to become governor?

27. What terms do governors serve in the majority of states?

28. Governors may be removed from office through the impeachment process in every state except _____________.

29. How else may the governors of several states be removed from office before the end of their terms?

30. In more than three-fourths of the states, who becomes governor if the office falls vacant?

31. The governor's basic legal duty in each state is to "take care that the laws be faithfully executed." Most governors also are responsible for preparing the state's budget and presenting it to the legislature for approval. How is this duty a source of power for the governor?

32. Governors also have several legislative powers. They may recommend legislation, call special sessions of the legislature, and, in every state except ____________, veto legislation.

33. Although most governors do not have the pocket veto, more than three-fourths of the governors have the item veto. To what type of legislation is the item veto usually restricted?

34. Most governors possess certain judicial powers. What is the power of executive clemency?

35. In most states, governors share executive authority with several other officials, such as the lieutenant governor.

    A. How is the lieutenant governor chosen in virtually all of the states where the office now exists?

    B. What are the duties of the lieutenant governor in most states?

36. In many states, the lieutenant governor is elected independently of the governor. Why do other states require the governor and lieutenant governor to run together as a team?

37. Identify the major executive officers described below, who in most states are elected by the voters independently of the governor.

    A. This official is the state's chief lawyer.

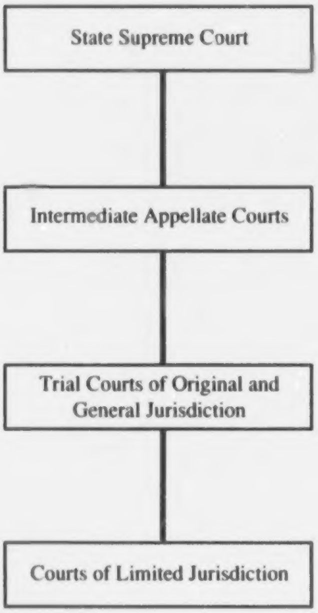
    B. This official is the state's chief clerk and record-keeper.

    C. This official is the custodian of state funds.

Kay Orr was elected governor of Nebraska in 1986. That election was the first in which two women ran against each other for a governorship.

When Douglas Wilder was elected governor of Virginia in 1989, he became the first elected black governor. The first black governor, who served briefly during Reconstruction, succeeded to the office when his predecessor was impeached.

State Judicial System


State Supreme Court
Intermediate Appellate Courts
Trial Courts of Original and General Jurisdiction
Courts of Limited Jurisdiction

This chart depicts the basic levels of most state court systems.

The State Court Systems

38. The United States has a dual court system—federal and state. Where are the majority of legal cases in the United States tried?

39. What kinds of cases do minor state courts typically hear?

40. Justices of the peace, or JPs, are found in about half of the states, mainly in small towns and rural areas. What types of cases do justices of the peace typically handle?

41. How are justices of the peace chosen in most states?

42. Why has the justice of the peace system been criticized?

43. Magistrate, or police, courts are the city equivalent of justice of the peace courts. What court has replaced the magistrate court in many cities?

44. The state court systems, like the federal court system, have courts that may hear only certain types of cases. Explain the functions of the following state courts of limited jurisdiction.

    A. domestic relations or family court

    B. juvenile court

    C. probate court

    D. small claims court

45. *Hypothetical situation:* After losing your case in a trial court of limited jurisdiction, you appeal the decision to a trial court of general jurisdiction. On appeal, are you likely to be given a new trial?

46. All states have trial courts of general jurisdiction that may hear a broad range of cases. They are known variously as circuit courts, county courts, district courts, superior courts, and courts of common pleas. Over what types of cases do state general trial courts have original jurisdiction?

47. Why have most states established intermediate appellate courts, which are most commonly called courts of appeals?

48. In deciding an appeal, what do state appellate courts generally consider?

49. Each state has a court of last resort, usually called the supreme court, which is commonly composed of three to nine justices. What is the principal function of a state's supreme court?

50. Under what circumstances will a decision of a state's highest court be reviewed by the U.S. Supreme Court?

51. State judges are chosen in a variety of ways. They may be popularly elected, appointed by the governor, or selected by the legislature. Which method of selecting state judges, including state supreme court justices, is the most widely used?

52. Many states use a modified appointment plan, known as the __________, which is endorsed by the American Bar Association. In this system, judges are chosen by the governor from a list of nominees prepared by a nonpartisan commission. After the judge has served at least one year, voters determine whether the judge should remain in office.

53. People disagree about how judges should be chosen. Proponents of the appointive system argue that voters are not qualified to ascertain the competence of judges. What major argument is made in favor of popular election of judges?

Local Government

54. What is the basic relationship between each state and its local governments?

55. Counties are both territorial subdivisions of a state and a basic unit of local government. County governments are found in every state except ______________ and ______________ .

56. What are counties called in Alaska and Louisiana?

57. The importance of the county varies in different areas of the country. In rural areas of the South, counties are the major units of local government. In which area of the country are counties least important as units of government and providers of local services?

58. Counties are usually run by a popularly elected governing body. Identify the type of county governing board described below.

   A. This small board, which is the most common type of county governing board, typically has three to seven members. The board's members are elected at large from the county as a whole.

   B. This large board may have from 15 to more than 50 members. Board members are usually elected from regional subdivisions of the county. They are usually officers of their townships, as well as members of the county governing body.

59. County board members serve from one to eight years. What length of term is most common?

60. How are most county boards exceptions to the principle of separation of powers?

61. The typical county government also consists of a number of boards or commissions with authority over certain county functions, an appointed county bureaucracy, and several independently elected officials. Explain the principal duties of the following county officers.

   A. assessor

   B. clerk

   C. coroner

   D. sheriff

62. County governments are sometimes criticized for their chaotic and headless structure. Which of the following is *not* a suggestion to improve the efficiency of county governments?

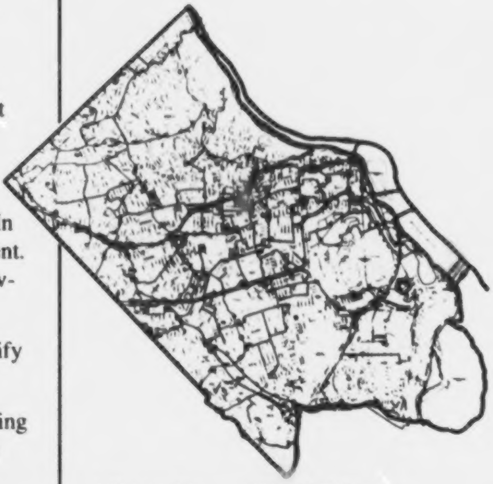
   A. Appoint rather than elect county officials who have jobs that demand certain professional qualifications.

   B. Decrease the number of minor county boards and commissions.

   C. Increase the number of elected county officials.

   D. Restructure county government to provide for a stronger executive, by adopting the **county manager plan,** for example.

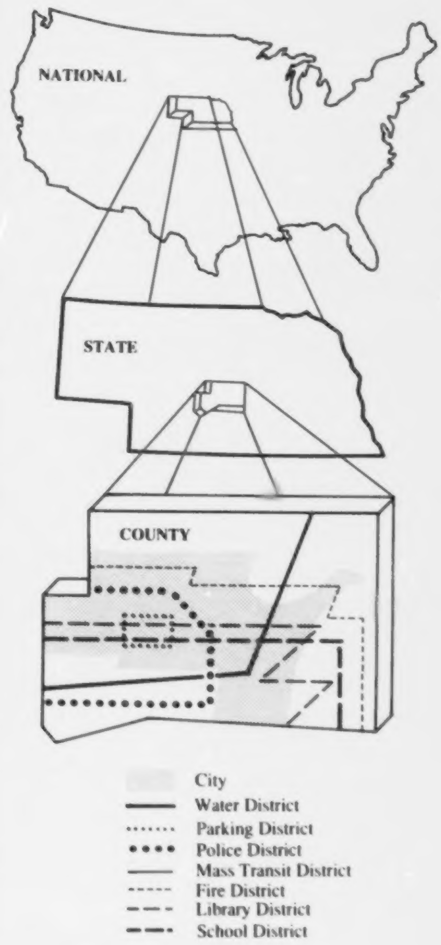
63. Another criticism of county governments is their small size and excessive number in many states. What reform is proposed to overcome this problem?



Arlington County, Virginia (about 25 square miles), is the smallest county in the nation. The territorial size of counties varies greatly across the United States. San Bernardino County, California (more than 20,000 square miles), is the largest county in the nation.

Chicago's 50-member city council is currently the nation's largest.

A Citizen's Many Governments



This map illustrates the many governmental units that exist at the local level of government.

64. The town or township is another basic unit of local government. In what region of the United States is the town most common?

65. Why is the town meeting an example of direct democracy?

66. At the town meeting, voters elect three to five individuals, known as the ______________, to supervise the town's affairs between meetings.

67. Special districts are independent units that have been created at the local level to provide one or more special services, such as sewage disposal. What is the most common example of this type of governmental unit?

68. Which of the following is *not* a reason for the creation of special districts?

    A. to deal with problems that overlap local government boundaries

    B. to evade limits on spending and taxing by local governments

    C. to provide services more efficiently

    D. to provide services that other local governments handle

69. Cities are another basic unit of local government. A city is incorporated, or made into a legal body, when the state issues a charter officially recognizing a community as a **municipal corporation.** How do the creation of municipal and county governments differ?

70. The charter is the basic law of the city—its constitution. Several types of city charters have been or are being used among the 50 states. Identify the type of municipal charter described below.

    A. This type of charter is chosen by cities from several charters.

    B. This type of charter is drafted, adopted, and amended by the city itself.

    C. This type of charter is granted according to city population.

    D. This type of charter is tailored to apply to specific communities.

71. Depending on their charters, cities may have one of three major forms of government: (1) mayor-council; (2) commission; (3) council-manager. Which form of municipal government is the oldest and most widely used?

72. The mayor-council form of government consists of a mayor as executive and a council, which is almost always unicameral, as the legislative body. How are the mayor and members of the city council typically chosen?

73. There are two basic variations of the mayor-council form of municipal government: strong-mayor and weak-mayor. How does the role of the mayor differ in these two versions?

74. Which variation of the mayor-council form of municipal government is generally found in larger cities?

75. The commission form of municipal government originated in Galveston, Texas, around 1900. It typically consists of five commissioners elected at large on a nonpartisan basis for two- or four-year terms; one commissioner serves as mayor. What two roles do commissioners play?

76. How is the commission form of municipal government an exception to the principle of separation of powers?

77. The council-manager form of municipal government began in Staunton, Virginia, in 1908, as part of the Progressive movement. It usually consists of a five- to seven-member council elected at large on a nonpartisan basis, a mayor, and a professional city manager appointed by the council. What are the primary duties of the council, the mayor, and the city manager?

11. Dollars and Sense

Economics is the study of how individuals and societies use their limited resources to satisfy their wants and needs. Microeconomics examines individual decision makers, such as households and firms, within the larger economic system. Macroeconomics looks at the economy as a whole.

Every society must answer three basic economic questions: What to produce? How to produce? For whom to produce? These questions are answered differently in different economic systems. In traditional economies, the answers to these questions are based on custom and habit. In command economies, the answers are dictated by a central authority, usually government. In market economies, these questions are answered by private individuals. Mixed economies combine elements of both the command and market economic systems.

How the United States answers these economic questions is the subject of this chapter. The chapter focuses on the elements of a market system, since the U.S. economy is primarily a market economy. The chapter introduces basic economic concepts, looks at the roles of the public and private sectors in the U.S. economy, examines the larger economy and its performance, and discusses international economics and comparative economic systems.

The United States has six broad goals for its economy: (1) economic freedom—allowing individuals to make economic choices; (2) economic efficiency—maximizing the benefits of limited resources; (3) economic equity—ensuring "fair" economic outcomes (although standards of equity differ); (4) economic security—protecting individuals from risks they cannot control, such as bank failures; (5) economic stability—ensuring full employment and stable prices; and (6) economic growth—raising the nation's standard of living.

These goals reflect America's social and political values. While most people would agree that these goals are desirable, some goals conflict or are mutually exclusive. As a result, policymakers must decide which goals are most important given the country's needs at the time. As you study the questions in this chapter, consider which goals you think are most important and how well the American economic system balances these goals.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Fundamental Economic Concepts

1. Several types of resources, known collectively as the factors of production, are used to produce goods and services.

   A. Productive inputs that can be used in their natural state, such as forests and mineral deposits, are called ______________.

   B. The physical and mental contributions of people to production are called ______________.

   C. The manufactured aids to production, such as factories and tools, are called ______________.

2. Many economists include entrepreneurship in the list of the factors of production. Which of the following are functions of the entrepreneur?

   A. assuming the risks of business failure

   B. combining and organizing the other factors of production in the production of a good or service

   C. providing the creativity necessary for production to take place

   D. providing the managerial skills necessary for production to take place

3. A resource used to produce one thing cannot be used to produce something else. For example, a piece of land used for a sports stadium cannot be used for an office building. The value of the next best use (the sacrificed alternative) is called the ______________.

4. Society must also choose between present and future consumption. Society can produce capital goods, which are used to produce other items, and consumer goods, which are products that directly satisfy individuals' economic needs and wants.

   A. What type of goods will society produce if it wishes to consume more in the present?

   B. What type of goods will society produce if it wishes to consume more in the future? Why?

Answer question 5 using the excerpt below from The Wealth of Nations *(1776) by Adam Smith.*

> It is not from the benevolence of the butcher, the brewer, or the baker that we expect our dinner, but from their regard to their own interest. . . .
>
> Every individual is continually exerting himself to find out the most advantageous employment for whatever capital he can command. . . .
>
> . . . By directing that industry in such a manner as its produce may be of the greatest value, he intends only his own gain, and he is in this, as in many other cases, led by an invisible hand to promote an end which was no part of his intention.

5. According to Smith, what is the "invisible hand" that directs market economies?

Adam Smith, a Scottish social philosopher and economist, was one of the first advocates of **laissez faire** economics. He believed that a market economy could serve society well without direction from government.

6. Six characteristics of a market system are private property, freedom of enterprise, freedom of choice, competition, limited government intervention in the economy, and profit motive. In a market system, how does the profit motive determine the behavior of producers?

Demand, Supply, and Prices in the Market Economy

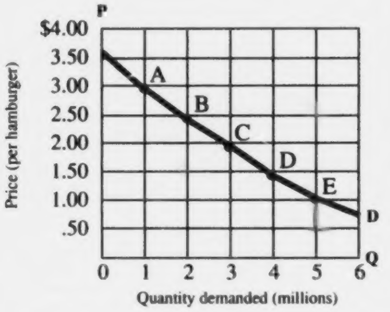
7. Demand is the various amounts of a product that consumers are willing and able to buy at various prices during a given time period. The law of demand states that there is an inverse relationship between price and quantity demanded. What does this mean?

Answer question 8 using the graph at right.

8. Economists construct a demand schedule or demand curve to show the relationship between price and quantity demanded at a point in time. Complete the demand schedule below using the data depicted in the demand curve at right.

	Price	Quantity Demanded
A.	$3.00	1,000,000
B.		
C.		
D.		
E.		

Demand Curve for Hamburgers



9. The demand curve at right is a market demand curve. A market demand curve shows the relationship between price and quantity demanded for the entire market (all consumers). What is an individual demand curve?

10. The degree to which changes in a product's price affect quantity demanded is called the price elasticity of demand.

   A. Demand for a product is ____________ if quantity demanded is highly responsive to changes in price.

   B. Demand for a product is ____________ if quantity demanded is relatively stable regardless of price.

11. Determine whether each of the following statements about the price elasticity of demand is true or false. If a statement is false, explain why.

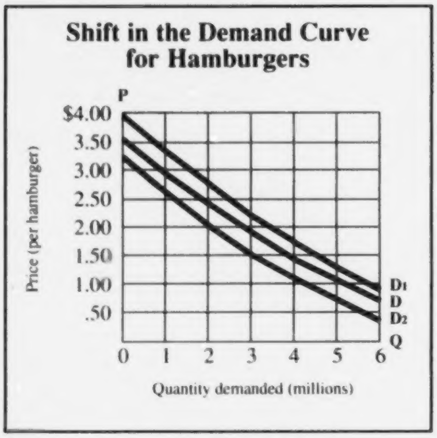
   A. Demand often is less elastic in the long run than in the short run.

   B. Products with elastic demands generally have many substitutes.

   C. Products with inelastic demands generally are necessities.

   D. Products with inelastic demands generally comprise a small percentage of a consumer's total expenditures.

12. A demand curve reflects changes in quantity demanded in relation to changes in price, all other things being equal. But changes in several other factors, known as determinants of demand, can cause a change in demand. An increase in demand is represented by a rightward shift in the demand curve; a decrease in demand is represented by a leftward shift in the demand curve. What are the five major determinants of demand?


Shift in the Demand Curve for Hamburgers

Answer question 13 using the graph at left.

13. Assume that the original demand for hamburgers is depicted by curve D. Determine whether each of the following changes involves a change in quantity demanded (a movement along D) or a change in demand (a shift to a new demand curve). If a change in demand is involved, state whether demand has increased (the curve shifts to D1) or decreased (the curve shifts to D2).

    A. Consumers' incomes increase, with the result that more steak is purchased.

    B. The price of french fries, which are **complementary goods** for hamburgers, increases.

    C. The price of hamburgers increases, causing a decline in the volume of business.

    D. The price of hot dogs, which are **substitute goods** for hamburgers, increases.

14. Supply is the various amounts of a product that producers are willing and able to offer at various prices during a given time period. The law of supply states that there is a direct relationship between price and quantity supplied. As price increases, quantity supplied _____________ ; as price decreases, quantity supplied _____________ .

15. The price elasticity of supply is the degree to which quantity supplied is affected by changes in prices. What is the difference between inelastic and elastic supply?

16. What is the relationship between the elasticity of supply and the time period under consideration?

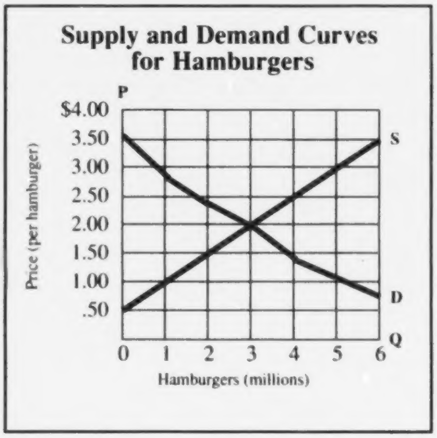
17. A supply curve reflects changes in quantity supplied in relation to changes in price, holding other factors constant. Changes in these other factors, known as determinants of supply, can cause a change in supply. An increase in supply is represented by a rightward shift in the supply curve; a decrease in supply is represented by a leftward shift in the supply curve. Which of the following are determinants of supply?

    A. costs of production, including resource prices, technology, taxes, and subsidies

    B. number of sellers (producers)

    C. prices of other goods

    D. producer expectations about prices


Supply and Demand Curves for Hamburgers

Answer questions 18-21 using the graph at left.

18. The interaction of buyers and sellers determines the price and quantity of a product that is bought and sold in the market. Market equilibrium occurs when quantity supplied equals quantity demanded at a given price. Graphically, the intersection of the demand and supply curves for a product is the equilibrium point. What is the equilibrium price and quantity of hamburgers?

19. Suppose the government sets a **price ceiling** of $1.50 per hamburger. Quantity demanded will exceed quantity supplied, resulting in a shortage of_____________ hamburgers.

20. Suppose the government sets a **price floor** of $3.00 per hamburger. Quantity supplied will exceed quantity demanded, resulting in a surplus of ____________ hamburgers.

21. Determine whether the following changes involves an increase or decrease in the equilibrium price and quantity. Briefly explain your answer.

    A. A genetically engineered bovine growth hormone reduces the cost of ground beef.

    B. A national advertising campaign causes consumers to buy more hamburgers.

    C. Several national fast food restaurants offering hamburgers close.

    D. The federal government imposes a tax on hamburgers.

22. In a market economy, prices serve several important functions. Prices provide information to buyers and sellers, aiding their decision making. Prices also provide incentives to buyers to purchase a product and to sellers to produce more of a product. How do prices ration goods and services?

The Private Sector in the U.S. Economy

23. The private sector consists of households and businesses. Households play an important role in our economy. Households serve both as consumers and as providers of labor and other resources to the business sector in exchange for money income. Wages are paid to labor, rents and interest compensate the owners of property resources, and profits flow to the owners of businesses. What type of income accounts for more than two-thirds of household income in the United States?

24. Personal income is unevenly distributed in the United States. The richest 20 percent of families receive approximately 40 percent of the nation's income. What percentage of the nation's income do the poorest 20 percent of families receive?

25. In an effort to measure poverty in the United States, the federal government has established an official definition for poverty known as the poverty level. Which of the following statements about the poverty level is *not* true?

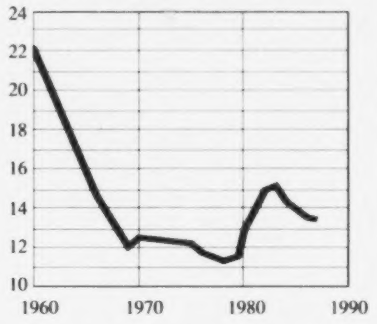
    A. The poverty level is based on the Department of Agriculture's 1961 economy food plan and reflects the different consumption requirements of families based on their size and composition.

    B. The poverty level is based solely on money income and does not include the noncash benefits (such as food stamps, medicaid, and public housing) that many low-income persons receive.

    C. The poverty level is updated every year to reflect changes in the **consumer price index.**

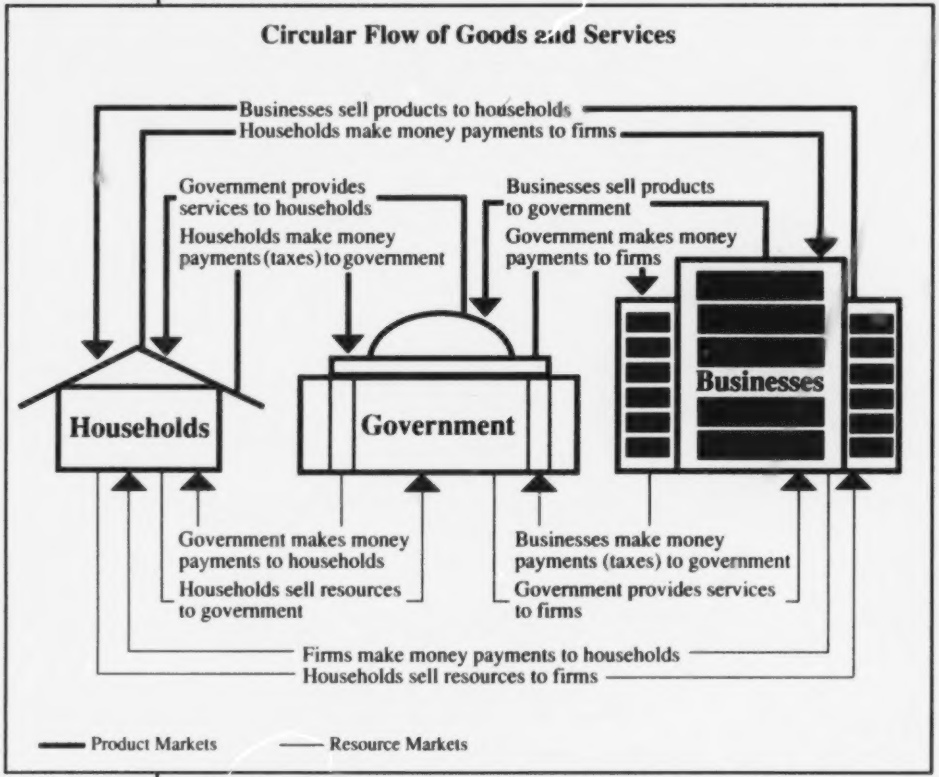
    D. Working full time at the national minimum wage would yield an annual income in excess of the poverty level for a family of four.

Percent of Persons below Poverty Level



Source: U.S. Bureau of the Census

The circular flow model shows how resources, products, and money payments are exchanged among businesses, government, and households. The model, which excludes the foreign sector, is a simplified view of how the economy functions.



Circular Flow of Goods and Services

Businesses sell products to households
Households make money payments to firms
Government provides services to households
Households make money payments (taxes) to government
Businesses sell products to government
Government makes money payments to firms
Households
Government
Businesses
Government makes money payments to households
Households sell resources to government
Businesses make money payments (taxes) to government
Government provides services to firms
Firms make money payments to households
Households sell resources to firms
Product Markets
Resource Markets

26. In an effort to increase wages and improve working conditions, American workers have formed labor unions. Businesses have traditionally extended three types of recognition to labor unions: the company could operate as a closed shop, a union shop, or an open shop.

    A. Briefly explain the difference between these three union arrangements.

    B. What are state laws that prohibit union shops called?

27. Government policy toward labor unions has varied over time. Identify the following federal laws affecting organized labor.

    A. This 1914 act exempted unions from antitrust suits and legalized strikes, pickets, and boycotts in labor disputes. The act, which made it more difficult for businesses to obtain injunctions against unions, was not always effective because courts often sided with business.

    B. This 1932 act outlawed **yellow-dog contracts** and further restricted the issuing of injunctions during labor disputes.

    C. This 1935 act guaranteed workers the right to form unions and bargain collectively with employers. It required employers to bargain in good faith with unions and refrain from unfair labor practices. It also established a National Labor Relations Board (NLRB).

    D. This 1947 act outlawed closed shops, banned union contributions to candidates for federal offices, and prohibited federal government employees from striking. It also allowed federal injunctions to block for up to 80 days strikes that would imperil the nation's health or safety.

    E. This 1959 act, passed to suppress corrupt union practices, required unions to submit reports on their finances. It also protected the democratic rights of individual union members against union leaders.

28. Representatives of a company's management and its labor union meet periodically to negotiate a new contract. Which of the following are likely to be part of a collective bargaining agreement?

    A. grievance procedures—the manner in which disputes between workers and management will be handled

    B. job security, especially for workers with seniority

    C. wages and fringe benefits for particular jobs

    D. working conditions, such as the length of the work week

29. Sometimes labor and management may be deadlocked in contract negotiations. They may resort to mediation or arbitration, calling in a neutral third party to help settle the dispute.

    A. How do the roles of the mediator and arbitrator differ?

    B. How do the two types of arbitration—advisory arbitration and binding arbitration—differ?

30. The union's major weapon in contract negotiations is the strike. During a strike, workers may engage in picketing or boycotting. How does a primary boycott differ from a secondary boycott?

31. Management's major weapon in contract negotiations is the __________, that is, closing down the place of employment to deprive workers of their jobs until a suitable contract agreement is reached.

32. Union membership as a percentage of the work force has declined since the mid 1950s. Which of the following is *not* a factor contributing to the decline in union membership?

    A. positive public perceptions of unions

    B. the federal government's sympathy toward business in the 1980s

    C. the shift from a manufacturing-oriented to a service-oriented economy

    D. the shift of jobs from large manufacturing cities of the North and Midwest where unionism is strong to cities in the South and Southwest where unionism is weak

33. Business is also an important part of the U.S. economy. There are three major legal forms of business in the United States: sole proprietorships, partnerships, and corporations.

    A. Briefly describe each type of business organization.

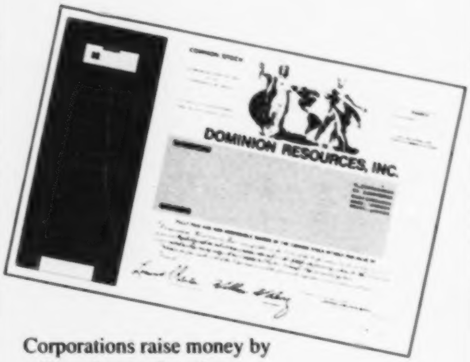
    B. What type of business organization is the least common?

    C. What type of business organization is the most common?

34. Each form of business organization has both advantages and disadvantages.

    A. Give three advantages that sole proprietorships and partnerships have over corporations.

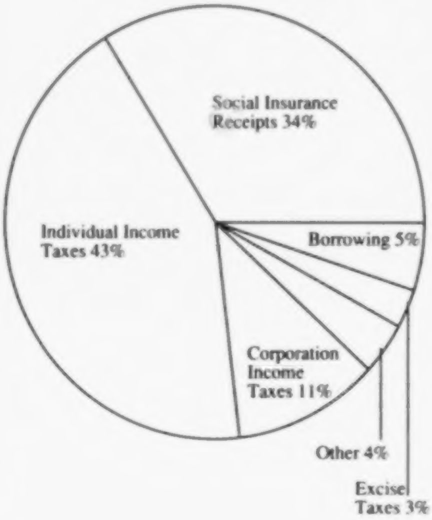
    B. Give three advantages that corporations have over sole proprietorships or partnerships.



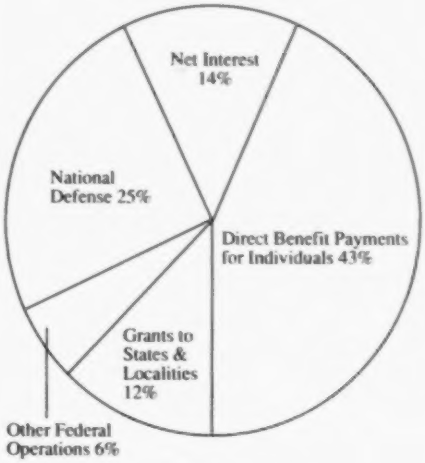
Corporations raise money by selling shares of stock, or ownership, in the corporation. The people who buy the stock are called stockholders.

The Federal Government Dollar Fiscal Year 1991 Estimate

Where it comes from . . .



Where It Goes . . .



Source: Office of Management and Budget

35. The term market structure refers to the extent to which competition prevails in particular markets. Identify the type of market structure described below.

    A. There are many buyers and sellers; the products sold are identical or so similar that it is difficult to distinguish the product of one seller from that of another; and firms can enter and exit the industry without difficulty. No firm has control over prices.

    B. There are numerous buyers and sellers; products are similar but differentiated (made to seem different); firms are able to enter and exit the industry with relative ease. Firms have some control over prices.

    C. There are few sellers; products are similar or identical yet differentiated; there are substantial barriers to entry into the industry. Firms have greater control over prices.

    D. There is a sole seller of the product; no close substitutes are available; prohibitive barriers to entry into the industry exist. The firm has considerable control over prices.

The Public Sector in the U.S. Economy

36. The public sector is government, which plays several roles in the U.S. economy. It provides a legal and social framework, regulates private business, attempts to stabilize the economy, and redistributes income through **transfer payments,** such as social security and welfare. Government also provides public goods that cannot be adequately provided by the market, such as national defense. What are the two characteristics of public goods?

37. Federal, state, and local governments raise money to pay for the services they provide by levying taxes. There are two basic philosophies about how the tax burden should be apportioned.

    A. How would the tax burden be apportioned under the ability-to-pay principle?

    B. How would the tax burden be apportioned under the benefits-received principle?

38. Taxes affect taxpayers differently. Briefly describe the types of taxes listed below.

    A. progressive tax

    B. proportional tax

    C. regressive tax

39. Determine whether each of the following taxes is most often progressive, regressive, or proportional.

    A. federal individual income tax

    B. federal payroll (social insurance) taxes

    C. local property taxes

    D. state and local sales taxes

40. When government revenues exceed government expenditures during a fiscal year, there is a budget surplus. A budget deficit occurs when government expenditures are greater than government revenues during a fiscal year; government must then borrow to make up the difference.

    A. The practice of appropriating more money for government spending than is received in revenue is called ____________ .

    B. The total amount of money that the federal government owes to its creditors is called the ____________ .

The U.S. Economy's Performance

41. Gross national product (GNP) is the most common measure of the nation's economic performance. GNP is the total market value of all final goods and services produced in the economy in one year. Determine whether each of the following items would be included in a measure of GNP for this year. Briefly explain your answers.

    A. electronic parts used to assemble a television produced this year

    B. a secondhand television bought at a yard sale this year

    C. a television produced last year that was purchased this year

    D. a television produced this year that was not sold this year

42. GNP can be measured by counting all money spent on final goods and services. What four types of spending is GNP the sum of?

43. Both money and real GNP can be calculated.

    A. What does money GNP measure?

    B. What does real GNP measure?

    C. What **price index** is used to convert money GNP to real GNP?

44. An increase in real per capita GNP (real GNP divided by total population) over time is called economic growth. Which of the following factors would contribute to an increase in the rate of economic growth?

    A. a greater quantity or an improvement in the quality of capital resources

    B. a greater quantity or an improvement in the quality of human resources

    C. a greater quantity or an improvement in the quality of natural resources

    D. technological advances

45. Economic growth has both benefits and costs. Which of the following true statements is *not* a criticism of economic growth?

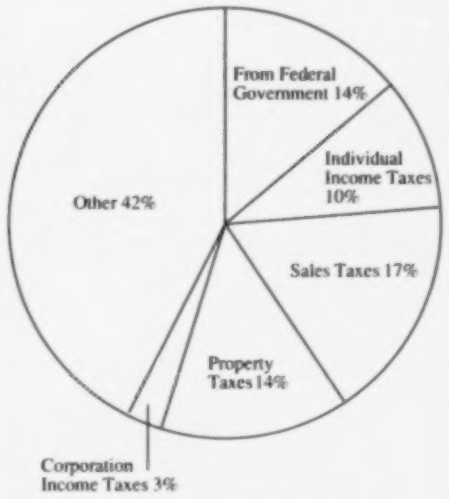
    A. Economic growth has not eliminated poverty.

    B. Economic growth involves certain costs, such as pollution.

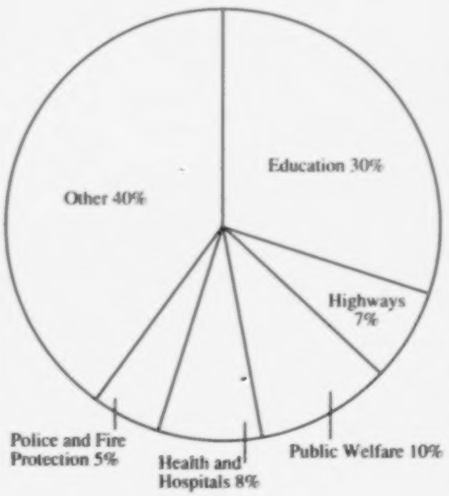
    C. Economic growth makes the skills of some workers obsolete.

    D. Economic growth means a higher standard of living.

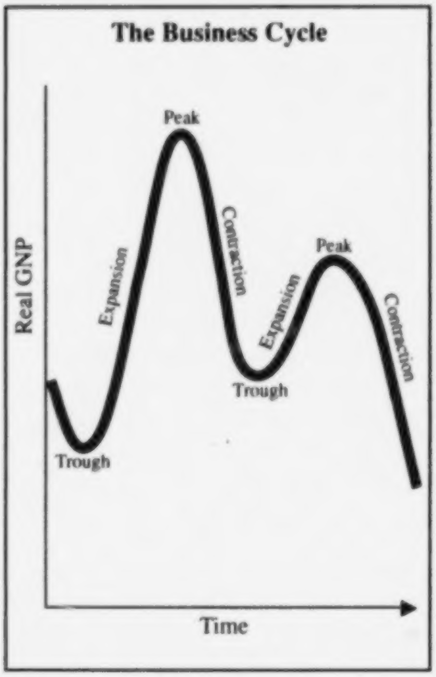
State and Local Government Revenues, 1986



State and Local Government Expenditures, 1986



Source: U.S. Bureau of the Census


The Business Cycle

The recurrent fluctuations in economic activity are known as the business cycle. The duration and strength of each of the four phases of the business cycle vary greatly.

46. To determine which phase of the business cycle the economy is in, economists analyze three types of economic indicators.

    A. __________ rise or fall after a major change in economic activity.

    B. __________ rise or fall before a major change in economic activity.

    C. __________ rise or fall during a major change in economic activity.

47. Another measure of the economy's performance besides GNP is the unemployment rate—the percentage of the **labor force** without jobs that is actively looking for work. The Bureau of Labor Statistics (BLS) in the Department of Labor calculates the unemployment rate. Which of the following statements are criticisms of the accuracy of the unemployment rate?

    A. The unemployment rate may be overstated by respondents who are employed in the **underground economy** falsely claiming to be unemployed.

    B. The unemployment rate may be overstated by respondents who falsely claim to be seeking work in order to maintain unemployment benefits.

    C. The unemployment rate may be understated because the BLS counts part-time workers (including those who would like to work full time) as fully employed.

    D. The unemployment rate may be understated because the BLS does not count discouraged workers (workers who, after unsuccessfully seeking employment for a time, drop out of the labor force) as unemployed.

48. There are several causes of unemployment. Identify the types of unemployment described below.

    A. unemployment because workers are temporarily between jobs

    B. unemployment due to annual changes in the seasons

    C. unemployment due to basic changes in the economy that make the skills of certain workers obsolete

    D. unemployment due to the business cycle

49. Stable prices are a national economic goal. However, changes in the general level of prices occur over time. Briefly explain the difference between inflation and deflation.

50. There are two types of inflation.

    A. Inflation that occurs because **aggregate demand** exceeds **aggregate supply** is called __________.

    B. Inflation that occurs because an increase in production costs causes a decrease in supply is called __________.

51. Changes in the general level of prices require a distinction between money income and real income. Money income is the number of dollars one receives as wages, rent, interest, and profits. What does real income measure?

52. *Hypothetical situation:* Ms. Lai earned $50,000 last year and is earning $53,000 this year. The rate of inflation is 7 percent. What has happened to her money income and her real income?

53. Inflation affects different groups of people differently. Determine whether a period of unanticipated inflation would have a positive or a negative effect on the following groups.

    A. people who borrowed money at fixed interest rates

    B. people who lent money at fixed interest rates

    C. people who receive fixed money incomes

    D. people who saved money at fixed interest rates

54. What happens to interest rates when creditors anticipate inflation in the future?

55. The federal government attempts to regulate the business cycle by using its spending and taxing powers. This is called fiscal policy. What is the difference between discretionary and nondiscretionary fiscal policy?

56. To a certain extent appropriate changes in government tax collections and expenditures occur automatically during the various phases of the business cycle. How do these automatic stabilizers, such as transfer payments and progressive income taxes, work?

57. What is the difference between an expansionary fiscal policy and a contractionary fiscal policy?

58. Determine whether a Keynesian economist would recommend an expansionary or contractionary fiscal policy in response to the following economic problems.

    A. cyclical unemployment

    B. demand-pull inflation

59. Which of the following are limitations on the use of fiscal policy?

    A. There is a time lag between a change in the business cycle and economists' recognition that a change has occurred.

    B. There is a time lag between the recognition that fiscal action is needed and the time that action is taken.

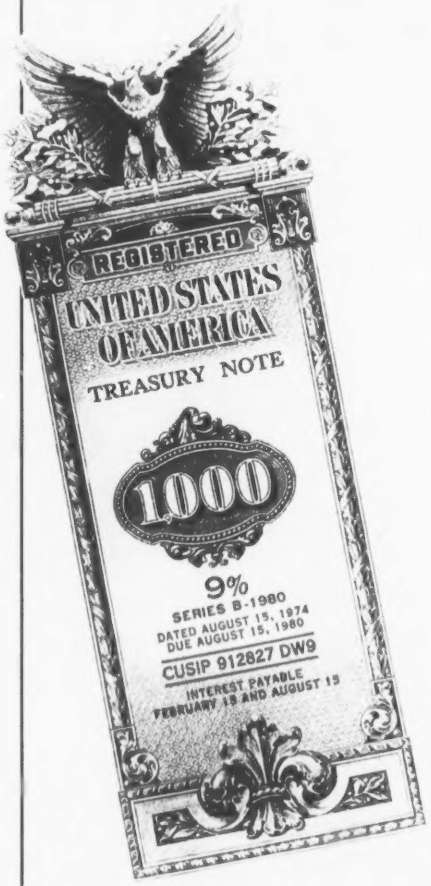
    C. There is a time lag between the time that fiscal action is taken and the time that the action has an impact.

    D. Political considerations may prevent Congress from adopting contractionary fiscal policy.

60. Another criticism of fiscal policy is that deficit spending by the federal government causes a reduction in investment spending by businesses. Why does this "crowding out" occur?

61. The failure of Keynesian policies to deal with the **stagflation** of the 1970s led to a new approach to economic policy, championed by economists such as Arthur Laffer. Proponents of this new approach, called ____________ economics, argue that tax cuts for businesses will increase aggregate supply, reducing unemployment and inflation.

English economist John Maynard Keynes argued in *The General Theory of Employment, Interest, and Money* (1936) that increased government spending was necessary to pull market economies out of depressions. Adherents of his economic theories are called Keynesians.



Treasury notes such as this one are a type of security the federal government issues to finance its deficits. Investors who buy treasury notes are loaning money to the government in exchange for interest payments. Other government securities are treasury bills and U.S. savings bonds.

Money, Banking, and Monetary Policy

62. Money is anything generally accepted as payment for goods and services. What are the three basic functions of money?

63. What five major characteristics must an item have to be used as money?

64. Match the following types of money with their formal economic terms.

A. checking accounts	a. currency
B. coins and paper money	b. **demand deposits**
C. savings accounts and **time deposits**	c. **near money**

65. Banks in the United States play an important role in creating money. Complete the chart below based on the following information.

A. The **reserve requirement** is 10 percent.

B. The initial amount deposited in Bank A is $100,000.

C. Bank A loans all of its available funds, which are then deposited in Bank B; Bank B loans all of its available funds, which are then deposited in Bank C; Bank C loans all of its available funds, which are then deposited in Bank D.

Bank A:	amount deposited	$100,000
	amount required for reserve	________
	total available for loans	________
Bank B:	amount deposited	________
	amount required for reserve	________
	total available for loans	________
Bank C:	amount deposited	________
	amount required for reserve	________
	total available for loans	________
Bank D:	amount deposited	________
	amount required for reserve	________
	total available for loans	________

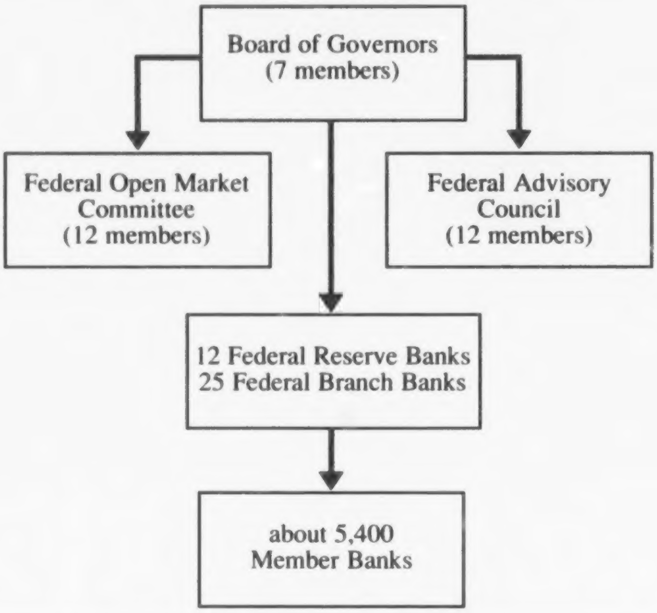
TOTAL AMOUNT CREATED BY INITIAL DEPOSIT ________

66. The Federal Reserve System (the Fed) performs a number of important functions in the American economy. One major function is clearing checks—transferring funds from the accounts of people who have written checks to the accounts of people who have received checks. Another function is making loans to banks. What is the interest rate that the Fed charges for the use of its money called?

67. The Fed also supervises member banks and distributes paper currency. Its most important function is to regulate the money supply (the amount of money in circulation). The narrowest measure of the money supply is called M1. What does M1 include?

The Federal Reserve System is the country's central bank. It was created in 1913 by the Federal Reserve Act to improve the nation's banking and monetary system.

The Organization of the Federal Reserve System


Board of Governors (7 members)
Federal Open Market Committee (12 members)
Federal Advisory Council (12 members)
12 Federal Reserve Banks
25 Federal Branch Banks
about 5,400 Member Banks

68. The regulation of the money supply in an effort to achieve desired economic objectives is called monetary policy. The Fed can pursue either an easy-money policy or a tight-money policy. An easy-money policy expands the money supply. A tight-money policy contracts the money supply. Determine whether the Fed would pursue an easy-money policy or a tight-money policy to combat the following economic problems, and why.

    A. cyclical unemployment

    B. demand-pull inflation

69. Explain how the Fed uses each of the following tools to affect the money supply.

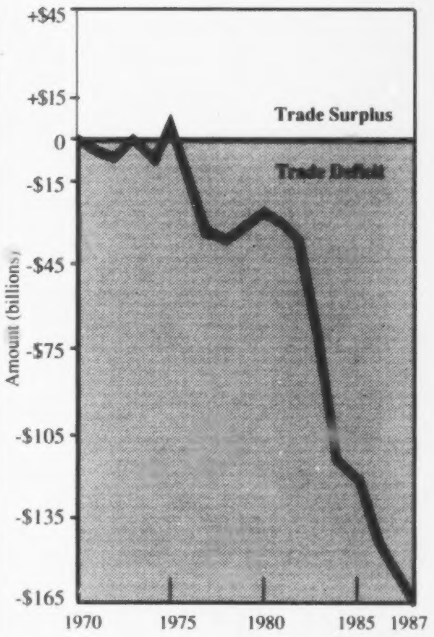
    A. discount rate

    B. open-market operations

    C. reserve requirement

70. Some economists, most notably Milton Friedman, argue that discretionary changes in the money supply by the Fed have actually destabilized the economy. They advocate a steady increase in the money supply at 3 to 5 percent per year, rather than the use of monetary policy to modify the business cycle. What are adherents of this view called?

U.S. Balance of Trade



Source: U.S. Bureau of the Census

A nation's balance of trade is the difference between the value of that nation's imports and exports. A trade surplus occurs when a nation exports more than it imports. For most of the past two decades the United States has experienced a trade deficit, importing more than it exports.

International Economics

71. International trade is the voluntary exchange of goods and services between the people of different nations. Because countries have different resources, some nations are able to make a product more efficiently than other nations. A nation that can make a product using fewer resources than a second nation enjoys an ____________ in the production of that product.

72. Even when one country can produce most products more efficiently than another, it still benefits from **specialization** and international trade. A country will benefit if it produces those products in which it enjoys a ______________, that is, those products which have the lowest opportunity costs.

73. *Hypothetical situation:* In the absence of trade, an English worker can produce either 4 barrels of wine or 16 shirts weekly, while a Portugese worker can produce either 10 barrels of wine or 20 shirts weekly.

    A. Without trade, how many shirts must be sacrificed to produce one barrel of wine in England?

    B. Without trade, how many shirts must be sacrificed to produce one barrel of wine in Portugal?

    C. What product should Portugal specialize in producing and why?

    D. What product should England specialize in producing and why?

74. What effect do specialization and international trade have on total world output?

75. Despite the benefits of specialization and international trade, most countries put some restrictions on trade. One major type of trade barrier is a tariff, a tax imposed by a government on imported products. How do the purposes of revenue tariffs differ from those of protective tariffs?

76. *Hypothetical situation:* Because Nation B produces cheaper bicycles, the citizens of Nation A buy more bicycles produced in Nation B than bicycles produced in Nation A. To protect its bicycle industry, the government of Nation A limits the number of bicycles imported from Nation B, allowing the domestic bicycle industry to gain a bigger share of the market. What is this type of trade barrier called?

77. Which of the following arguments is *not* made in favor of protectionism—the use of trade barriers to protect domestic industries from foreign competition?

    A. Trade restrictions help phase out inefficient industries.

    B. Trade restrictions promote diversified economies, making countries less vulnerable to changes in world demand for products.

    C. Trade restrictions promote new, or infant, industries that are struggling to become established.

    D. Trade restrictions protect industries critical to national defense.

    E. Trade restrictions protect jobs in the United States, especially those of workers who compete with cheaper foreign labor.

78. The United States has taken several actions designed to promote international trade. The Reciprocal Trade Agreements Act of 1934 authorized the president to negotiate agreements reducing tariffs based on the "most favored nation" principle. What advantage does "most favored nation" status confer on U.S. trading partners?

79. The United States is also a signatory of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), established in 1947 to reduce or eliminate trade barriers among member nations. Several rounds of multilateral negotiations to reduce trade barriers have been completed under GATT sponsorship. A new round of GATT negotiations began in Uruguay in 1986. Which of the following are proposals supported by the United States at the Uruguay Round?

   A. eliminating trade barriers and domestic subsidies in agriculture

   B. ending restrictions on foreign economic investments

   C. establishing and enforcing patent, copyright, and trademark rights on an international basis

   D. removing barriers to trade in services

80. To conduct international trade, countries need a way of determining the values of their currencies in relation to one another. Exchange rates, which state the price of one currency in the currency of other countries, allow nations to make these comparisons. Suppose the exchange rate of dollars to yen is 8 dollars to 1,000 yen. Calculate the dollar price of a tape recorder worth 2,500 yen.

81. From 1944 to the early 1970s, a system of ____________ exchange rates was used. The prices of major international currencies in terms of other currencies were set at an international conference at Bretton Woods, New Hampshire, in 1944. The conference also created the International Monetary Fund (IMF) to administer the new monetary system.

82. Since the early 1970s, a system of flexible or floating exchange rates has prevailed. In this type of system, how are the values of currencies in terms of other currencies determined?

83. Why have some economists referred to the present exchange system as a "managed float"?

84. Under a system of floating exchange rates, appreciation means that one nation's currency has gained value, or gotten stronger, in relation to the currencies of other nations. When the value of a currency falls in relation to other currencies, that currency has depreciated or gotten weaker. Determine whether each of the following groups of Americans is more likely to benefit from a strong dollar or from a weak dollar.

   A. consumers who buy imported products

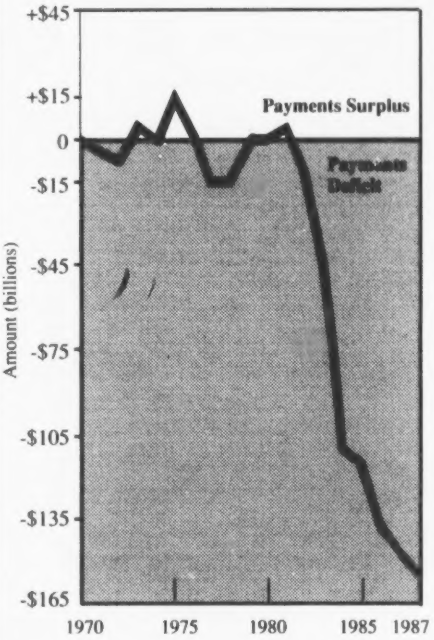
   B. producers who export their products

   C. producers who rely on imported raw materials

   D. tourists traveling abroad

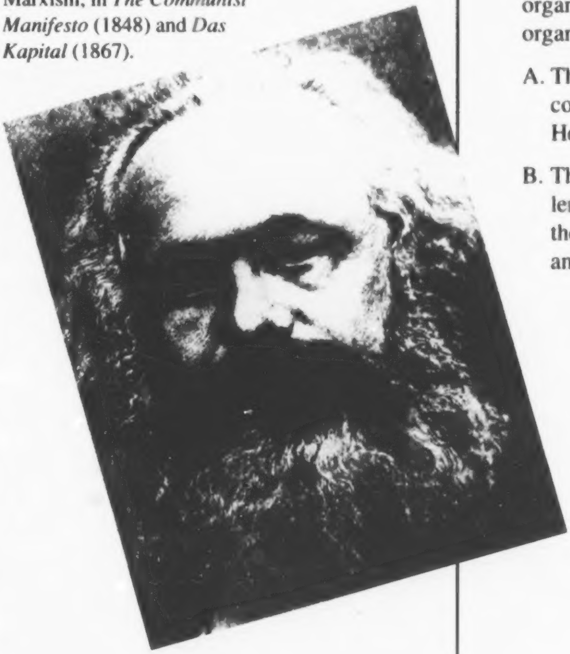
   E. workers producing a product that must compete with foreign imports

U.S. Balance of Payments



Source: U.S. Bureau of the Census

A nation's balance of payments is the difference between money flowing into and out of a country—including international trade, investments, and loans. A surplus, or favorable balance of payments, occurs when money inflows exceed money outflows. A deficit, or unfavorable balance of payments, occurs when money outflows exceed money inflows.



Karl Marx, a German economist, philosopher, and revolutionist, believed that the constant struggle between capitalists and laborers in modern industrial society would eventually give way to communism. He set forth his theories, known as Marxism, in *The Communist Manifesto* (1848) and *Das Kapital* (1867).

85. Nations have different types of economic and political systems. The United States is a democracy with a primarily market economy. However in some democracies, notably in Western Europe, government owns some of the country's leading industries and is involved in economic planning. What is this type of system called?

86. Other nations, such as the Soviet Union and China, practice authoritarian socialism, or communism.

    A. Who owns the means of production in such systems?

    B. How are economic decisions made in such systems?

    C. What type of economies do such nations have?

87. Although the United States is a developed nation, approximately three-fourths of the world's people live in less-developed countries (LDCs). Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of these developing nations?

    A. low per capita GNP

    B. predominantly agricultural economies

    C. rapid population growth

    D. well-developed **infrastructures**

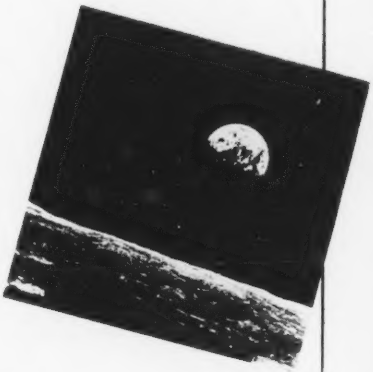
88. The United States provides money, products, and services to developing nations. This foreign aid consists of both economic assistance and military assistance. The United States also belongs to international organizations that distribute foreign aid. Identify the international organizations described below.

    A. This organization, established in 1945 to maintain international peace, coordinates the efforts of its specialized agencies, such as the World Health Organization (WHO).

    B. This organization, founded at the Bretton Woods Conference in 1944, lends funds and provides technical assistance to LDCs. It consists of the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (IBRD) and the International Development Association (IDA).

12. America's Land and People

Every American is linked to many places on the earth. One might earn a living in a Texas oil field, eat apples from Washington, drive a car from Japan, and feel the effects of a hurricane that began in the Caribbean Sea. Geographers study the earth and the relationship of people to the earth, examining five fundamental themes: (1) the location of places on the earth; (2) the physical and human characteristics of places; (3) the ways regions of the earth form and change; (4) the movement of people on the earth; and (5) the relationship of people to their environments.



Geography has many branches, including physical geography, which examines the earth's natural processes; economic geography, which studies the location of economic activities; urban geography, which analyzes the origins and growth of cities; and population geography, which focuses on the distribution of people on the earth. The following chapter examines these four aspects of America's geography, as well as some of the nation's environmental challenges.

In land area, the United States is the fourth largest nation in the world, after the Soviet Union, Canada, and China. It contains an enormous variety of landforms, climates, and vegetation. The United States is extraordinarily rich in natural resources, which have helped its economy to prosper.

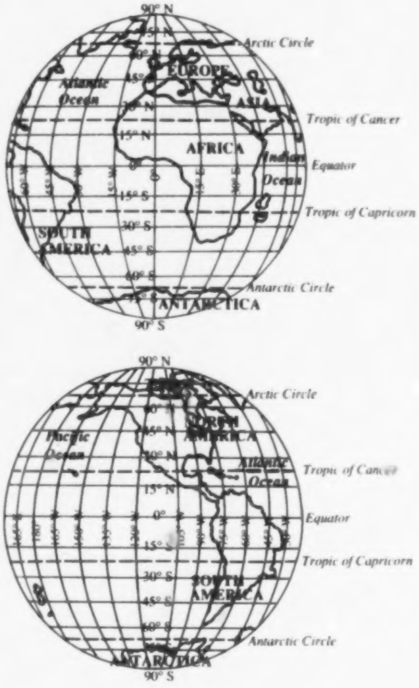
The search for economic opportunity has always motivated Americans to move from place to place. In the nineteenth century, when the population was primarily rural, Americans pushed the frontier farther and farther west. Today the population is primarily urban, and Americans are among the most mobile people on earth, migrating from older industrial cities in the North to the growing cities of the Sunbelt.

In population, the United States is also the fourth largest nation in the world, after China, India, and the Soviet Union. A wide variety of ethnic, religious, and racial groups make up this population. The majority of Americans trace their ancestry to European immigrants, while the Native Americans who greeted these immigrants now make up less than one percent of the population.

Many environmental challenges now face America, including air and water pollution and mounting piles of garbage. Some problems, such as acid rain and deforestation, are global and require international cooperation. As you study the questions in the following chapter, consider how your relationship to the environment differs from that of your great grandparents. What will the American landscape look like to your children?

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Global Grid System


90° N
75° N
60° N
45° N
30° N
15° N
0°
15° S
30° S
45° S
60° S
90° S
Arctic Circle
Tropic of Cancer
Equator
Tropic of Capricorn
Antarctic Circle
Atlantic Ocean
EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
Indian Ocean
SOUTH AMERICA
ANTARCTICA
Pacific Ocean
NORTH AMERICA
Atlantic Ocean
SOUTH AMERICA
ANTARCTICA

The Geographer's Tools

Answer questions 1-4 using the diagram at left.

1. Geographers use a grid system of lines of **latitude,** called parallels, and lines of **longitude,** called meridians, to locate points on the earth. Because the earth is a sphere, these lines are measured in terms of the 360 degrees of a circle.

   A. What parallel divides the globe into the Northern and Southern Hemispheres?

   B. What meridians divide the globe into the Eastern and Western Hemispheres?

   C. In what hemispheres does the United States lie?

   D. Where is the Prime Meridian located, and what role does it play in measuring longitude and locating time zones?

2. A. At what line of latitude do the sun's rays strike directly on about June 21, beginning summer in the Northern Hemisphere?

   B. At what line of latitude do the sun's rays strike directly on about December 21, beginning summer in the Southern Hemisphere?

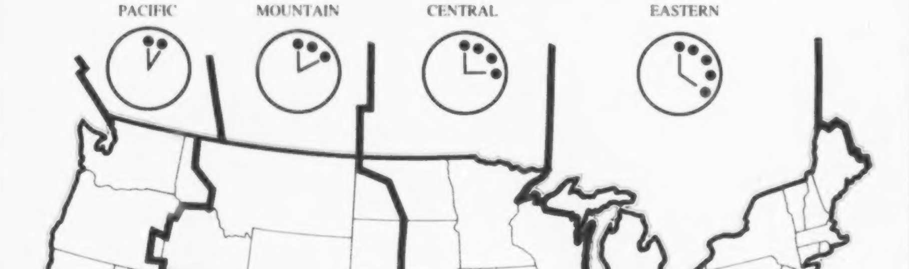
3. A. On about December 21, what area of the earth has continuous sunlight, and what area has continuous darkness?

   B. On about June 21, what area of the earth has continuous sunlight, and what area has continuous darkness?

4. What points lie at 90° north latitude and 90° south latitude?

The four time zones in the contiguous United States are: Eastern, Central, Mountain, and Pacific. Hawaii and most of Alaska are in a zone that is two hours earlier than the Pacific zone. The world has 24 time zones, each of which covers about 15 degrees of longitude.

Time Zones of the United States


PACIFIC
MOUNTAIN
CENTRAL
EASTERN

5. Globes most accurately represent shapes, sizes, distances, and directions, but there is always some distortion in maps. The process of transferring information on a globe to a flat sheet of paper is called projection. Different map projections minimize different types of distortion. Identify the projections described below.

   A. This type of projection shows the true relative sizes of all areas, but distorts shapes and distances.

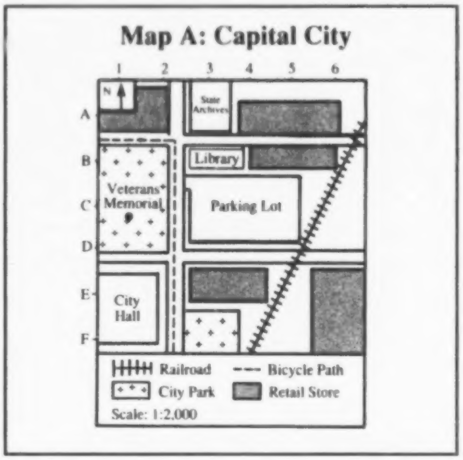
   B. Developed in 1569 for ocean navigation, this projection accurately shows directions, but sizes of areas in high latitudes are greatly distorted.

   C. This type of projection shows the sizes, shapes, and directions of areas in the middle latitudes, such as the contiguous United States, very accurately.

   D. This type of projection is made by projecting the globe onto a flat surface that touches the globe only at one of the poles. Areas near this point are the least distorted. Because it shows **great circle routes** as straight lines, this projection is very useful to pilots who fly these routes.

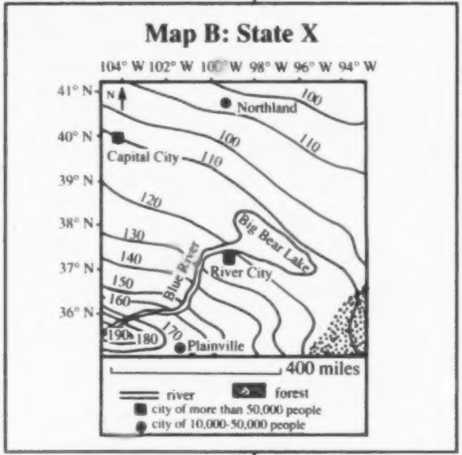
6. The position of any place on earth can be described using either absolute location or relative location. Briefly describe the difference between these two concepts.

Understanding the language of cartographers, or mapmakers, is important to understanding geography. Answer questions 7-11 using the maps below.



Map A: Capital City

1
2
3
4
5
6
A
B
C
D
E
F
N
State Archives
Library
Veterans' Memorial
Parking Lot
City Hall
Railroad
Bicycle Path
City Park
Retail Store
Scale: 1:2,000



Map B: State X

104° W
102° W
100° W
98° W
96° W
94° W
41° N
40° N
39° N
38° N
37° N
36° N
N
Northland
Capital City
River City
Plainville
Big Bear Lake
Blue River
100
100
110
110
120
130
140
150
160
170
180
190
400 miles
river
forest
city of more than 50,000 people
city of 10,000-50,000 people

7. A map scale shows the actual distance on the earth that is represented by a linear unit on a map. On a large-scale map, each unit represents a relatively small area. On a small-scale map, each unit represents a large area. Find the scales on the maps above.

   A. One inch on map A would equal how many inches on the earth?

   B. One inch on map B would equal how many miles on the earth?

   C. Which map has the larger scale, and which would show greater detail?

8. Cartographers use many different symbols. The ____________ explains all the symbols used on a particular map. Identify this part on each of the maps above.

9. Using the maps on the previous page, identify the absolute location of the following sites.

   A. Library

   B. Veterans Memorial

   C. Capital City

   D. Big Bear Lake

10. Toward what **cardinal point** would you travel to go from the Library to the State Archives?

11. Map B uses contour lines to show **elevation.** Contour lines connect all points with the same elevation.

    A. What part of the state has the highest elevation?

    B. Is Big Bear Lake nearer in elevation to Capital City or to Plainville?

    C. In what **intermediate direction** does the Blue River flow?

Land, Sea, and Sky

12. Physical geography studies natural conditions on the earth's surface, including **landforms,** rivers and oceans, and climate. Which of the following questions would a physical geographer be *least* likely to examine?

    A. How were the Rocky Mountains created?

    B. In what U.S. states are hurricanes most likely to occur?

    C. How has mass transit affected the growth of Boston's suburbs?

    D. How has Maine's coastline changed in the last hundred years?

13. Scientists believe that the earth's lithosphere, or crust, is made of enormous segments called plates, which are about 60 miles thick. In areas where plates come in contact with each other, there are high mountain ranges, volcanic activity, and frequent earthquakes due to the movement of these plates. By what name is the theory explaining this movement known?

14. Many earthquakes occur in California along the 650-mile-long _________ which marks the boundary between the Pacific plate and the North American plate.

15. Identify the processes described below, which build up landforms.

    A. Forces in the earth bend rock layers upward and may produce accordian-like structures. Many of the world's mountain ranges, including the Appalachians, were formed in this manner.

    B. Layers of rock break apart and move past each other along the fracture line, or fault. The Sierra Nevada range was formed by this process.

    C. Terrain is shaped by outpourings of volcanic material from cracks in the earth's crust. The Hawaiian Islands were formed in this way.

16. Define the processes below, which wear down landforms.

    A. weathering

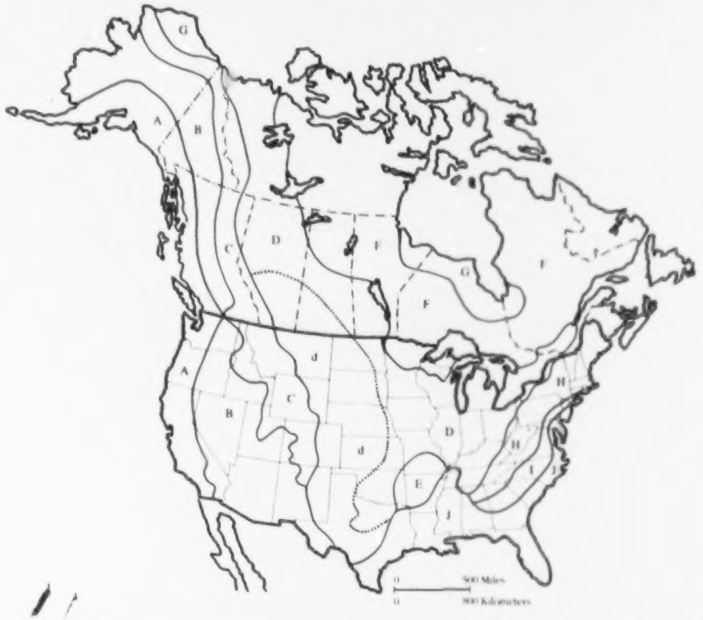
    B. erosion

    C. glaciation

Mt. St. Helens, a volcano in Washington's Cascade Range, violently erupted in 1980, destroying surrounding forests and killing some 60 people.

Answer question 17 using the map below.

Landform Regions of the Continental United States



17. Name the following major landform divisions of the continental United States, which correspond to the areas on the map above.

A. The mountains in this area include the highest peak in the contiguous United States, Mt. Whitney in California, and the highest peak in North America, Mt. McKinley in Alaska.

B. In this area the terrain is very irregular, with high **plateaus.** It contains canyons cut by rivers such as the Colorado, which created the Grand Canyon in Arizona. The region also includes the lowest point in the United States, Death Valley in California.

C. This area of high mountain ranges and valleys has been a major barrier to overland transportation. Its highest peak is Mt. Elbert in Colorado.

D. This rolling **plain** with very fertile soil is well suited to big-scale agriculture. The western part of the region (d), known as the Great Plains, is higher in elevation and drier than the eastern part.

E. This area is an island of hills and eroded mountains amid low plains.

F. This rocky, rolling plain was scoured by glaciers millions of years ago, creating numerous lakes, swamps, and streams.

G. Major oil drilling operations are located in the Alaskan part of this area, which consists mainly of **tundra.**

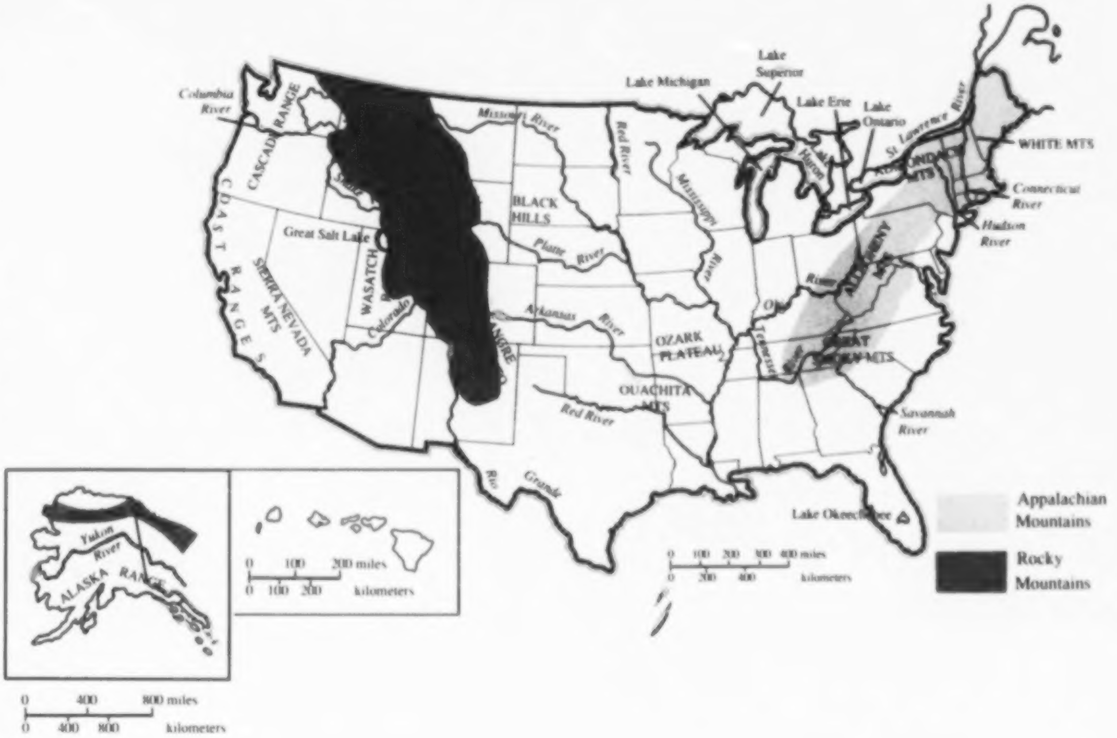
H. This area consists of low mountains interspersed with hills and river valleys. Its highest peak is Mt. Mitchell in North Carolina.

I. This plateau has a hilly surface. Some Pennsylvania farmlands are among the most productive in the nation.

J. This plain is low and flat, with sandy soil and many slow-moving rivers, **estuaries,** and swamps.

Answer questions 18-26 using the map below.

Major U.S. Rivers, Lakes, and Mountain Ranges


Columbia River
CASCADE RANGE
COAST RANGES
Snake
Great Salt Lake
SIERRA NEVADA MTS
WASATCH
Colorado
Missouri River
BLACK HILLS
Platte River
Arkansas River
SANGRE
Red River
Mississippi River
OZARK PLATEAU
OUACHITA MTS
Red River
Rio Grande
Lake Michigan
Lake Superior
Lake Huron
Lake Erie
Lake Ontario
St Lawrence River
ADIRONDACK MTS
WHITE MTS
Connecticut River
Hudson River
ALLEGHENY MTS
Ohio River
Tennessee River
GREAT SMOKY MTS
Savannah River
Lake Okeechobee
0 100 200 300 400 miles
0 200 400 kilometers
Yukon River
ALASKA RANGE
0 400 800 miles
0 400 800 kilometers
0 100 200 miles
0 100 200 kilometers
Appalachian Mountains
Rocky Mountains

18. Alaska and Hawaii are often shown at different scales than the rest of the United States. If these states were shown [illegible] the same scale as the other states on the map above, how much larger or smaller would they be?

19. What two major U.S. rivers have the same name, and what state boundaries do they form?

20. What river divides Vermont from New Hampshire and flows into Long Island Sound?

21. The Mississippi River and its tributaries drain all or part of 31 states, forming the largest river system in North America.

    A. What is the longest tributary of the Mississippi?

    B. In what state is the **delta** of the Mississippi River found?

22. The Appalachian Mountains extend from the Canadian province of Newfoundland to Alabama.

    A. What group of mountains in the Appalachians extends along the border between Tennessee and North Carolina?

    B. What New York range in the Appalachians supports a large resort industry and is the source of the Hudson River?

23. Name the mountains that straddle the boundary between South Dakota and Wyoming and contain the nation's largest gold mine.

24. The Rocky Mountain chain extends from Alaska to New Mexico.

    A. What and where is the Continental (or Great) Divide?

    B. What mountains in the Rockies lie in the middle of Utah and are an important source of irrigation water?

    C. What mountains in the Rockies extend along the border between Idaho and Montana?

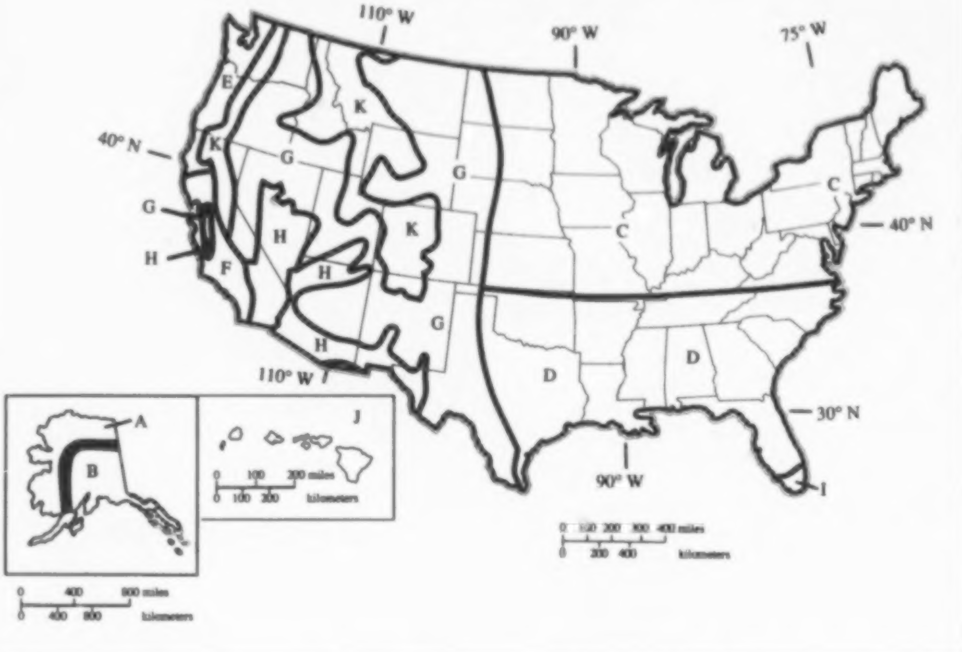
25. The Columbia River cuts through this high mountain range, which has several extinct volcanoes among its peaks and extends from northern California to Canada.

26. Which U.S. state is an **archipelago?**

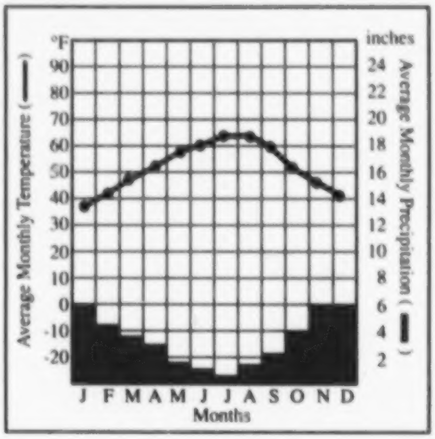
27. Briefly explain the difference between weather and climate.

The United States includes a great variety of climatic types. Answer question 28 using the map below.

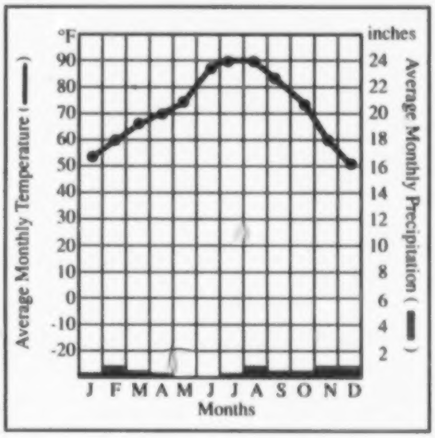
Climate Zones of the United States


110° W
90° W
75° W
40° N
E
K
G
K
G
G
H
K
H
F
H
G
H
C
C
40° N
D
D
30° N
110° W
90° W
I
A
B
J
0 100 200 miles
0 100 200 kilometers
0 100 200 300 400 miles
0 200 400 kilometers
0 400 800 miles
0 400 800 kilometers

Graph A



Graph B



28. Name the following climatic types, which correspond to the areas on the map on the previous page.

    A. This area has long cold winters, and in the summer temperatures rarely climb above 50° Farenheit. Natural vegetation is limited to mosses, lichens, and low bushes.

    B. In this area winters are long and cold, summers are short and mild, and much of the land is covered by coniferous forests.

    C. This area has cold winters and warm or hot summers. Natural vegetation is mixed, including coniferous and deciduous forests and grasses.

    D. In this area winters are mild and short, and summers are long and hot. Rainfall is abundant and occurs mostly in the summer. Natural vegetation is mixed.

    E. Winters in this area are mild and rainy, due to the effects of warm ocean currents. Summers are also mild. Giant conifers thrive here.

    F. In this area summers are hot and dry, and winters are mild and rainy.

    G. In this area summers are hot, dry, and windy, and winters are cold, dry, and windy. The dominant natural vegetation is short grass and shrubs.

    H. The dominant characteristic of this area is extreme dryness, with less than 10 inches of rain per year, and vegetation is scarce. Temperatures may drop dramatically from day to night.

    I. In this area temperatures are hot or warm throughout the year. Summers are wet, and winters are dry.

    J. Throughout the year temperatures are warm or hot and rainfall is high in this area. Mt. Waialeale on the Hawaiian island of Kauai in this area averages the highest annual rainfall on earth.

    K. In this mountainous area, climate varies greatly depending on altitude and winds.

Answer question 29 using the graphs at left.

29. In which of the following places would you find the climate depicted in Graph A? Graph B?

    a. northern Illinois

    b. western Washington

    c. southern Arizona

    d. southern Florida

30. The prevailing wind direction in the continental United States is from west to east. If you lived on the eastern slope of a mountain in Wyoming, would you be on the **windward** or **leeward** side of the mountain?

31. The high mountain ranges of the West have a significant effect on precipitation in the area.

    A. What is orographic precipitation?

    B. What is a rain shadow?

32. Many **tornadoes** develop in the central United States where warm air masses from the Gulf of Mexico meet cold air masses from the north. What state averages the largest number of tornadoes each year?

Using the Land and Its Resources

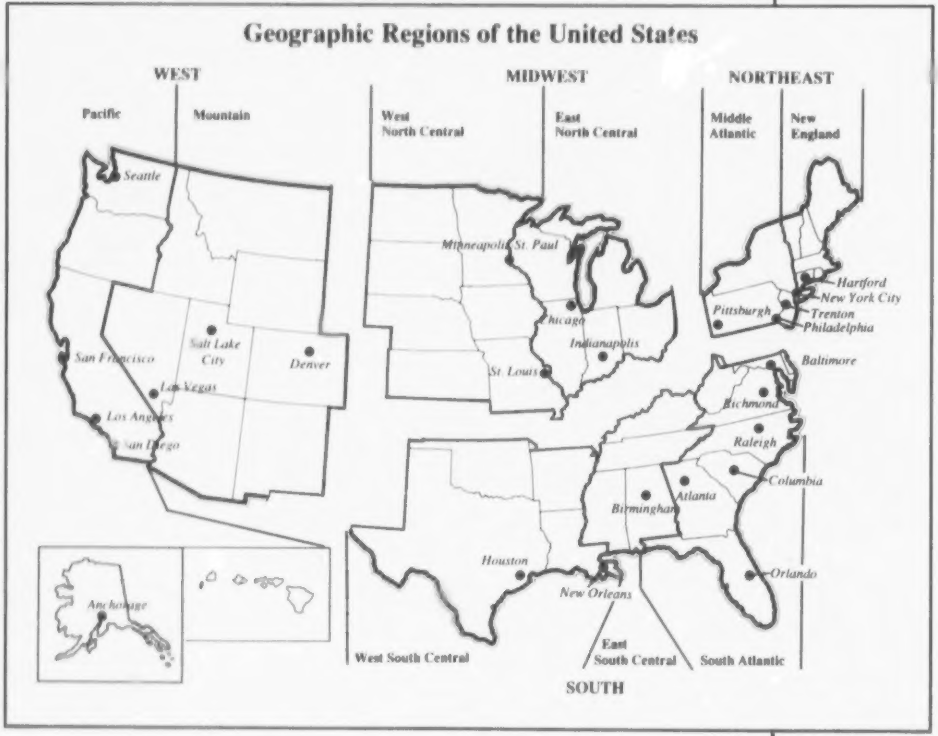
33. Economic geographers study the location of economic activities. The United States is among the world's leading economic powers in part because it is rich in natural resources. Which of the following statements about the United States is *not* true?

A. It has the highest gross national product (GNP) in the world.

B. It is the world's leading exporter of fish.

C. It is among the world's top three producers of petroleum and natural gas.

D. It is the world's leading exporter of corn and wheat.



Geographic Regions of the United States

WEST
Pacific
Mountain
MIDWEST
West North Central
East North Central
NORTHEAST
Middle Atlantic
New England
Seattle
San Francisco
Los Angeles
San Diego
Las Vegas
Salt Lake City
Denver
Minneapolis
St. Paul
Chicago
Indianapolis
St. Louis
Pittsburgh
Hartford
New York City
Trenton
Philadelphia
Baltimore
Richmond
Raleigh
Columbia
Atlanta
Birmingham
Orlando
Houston
New Orleans
Anchorage
West South Central
East South Central
South Atlantic
SOUTH

This map shows the regions of the United States, as defined by the U.S. Census Bureau.

Raising tobacco as a cash crop began in Virginia and Maryland in the 1600s and spread westward into Kentucky, Tennessee, and Missouri. North Carolina and Kentucky now rank as the nation's top tobacco producers.

Wisconsin is the nation's leading producer of dairy products. Corn and hay to feed the cattle are grown in the Dairy Belt, which includes Wisconsin, Minnesota, Michigan, and parts of New England and the Middle Atlantic States.

34. In the nineteenth century, competition from the Midwest led farmers in the Northeast to specialize in certain products for urban markets. What is the leading farm product in New Hampshire, Vermont, New York, and Pennsylvania?

35. Match the following products with the New England states that are among their leading producers in the nation.

A. jewelry
B. lobsters
C. maple syrup
D. cranberries

a. Massachusetts
b. Vermont
c. Maine
d. Rhode Island

36. Maine's leading crop is grown chiefly in the Aroostook Valley. What is it?

37. The Northeast was the first region in the United States to industrialize, but its early development varied according to local resources.

A. What industry developed in early New England factories, making use of streams to power the mills?

B. What industry arose in eastern Pennsylvania in the mid-nineteenth century, making use of the area's small iron deposits and large anthracite coal deposits?

38. The U.S. Manufacturing Belt grew up in an area roughly bounded by Boston, Massachusetts, Washington, D.C., St. Louis, Missouri, and Milwaukee, Wisconsin. In recent years, declining economic opportunities have led some to call the area the "Rustbelt." Which of the following was *not* a reason for the area's early dominance in manufacturing?

A. good transportation network

B. proximity of large urban markets

C. influx of cheap labor from the western United States

D. access to raw materials

39. During the nineteenth century, much of the South's economy was based on raising cotton.

A. What was the first center of cotton production in the United States?

B. What three states now lead in U.S. cotton production?

40. The majority of broiler chickens produced in the United States come from the South. What three states are the top producers?

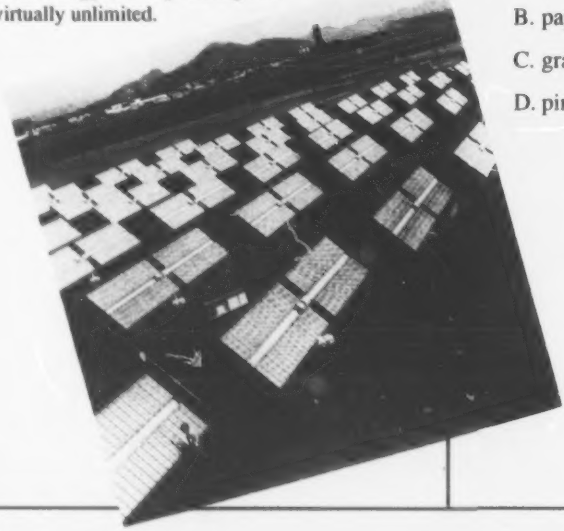
41. Match the products below with the southern states that are among their leading producers in the nation.

A. oranges and grapefruit
B. peanuts and pecans
C. rice
D. cattle
E. race horses

a. Texas
b. Florida
c. Arkansas
d. Georgia
e. Kentucky

42. Coal is the most abundant **fossil fuel** in the world. It generates more than half of the electricity in the United States.
    A. What type of coal, used mainly in industry, is mined extensively in Kentucky and West Virginia?
    B. What type of coal, used mainly for heating homes, is mined chiefly in Pennsylvania?
43. What three West South Central states are among the nation's leading petroleum producers?
44. Florida leads the nation in producing what mineral that is used in manufacturing fertilizer?
45. Aluminum is a light, strong metal used in airplanes, automobiles, and many other products.
    A. From what kind of ore is aluminum extracted?
    B. In what state is most of the aluminum ore in the United States mined?
    C. For what reason are aluminum plants located in the Columbia River Valley?
46. In the late nineteenth century, the ____________ industry moved from New England to the Piedmont region of the South, taking advantage of raw materials, greater power sources, cheaper labor, and tax incentives.
47. Although the U.S. publishing business is concentrated mainly in New York City, the nation's largest printer is in the South Atlantic region. What is this enterprise and where is it located?
48. The Midwest, with excellent soils and climate, markets more agricultural products than any other region of the United States. What crop, much of which is used to feed livestock, is the most valuable in the majority of the Midwestern states?
49. The United States produces about half of the world's soybeans. What two states rank as the nation's top soybean producers?
50. In the western part of the Midwest, where there is less precipitation, wheat farming and cattle ranching are more important than corn, which requires wet summers. What state ranks first in wheat production?
51. The Midwestern states raise about 80 percent of the nation's hogs. What single state raises about 25 percent of the hogs in the United States?
52. Minnesota mines more of what mineral than any other state?
53. Which of the following is *not* among the reasons that the East North Central states are more industrialized than the West North Central states?
    A. closer access to markets of the Northeast and Europe
    B. warmer climate to attract a more skilled labor force
    C. greater access to water transportation
    D. greater access to coal as a power source
54. Many of the first settlers in the West came as miners seeking gold and silver. Today, what two states produce the most gold? What two states produce the most silver?

Trees are an abundant natural resource in Oregon, the nation's leading state in lumber production. The Douglas fir is the most widely used tree in the United States for lumber.



Solar cells convert sunlight into electricity in Phoenix, Arizona. In the United States, the Southwest has the greatest potential for using solar energy because it receives large amounts of solar radiation year round. Solar energy is non-polluting and virtually unlimited.

55. The Mountain state of Arizona leads the nation in mining what metal?

56. The Colorado Rockies are the world's greatest source of the alloy molybdenum. For what is molybdenum used?

57. In 1968, the largest deposits of petroleum in the United States were discovered in what bay in Alaska's Arctic Coastal Plain region?

58. The Trans-Alaska Pipeline, constructed from 1974 to 1977, carries oil from the North Slope of the Brooks Range to ____________, the port where it is transferred to oil tankers.

59. The states of Washington and Oregon, known as the Pacific Northwest, lack significant coal or oil reserves. Waterpower is a vital energy source in the area and is harnessed through a series of dams on the Columbia River. What is the largest and most powerful dam on this river?

60. What manufacturing industry is concentrated in Seattle, Washington, taking advantage of cheap hydroelectric power there?

61. Through the use of extensive irrigation, California's valleys produce an enormous quantity and variety of agricultural products, making it first in the nation in farm output. California is *not* the nation's leading producer of which of the following products?

A. broccoli, lettuce, and tomatoes

B. celery and carrots

C. sweet potatoes

D. dates

E. peaches and plums

F. lemons

62. The largest living thing on earth is located in California and is estimated to be more than 3,000 years old. What is it?

63. The state of Washington ranks first in the nation in the production of what two fruits?

64. Hawaii does *not* lead the nation in the production of which of the following crops?

A. bananas

B. papayas

C. grapes

D. pineapples

The Urban Landscape

65. Urban geography concerns the origins and growth of cities, as well as spatial arrangements within cities and between cities and their **hinterlands.** Cities develop for many different reasons.

   A. Many cities grow up on rivers, giving them access to trade routes. The city of ____________ grew up where the Monongahela and Allegheny rivers flow into the Ohio.

   B. Many cities develop at sites that are easily protected from invasion such as hilltops, islands, or peninsulas. The city of ____________ was located on a peninsula on the James River to protect it from attack.

   C. Many cities develop at sites where goods must be transferred from one means of transportation to another, or "break-in-bulk points," such as the point where navigation of a river can begin. The city of ____________ grew up at the head of navigation of the Connecticut River.

   D. Many cities grow up near major railroads and highways. The city of ____________ in Indiana developed as a transportation center along the National Road.

   E. Many cities grow up because of amenities such as a pleasant climate or recreational facilities. The city of ____________ developed in central Florida due to its warm climate and the presence of a large amusement park.

66. The area where the Piedmont and the Coastal Plain meet is called the Fall Line because of the many falls and rapids that occur there as rivers descend to the lower elevation. Briefly explain why many U.S. cities grew up along the Fall Line.

67. Which of the following cities is *not* located along the Fall Line?

   A. Trenton, New Jersey

   B. Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

   C. Baltimore, Maryland

   D. Washington, D.C.

   E. Richmond, Virginia

   F. Raleigh, North Carolina

   F. Columbia, South Carolina

   G. Atlanta, Georgia

68. Identify the following terms associated with urban geography.

   A. This area includes the city and its surrounding communities.

   B. This semirural area beyond the suburbs of a city has high-income residents.

   C. This term originally described the part of a medieval city where Jews were required to live. Today, it refers to an area of a city where a particular racial or ethnic group is concentrated.

   D. This term describes the movement of affluent people into inner city neighborhoods to restore decaying buildings and live there. During this renovation, poorer residents are often displaced.

The twin towers of the World Trade Center dominate the skyline of New York City, the nation's largest city.

New York City commuters ride the nation's largest subway system, opened in 1904. The first American subway was built in Boston in 1897. Inexpensive mass transportation, including subways, elevated railways, and streetcars, made the growth of suburbs possible.

69. For the first time since the nineteenth century, the population of rural areas grew faster than that of urban areas in the 1970s. Which of the following is *not* among the reasons that businesses and people shifted toward rural areas?

    A. high taxes in urban areas

    B. improved transportation and communication lines

    C. high crime rates in urban areas

    D. more people became farmers

70. Which of the following is *not* a special characteristic of climate in urban areas?

    A. Air pollution decreases the amount of precipitation in urban areas.

    B. Automobiles, industry, and heating systems sometimes create a heat island, or dome of warmer air over part of a city.

    C. Less heat is removed from the air through evaporation because paved surfaces allow rapid runoff of rainfall, leaving few areas of standing water.

    D. Building materials such as concrete and asphalt conduct heat more easily than grass and trees, so temperatures in cities are usually higher than in rural areas.

71. Briefly explain how landforms, **temperature inversion,** and a high concentration of industry and automobiles combine to create a very serious air pollution problem in Los Angeles, California.

72. The majority of people who live in the Northeast live in the Northeast Corridor, a **megalopolis.**

    A. What metropolitan areas form the northern and southern boundaries of the Northeast Corridor?

    B. What region of California is becoming a megalopolis?

73. New York City is the nation's largest city and largest metropolitan area. It leads the nation as a center of finance, publishing, advertising, and broadcasting.

    A. After 1825, what provided New York City with direct access to the Great Lakes and the interior of the nation, giving it a trade advantage over other eastern ports?

    B. What industry, centered in Manhattan, was an outgrowth of New York City's import trade and was aided by the influx of skilled Jewish workers during the nineteenth century?

74. This river port's first businesses offered boats, tools, and supplies to Americans moving west. In the nineteenth century, the city became the nation's largest iron and steel making center, using ores from Minnesota and large local deposits of coal.

75. For most of its history, the South was a highly decentralized agricultural society, with many small urban centers. Today, the South's metropolitan areas remain smaller than those of the Northeast and Midwest. Identify the following major cities of the South.

    A. This city became a seaport when a canal was constructed to connect it to the Gulf of Mexico in the early twentieth century. After the discovery of oil along the Gulf coast in the early 1900s, it became a center for processing oil and chemicals.

    B. This city is a major transportation center for railroads and highways trying to avoid passing through the Great Smoky Mountains. It is also the site of the South's busiest airport.

    C. This city grew up as a major steelmaking center, using nearby deposits of iron ore and coal. It is now also a center of commerce and trade.

    D. This city, an outlet for the Mississippi River system, is an important center for the export of grain, cotton, and petroleum. Originally a French colony, it is famous for its Mardi Gras festival and historic French Quarter.

76. Identify the following major cities of the Midwest.

    A. These twin cities lie at the point where navigation of the Mississippi begins and are a center for flour milling and the grain trade.

    B. This city was founded by French fur trappers in the 1700s, near the junction of the Missouri and Mississippi Rivers, and remains a busy river port. Its major industries include the manufacture of aircraft, automobiles, and beer.

    C. This city grew up as a meatpacking and railroad center in the nineteenth century. Today, it is a vital transportation hub, a major grain and livestock market, and a center for manufacturing steel and farm machinery.

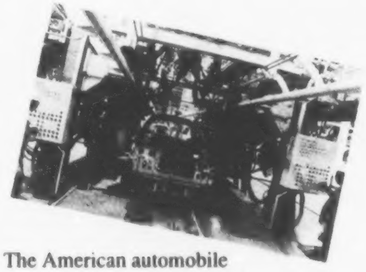
77. Identify the following urban centers of the Mountain region, which is sparsely populated due to extreme dryness.

    A. In the nineteenth century, this city grew up at the foot of the Rocky Mountains on the South Platte River as a supply and service center for miners. It is now a center of the state's booming tourism business and contains many state and federal government offices.

    B. This city is the center of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, or Mormons. It acts as a business center for all surrounding areas.

    C. This desert city sustains its main industries of tourism, gambling, and retirement communities by relying on a water supply created by Hoover Dam on the Colorado River.

78. What two metropolitan areas contain about one-third of the West's population?



The American automobile industry grew up in Detroit, Michigan, in the early twentieth century. Detroit's location gave it easy access to steel and markets. Today the industry is decentralized, but the major U.S. auto manufacturers still maintain headquarters in the Detroit metropolitan area.

About two percent of the U.S. population is of Asian origin. California has both the highest percentage and highest number of Asian-American residents.

79. Although it suffers from a severe water shortage, forcing the city to transport water from sources more than 200 miles away, Los Angeles has become an extremely important industrial center. Which of the following is *not* a characteristic of the Los Angeles economy?

    A. It receives more federal military contracts than any other metropolitan area.

    B. It is the main center of auto assembly in the West.

    C. It is the national center of the movie industry.

    D. Manufacturing of computer chips is concentrated in its "Silicon Valley" suburb.

80. Alaska's largest city, a port on the Kenai Peninsula, was severely damaged by a major earthquake in 1964. Name this city.

The American People

81. Population geography examines the numbers and spatial distribution of people on earth. The U.S. Census Bureau compiles a great deal of **demographic** information useful to geographers. What provision does the U.S. Constitution make for collecting such information, and when was the first U.S. census conducted?

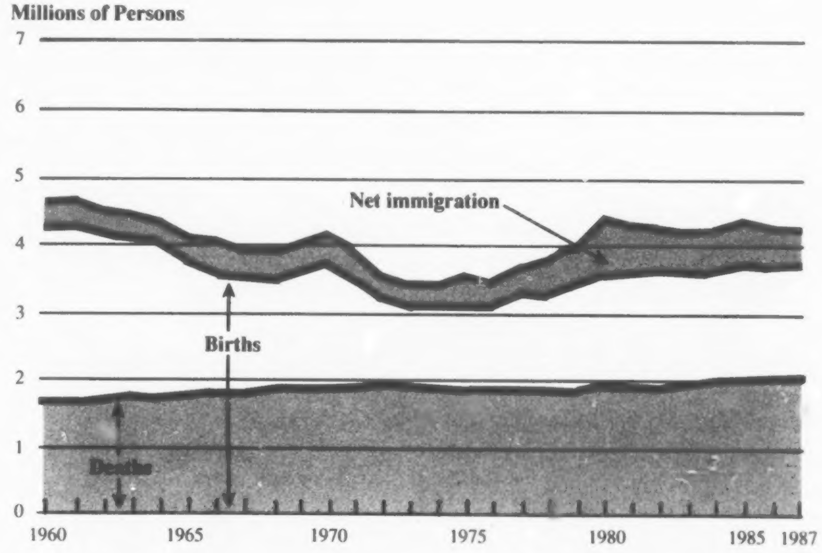
82. Population changes occur due to births, deaths, and migration.

    A. In general, what usually happens to a nation's **birthrate** and **death rate** as it becomes more industrialized and urbanized?

    B. Have U.S. birth and death rates increased or decreased since 1910?

Answer question 83 using the graph below.

U.S. Population Change 1960-1987



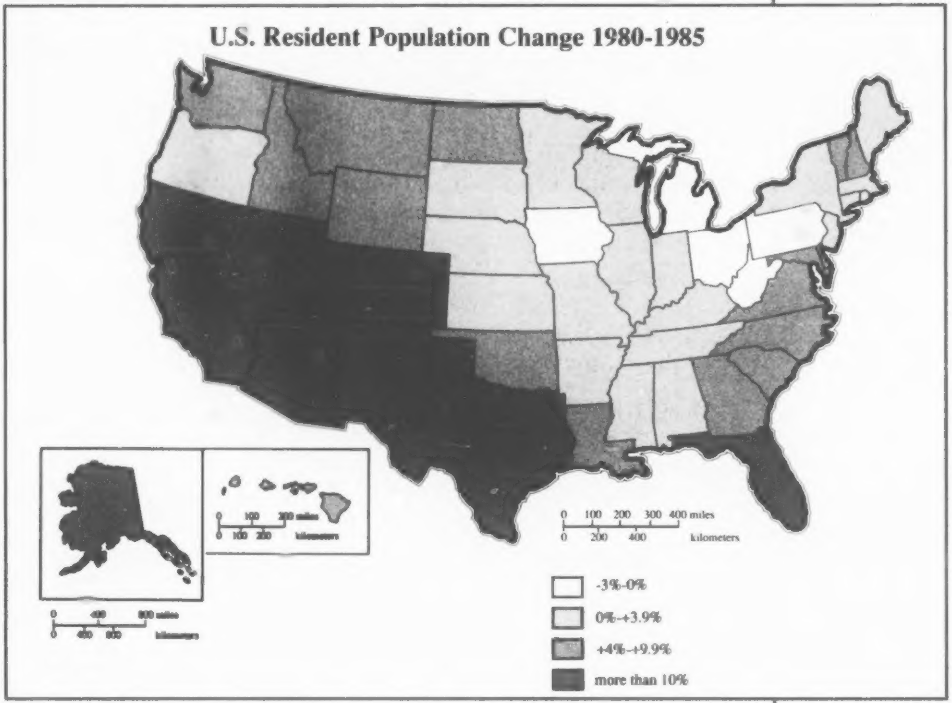
83. How could you find the natural increase and the net increase in U.S. population using the graph?

84. What state has the highest population density and what state has the lowest?

85. In a **cartogram** based on the populations of the 50 states, which state would be largest? Which would be smallest?

86. More than 80 percent of Hawaii's population lives in the metropolitan area of ____________ on the island of ____________ .

Answer questions 87-88 using the map below.



U.S. Resident Population Change 1980-1985

0 100 200 300 400 miles
0 200 400 kilometers
0 100 200 miles
0 100 200 kilometers
0 400 800 miles
0 400 800 kilometers
☐ -3%-0%
▨ 0%-+3.9%
▨ +4%-+9.9%
■ more than 10%

87. Which of the following states lost population between 1980 and 1985, and which gained population?

A. Texas

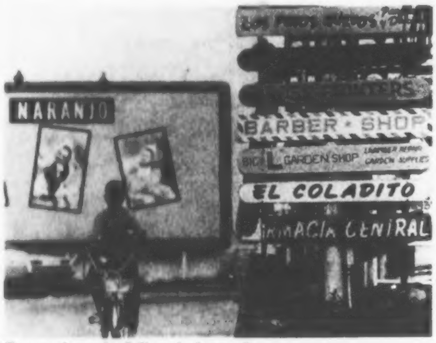
B. Florida

C. Michigan

D. California

E. Ohio

88. If current migration trends continue, which regions of the United States are likely to lose representatives in Congress after the 1990 census, and which areas are likely to gain representatives?



Streetsigns in Miami show the influence of Hispanic culture on the area. About seven percent of the U.S. population is Hispanic. The states of New Mexico, California, and Texas have the highest percentage of Hispanic residents.

89. Which of the following is *not* among the reasons many businesses have shifted to the **Sunbelt** in recent years?

    A. lower labor costs

    B. lower taxes

    C. decreasing land prices in the South and West

    D. pleasant climate

90. The United States placed no major restrictions on immigration until the 1880s, when Chinese laborers were excluded.

    A. What type of system was imposed on immigration to the United States in the 1920s?

    B. What were the main provisions of the Immigration and Nationality Act of 1965?

    C. What were the main provisions of the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986?

91. During which of the following 10-year periods was the annual rate of immigration to the United States at its highest? When was it at its lowest?

    A. 1841-1850

    B. 1901-1910

    C. 1931-1940

    D. 1971-1980

92. Name the country from which the largest number of immigrants to the United States came during the periods below.

    A. 1820-1850

    B. 1860-1890

    C. 1890-1920

    D. 1961-1987

93. What is the largest minority group in the United States, and in what region of the nation is it most concentrated?

Preserving the Earth

94. In the late nineteenth century, the United States began to protect certain natural environments through its national park system, sparking a worldwide national parks movement.

    A. What was the first U.S. national park, established in 1872 and featuring spectacular mountain scenery and the **geyser** Old Faithful?

    B. What national park, established in 1902, features a deep blue lake in the crater of an extinct volcano?

    C. What national park, established in 1916, features the active volcanoes Kilauea and Mauna Loa?

    D. What national park, established in 1947, is an extensive subtropical marshland of grasses and pine and cypress trees, and home to a variety of wildlife including alligators and herons?

95. The 1960s witnessed increasing interest in preserving the natural environment. Name the scientist whose work *Silent Spring* (1962) led the government to regulate more strictly dangerous pesticides such as DDT.

96. On Earth Day, April 22, 1970, millions of Americans rallied to urge the government to take action to save the environment. What new government agency was established in 1970 to regulate air and water pollution?

97. Identify the following anti-pollution legislation.

    A. This act provided federal funds for air pollution research and authorized the Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare to enforce air quality standards.

    B. This act set the goal of a 90 percent reduction of certain automobile pollutants by 1975.

    C. This act made owners of vessels that caused oil spills liable for cleanup costs.

    D. This legislation set the goal of ending all polluting discharge into U.S. waterways by 1985 and provided grants for improved sewage treatment plants. It also allowed citizens to sue companies for violating anti-pollution laws.

98. The federal government regulates the use of wetland areas such as swamps, bogs, and marshes. Which of the following is *not* among the reasons wetlands are so important to the environment?

    A. They naturally remove many pollutants from water.

    B. They are an exceptional breeding ground for wildlife.

    C. They help regulate floods.

    D. They naturally remove many pollutants from the air.

99. The depletion of energy resources is of growing concern as most of our energy comes from nonrenewable sources. Are the following examples of **renewable** or **nonrenewable resources?**

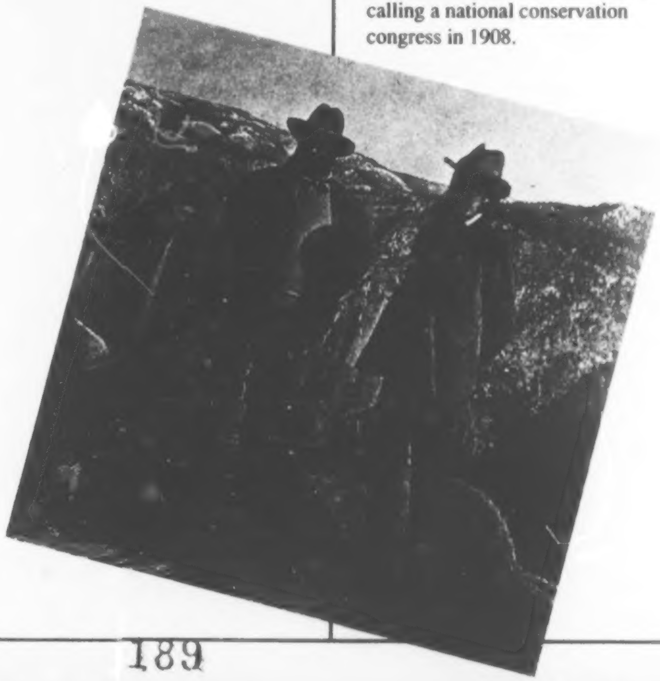
    A. forests

    B. coal

    C. petroleum

    D. water

Conservationist John Muir and President Theodore Roosevelt enjoy the beauty of California's Yosemite National Park. Muir helped establish the park in 1890. Roosevelt sparked national interest in preserving the environment by calling a national conservation congress in 1908.



100. What nation consumes more energy than any other?

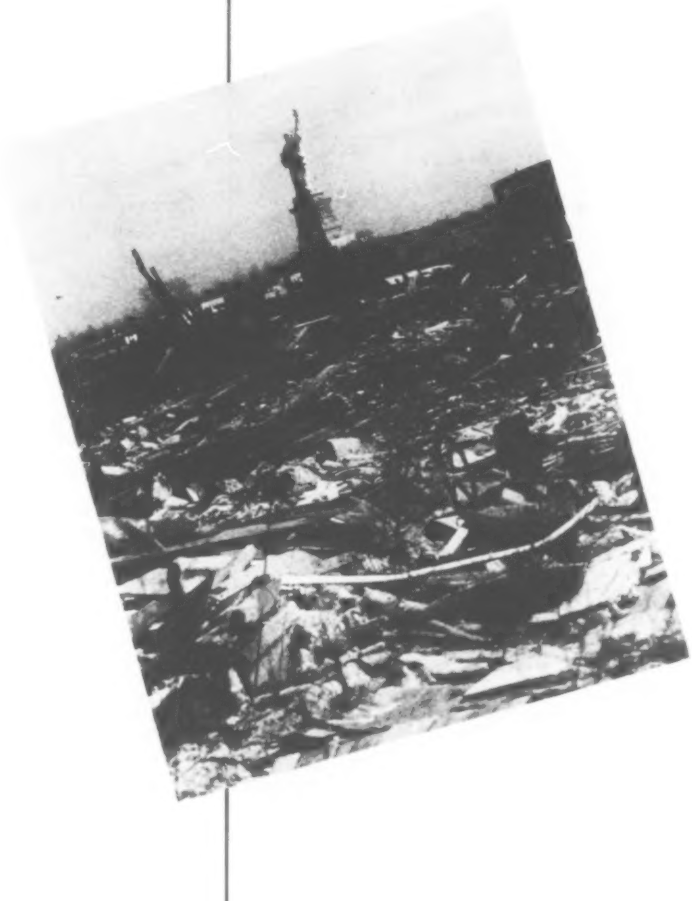
101. Drilling for oil in the ocean and hauling it by tanker exposes marine life to the dangers of oil spills. When and where did the largest oil spill in U.S. history to date occur?

102. Burning of fossil fuels releases carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. Carbon dioxide, along with chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), methane, and other gases trap heat in the atmosphere and contribute to the global warming known as the ______________ .

103. Acid rain is destroying forests and polluting lakes throughout the world. What causes acid rain?

104. The industrialized nations of the world destroyed much of their forest land in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. Today, developing nations are destroying tropical rainforests to cut timber, to build roads and cattle ranches, and to expand farmlands. Briefly explain how this deforestation affects (1) climate, (2) soil, and (3) biological diversity.

105. Japan recycles about half of its solid waste. About what percent of U.S. garbage is recycled?



The United States produces more garbage per capita than any other nation. About 80 percent of America's solid waste ends up in landfills, but landfill space is rapidly reaching capacity.

The Declaration of Independence

In Congress, July 4, 1776

The Unanimous Declaration of the thirteen United States of America

When in the course of human events it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has refused his assent to laws, the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of the large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature: a right inestimable to them and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses, repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected: whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in time of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

For protecting them by a mock trial from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury;

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments;

For suspending our own legislatures and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

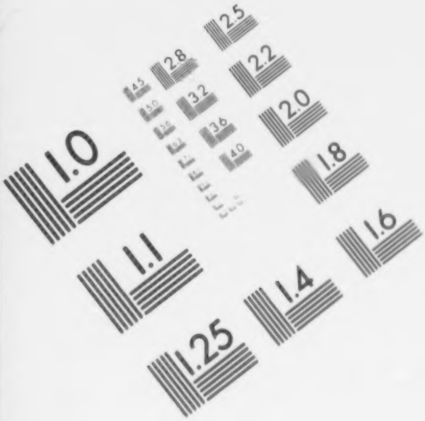
He has constrained our fellow citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

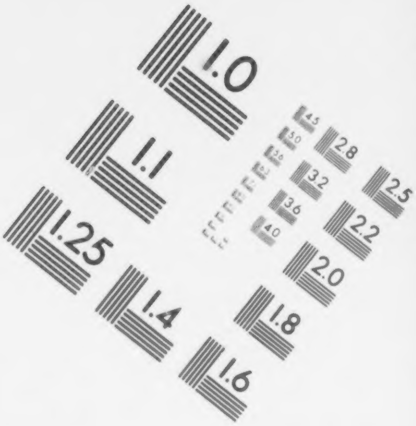
We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states: that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.


1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0

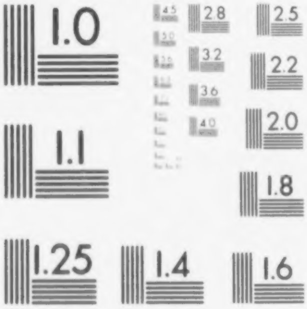
AIIM

Association for Information and Image Management

1100 Wayne Avenue, Suite 1100
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910
301/587-8202


1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0

Centimeter
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
mm
1
2
3
4
5
Inches


1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0

1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

1.0
1.1
1.25
1.4
1.6
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5

MANUFACTURED TO AIIM STANDARDS
BY APPLIED IMAGE, INC.

APPENDIX 2

The U.S. Constitution

Portions of the text printed in italics have been changed by amendment or have gone out of date.

Preamble
We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquility, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

Article I. The Legislative Branch

Section 1. Congress
All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Section 2. House of Representatives
1. Election and Term of Members. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2. Qualifications. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

3. Apportionment of Representatives. Representatives *and direct taxes* shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers *which shall be determined by adding the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons.* The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every 30,000, but each state shall have at least 1 Representative; *and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose 3; Massachusetts, 8; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1; Connecticut, 5; New York, 6; New Jersey, 4; Pennsylvania, 8; Delaware, 1; Maryland, 6; Virginia, 10; North Carolina, 5; South Carolina, 5; and Georgia, 3.*

4. Vacancies. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. Impeachment. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

Section 3. Senate
1. Number of Members and Terms of Office. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each state, *chosen by the legislatures thereof,* for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

2. Classification; Vacancies. *Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.*

3. Qualifications. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

4. The President of the Senate. The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. Other Officers. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of the President of the United States.

6. Impeachments. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Penalty for Conviction. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

Section 4. Elections and Meetings
1. Holding elections. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. Meetings. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, *and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.*

Section 5. Procedure

1. Organization. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

2. Proceedings. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. The Journal. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Adjournment. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

Section 6. Privileges and Restrictions

1. Pay and Privileges. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning home from same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. Restrictions. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

Section 7. Passing Laws

1. Revenue Bills. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

2. How a Bill Becomes a Law. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and, if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Presidential Approval or Veto. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations in the case of a bill.

Section 8. Powers Delegated to Congress

The Congress shall have power

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standards of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post offices and post roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;—and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

Section 9. Powers Denied to the Federal Government

1. *The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year 1808; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding $10 for each person.*

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

4. *No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.*

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

6. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

7. No money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Section 10. Powers Denied to the States

1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3. No state shall, without consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

Article 2. The Executive Branch

Section 1. President and Vice-President

1. Term of Office. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Electoral College. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

3. Former Method of the Electoral System. *The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then from the five* *highest on the list the said house shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-President.*

4. Time of Elections. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. Qualifications for President. No person except a natural-born citizen, *or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution,* shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. Filling Vacancies. *In the case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.*

7. Salary. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Oath of Office. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Section 2. Powers of the President

1. Military Powers. The President shall be commander in chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. Treaties and Appointments. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. Filling Vacancies. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

Section 3. Duties of the President

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

Section 4. Impeachment

The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

Article 3. The Judicial Branch

Section 1. Federal Courts

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Section 2. Jurisdiction of Federal Courts

1. General Jurisdiction. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; *between a state and citizens of another state*; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. Supreme Court Jurisdiction. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. Conduct of Trials. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

Section 3. Treason

1. Definition. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. Punishment. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

Article 4. Relations Among States

Section 1. Official Acts

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

Section 2. Privileges of Citizens

1. Privileges. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. Extradition. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. Fugitive Slaves. *No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.*

Section 3. New States and Territories

1. Admission of New States. New states may be admitted by the Congress into this union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. Powers of Congress Over Territories and Other Property. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

Section 4. Guarantees to the States

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

Article 5. Methods of Amendment

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided *that no amendments which may be made prior to the year 1808 shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and* that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

Article 6. General Provisions

1. Public Debts. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

2. The Supreme Law. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. Oaths of Office. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

Article 7. Ratification

The ratification of the convention of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of the Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

DONE in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present the seventeenth day of September in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

G. Washington—President and deputy from Virginia

NEW HAMPSHIRE
John Langdon
Nicholas Gilman

NORTH CAROLINA
William Blount
Richard Dobbs Spaight
Hugh Williamson

MARYLAND
James McHenry
Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer
Daniel Carroll

PENNSYLVANIA
Benjamin Franklin
Thomas Mifflin
Robert Morris
George Clymer
Thomas FitzSimons
Jared Ingersoll
James Wilson
Gouverneur Morris

NEW YORK
Alexander Hamilton

MASSACHUSETTS
Nathaniel Gorman
Rufus King

SOUTH CAROLINA
John Rutledge
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney
Charles Pinckney
Pierce Butler

VIRGINIA
John Blair
James Madison

DELAWARE
George Read
Gunning Bedford
John Dickinson
Richard Bassett
Jacob Broom

NEW JERSEY
William Livingston
David Brearley
William Paterson
Jonathan Dayton

CONNECTICUT
William Samuel Jackson
Roger Sherman

GEORGIA
William Few
Abraham Baldwin

Amendments to the Constitution (with years ratified)

Amendment 1. Freedom of Religion, Speech, Press, Assembly, and Petition (1791)
Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Amendment 2. Right to Bear Arms (1791)
A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

Amendment 3. Housing of Troops (1791)
No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Amendment 4. Searches and Seizures (1791)
The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Amendment 5. Rights of Accused Persons (1791)
No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous, crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

Amendment 6. Right to a Speedy, Fair Trial (1791)
In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

Amendment 7. Civil Suits (1791)
In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed $20, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reexamined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

Amendment 8. Bails, Fines, Punishments (1791)
Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Amendment 9. Powers Reserved to the People (1791)
The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

Amendment 10. Powers Reserved to the States (1791)
The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

Amendment 11. Suits Against States (1795)
The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

Amendment 12. Electing the President and Vice-President (1804)
The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. *And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.* The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

Amendment 13. Abolition of Slavery (1865)
Section 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

Section 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment 14. Citizenship (1868)
Section 1. Citizenship defined. All persons born or naturalized in the United States and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

Section 2. Apportionment of Representatives. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, *excluding Indians not taxed.* But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the *male* inhabitants of such state, *being twenty-one years of age* and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion, or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such *male* citizens shall bear to the whole number of *male* citizens *twenty-one years of age* in such state.

Section 3. Disability for engaging in insurrection. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

Section 4. Public debt. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

Section 5. Enforcement. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

Amendment 15. Right to Vote (1870)
Section 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any state on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

Section 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment 16. Income Tax (1913)
The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes on incomes, from whatever source derived, without apportionment among the several states, and without regard to any census or enumeration.

Amendment 17. Electing Senators (1913)
Section 1. Method of election. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each state, elected by the people thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote. The electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislatures.

Section 2. Filling vacancies. When vacancies happen in the representation of any state in the Senate, the executive authority of such state shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies: Provided that the legislature of any state may empower the executive thereof to make temporary appointments until the people fill the vacancies by election as the legislature may direct.

Section 3. Not retroactive. *This amendment shall not be so construed as to affect the election or term of any Senator chosen before it becomes valid as part of the Constitution.*

Amendment 18. Prohibition (1919)
Section 1. *After one year from the ratification of this article the manufacture, sale, or transportation of intoxicating liquors within, the importation thereof into, or the exportation thereof from the United States and all territory subject to the jurisdiction thereof for beverage purposes is hereby prohibited.*

Section 2. *The Congress and the several states shall have concurrent power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.*

Section 3. *This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of the several states, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the states by the Congress.*

Amendment 19. Women's Suffrage (1920)
Section 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any state on account of sex.

Section 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment 20. "Lame Duck" Amendment (1933)
Section 1. Beginning of terms. The terms of the President and Vice-President shall end at noon on the twentieth day of January, and the terms of Senators and Representatives at noon on the third day of January, of the years in which such terms would have ended if this article had not been ratified; and the terms of their successors shall then begin.

Section 2. Beginning of Congressional sessions. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall begin at noon on the third day of January, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

Section 3. Presidential succession. If at the time fixed for the beginning of the term of the President, the President-elect shall have died, the Vice-President-elect shall become President. If a President shall not have been chosen before the time fixed for the beginning of his term, or if the President-elect shall have failed to qualify, then the Vice-President-elect shall act as President until a President shall have qualified; and the Congress may by law provide for the case wherein neither a President-elect nor a Vice-President-elect shall have qualified, declaring who shall then act as President, or the manner in which one who is to act shall be selected, and such person shall act accordingly until a President or Vice-President shall have qualified.

Section 4. Filling Presidential vacancy. The Congress may by law provide for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the House of Representatives may choose a President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them, and for the case of the death of any of the persons from whom the Senate may choose a Vice-President whenever the right of choice shall have devolved upon them.

Section 5. Effective date. *Sections 1 and 2 shall take effect on the 15th day of October following the ratification of this article.*

Section 6. Time limit for ratification. *This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states within seven years from the date of its submission.*

Amendment 21. Repeal of Prohibition (1933)
Section 1. The eighteenth article of amendment to the Constitution of the United States is hereby repealed.

Section 2. The transportation or importation into any state, territory, or possession of the United States for delivery or use therein of intoxicating liquors, in violation of the laws thereof, is hereby prohibited.

Section 3. *This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by conventions in the several states, as provided in the Constitution, within seven years from the date of the submission hereof to the states by the Congress.*

Amendment 22. Two-Term Limit for Presidents (1951)
Section 1. No person shall be elected to the office of the President more than twice, and no person who has held the office of President, or acted as President, for more than two years of a term to which some other person was elected President shall be elected to the office of the President more than once. *(But this article shall not apply to any person holding the office of President when this article was proposed by the Congress, and shall not prevent any person who may be holding the office of President, or acting as President, during the term within which this article becomes operative from holding the office of President or acting as President during the remainder of such term.)*

Section 2. *This article shall be inoperative unless it shall have been ratified as an amendment to the Constitution by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states within seven years from the date of its submission to the states by the Congress.*

Amendment 23. Presidential Electors for District of Columbia (1961)

Section 1. The district constituting the seat of government of the United States shall appoint in such manner as the Congress may direct:

A number of electors of President and Vice-President equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives in Congress to which the district would be entitled if it were a state, but in no event more than the least populous state; they shall be in addition to those appointed by the states, but they shall be considered, for the purposes of the election of President and Vice-President, to be electors appointed by a state; and they shall meet in the district and perform such duties as provided by the twelfth article of amendment.

Section 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment 24. Poll Taxes (1964)
Section 1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote in any primary or other election for President or Vice-President, for electors for President or Vice-President, or for Senator or Representative in Congress, shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any state by reason of failure to pay any poll tax or other tax.

Section 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Amendment 25. Presidential Disability and Succession (1967)
Section 1. In case of the removal of the President from office or of his death or resignation, the Vice-President shall become President.

Section 2. Whenever there is a vacancy in the office of the Vice-President, the President shall nominate a Vice-President who shall take office upon confirmation by a majority vote of both houses of Congress.

Section 3. Whenever the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that he is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, and until he transmits to them a written declaration to the contrary, such powers and duties shall be discharged by the Vice-President as Acting President.

Section 4. Whenever the Vice-President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive departments or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice-President shall immediately assume the powers and duties of the office as Acting President.

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

Thereafter, when the President transmits to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives his written declaration that no inability exists, he shall resume the powers and duties of his office unless the Vice-President and a majority of either the principal officers of the executive department or of such other body as Congress may by law provide, transmit within four days to the President pro tempore of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives their written declaration that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office. Thereupon Congress shall decide the issue, assembling within 48 hours for that purpose if not in session. If the Congress, within 21 days after receipt of the latter written declaration, or, if Congress is not in session, within 21 days after Congress is required to assemble, determines by two-thirds vote of both houses that the President is unable to discharge the powers and duties of his office, the Vice-President shall continue to discharge the same as Acting President; otherwise, the President shall assume the powers and duties of his office.

Amendment 26. Voting Age Lowered to 18 (1971)
Section 1. The right of citizens of the United States, who are 18 years of age or older, to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any state on account of age.

Section 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Great Issues in U.S. History

In preparation for the Citizen Bee, you should read the following documents and speeches. This set of documents is intended to offer a sampling of political issues of central importance in U.S. history.

I. Domestic Issues

A. Women's Rights: Seneca Falls Declaration (1848)
B. Extension of Slavery: "A House Divided" by Abraham Lincoln (1858)
C. Labor Policy: "A National Labor Policy" by Frances Perkins (1936)
D. Civil Rights: "Letter from Birmingham Jail" by Martin Luther King, Jr. (1963)

II. Foreign Policy Issues

A. Isolationism: George Washington's Farewell Address (1796)
B. World War: Woodrow Wilson's Fourteen Points (1918)
C. Cold War: The Truman Doctrine (1947)
D. Arms Control: "Address on the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty" by John F. Kennedy (1963)

After reading each document and speech, as well as its introduction, you should be able to list its major points; identify all policies, names, and events to which it refers; and define all terms. In addition, participants in the Citizen Bee competition may be asked to identify passages from these works and the authors of those passages.

I. Domestic Issues

A. Women's Rights: Seneca Falls Declaration (1848)

The first women's rights convention in the United States, called by Lucretia Mott and Elizabeth Cady Stanton, was held in Seneca Falls, New York, on July 19 and 20, 1848. The convention adopted the "Declaration of Sentiments" reproduced below.

Declaration of Sentiments

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one portion of the family of man to assume among the people of the earth a position different from that which they have hitherto occupied, but one to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes that impel them to such a course.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men and women are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that to secure these rights governments are instituted, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. Whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of those who suffer from it to refuse allegiance to it, and to insist upon the institution of a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness.

Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience has shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they were accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their duty to throw off such government and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of the women under this government, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to demand the equal station to which they are entitled.

The history of mankind is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations on the part of man toward woman, having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over her. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

He has never permitted her to exercise her inalienable right to the elective franchise.

He has compelled her to submit to laws in the formation of which she had no voice.

He has withheld from her rights which are given to the most ignorant and degraded men, both natives and foreigners.

Having deprived her of this first right of a citizen, the elective franchise, thereby leaving her without representation in the halls of legislation, he has oppressed her on all sides.

He has made her, if married, in the eye of the law, civilly dead.

He has taken from her all right in property, even to the wages she earns.

He has made her, morally, an irresponsible being, as she can commit many crimes with impunity, provided they be done in the presence of her husband. In the covenant of marriage, she is compelled to promise obedience to her husband, he becoming, to all intents and purposes, her master—the law giving him power to deprive her of her liberty and to administer chastisement.

He has so framed the laws of divorce, as to what shall be the proper causes and, in case of separation, to whom the guardianship of the children shall be given, as to be wholly regardless of the happiness of women—the law, in all cases, going upon a false supposition of the supremacy of man and giving all power into his hands.

After depriving her of all rights as a married woman, if single and the owner of property, he has taxed her to support a government which recognizes her only when her property can be made profitable to it.

He has monopolized nearly all the profitable employments, and from those she is permitted to follow, she receives but a scanty remuneration. He closes against her all the avenues to wealth and distinction which he considers most honorable to himself. As a teacher of theology, medicine, or law, she is not known.

He has denied her the facilities for obtaining a thorough education, all colleges being closed against her.

He allows her in church, as well as state, but a subordinate position, claiming apostolic authority for her exclusion from the ministry, and, with some exceptions, from any public participation in the affairs of the church.

He has created a false public sentiment by giving to the world a different code of morals for men and women, by which moral delinquencies which exclude women from society are not only tolerated but deemed of little account in man.

He has usurped the prerogative of Jehovah himself, claiming it as his right to assign for her a sphere of action, when that belongs to her conscience and to her God.

He has endeavored, in every way that he could, to destroy her confidence in her own powers, to lessen her self-respect, and to make her willing to lead a dependent and abject life.

Now, in view of this entire disfranchisement of one-half the people of this country, their social and religious degradation, in view of the unjust laws above mentioned, and because women do feel themselves aggrieved, oppressed, and fraudulently deprived of their most sacred rights, we insist that they have immediate admission to all the rights and privileges which belong to them as citizens of the United States.

In entering upon the great work before us, we anticipate no small amount of misconception, misrepresentation, and ridicule; but we shall use every instrumentality within our power to effect our object. We shall employ agents, circulate tracts, petition the state and national legislatures, and endeavor to enlist the pulpit and the press in our behalf. We hope this Convention will be followed by a series of conventions embracing every part of the country.

B. Extension of Slavery: "A House Divided" by Abraham Lincoln (1858)

Abraham Lincoln delivered the following speech, entitled "A House Divided," to the Republican State Convention at Springfield, Illinois, on June 16, 1858. The speech launched his campaign for the seat held by Stephen A. Douglas in the U.S. Senate. Regarding the expansion of slavery, Douglas believed in popular sovereignty—that the western territories should decide for themselves whether to be slave or free, whereas the Republicans sought to exclude slavery from the territories.

Mr. President and Gentlemen of the Convention:

If we could first know where we are and whither we are tending, we could better judge what to do and how to do it. We are now far into the fifth year since a policy was initiated with the avowed object and confident promise of putting an end to slavery agitation. Under the operation of that policy, that agitation has not only not ceased but has constantly augmented. In my opinion, it will not cease until a crisis shall have been reached and passed. "A house divided against itself cannot stand." I believe this government cannot endure, permanently, half slave and half free. I do not expect the Union to be dissolved; I do not expect the house to fall; but I do expect it will cease to be divided. It will become all one thing, or all the other. Either the opponents of slavery will arrest the further spread of it and place it where the public mind shall rest in the belief that it is in the course of ultimate extinction, or its advocates will push it forward till it shall become alike lawful in all the states, old as well as new, North as well as South.

Have we no tendency to the latter condition?

Let anyone who doubts carefully contemplate that now almost complete legal combination—piece of machinery, so to speak—compounded of the Nebraska doctrine and the Dred Scott decision. Let him consider, not only what work the machinery is adapted to do, and how well adapted, but also let him study the history of its construction and trace, if he can, or rather fail, if he can, to trace the evidences of design and concert of action among its chief architects, from the beginning.

The new year of 1854 found slavery excluded from more than half the states by state constitutions and from most of the national territory by congressional prohibition. Four days later commenced the struggle which ended in repealing that congressional prohibition. This opened all the national territory to slavery and was the first point gained.

But, so far, Congress *only* had acted; and an endorsement by the people, real or apparent, was indispensable to save the point already gained and give chance for more.

This necessity had not been overlooked, but had been provided for, as well as might be, in the notable argument of "squatter sovereignty," otherwise called "sacred right of self-government," which latter phrase, though expressive of the only rightful basis of any government, was so perverted in this attempted use of it as to amount to just this: That if any *one* man choose to enslave *another*, no *third* man shall be allowed to object. That argument was incorporated into the Nebraska Bill itself, in the language which follows:

> It being the true intent and meaning of this act not to legislate slavery into any territory or state, nor to exclude it therefrom, but to leave the people thereof perfectly free to form and regulate their domestic institutions in their own way, subject only to the Constitution of the United States.

Then opened the roar of loose declamation in favor of "squatter sovereignty" and "sacred right of self-government." "But," said opposition members, "let us amend the bill so as to expressly declare that the people of the territory may exclude slavery." "Not we," said the friends of the measure; and down they voted the amendment.

While the Nebraska Bill was passing through Congress, a law case, involving the question of a Negro's freedom, by reason of his owner having voluntarily taken him first into a free state and then into a territory covered by the congressional prohibition, and held him as a slave for a long time in each, was passing through the United States Circuit Court for the district of Missouri; and both Nebraska Bill and lawsuit were brought to a decision in the same month of May 1854. The Negro's name was Dred Scott, which name now designates the decision finally made in the case. Before the then next presidential election, the law case came to, and was argued in, the Supreme Court of the United States; but the decision of it was deferred until after the election. Still, before the election, Senator Trumbull, on the floor of the Senate, requested the leading advocate of the Nebraska Bill to state his opinion whether the people of a territory can constitutionally exclude slavery from their limits; and the latter answers: "That is a question for the Supreme Court."

The election came. Mr. Buchanan was elected, and the endorsement, such as it was, secured. That was the second point gained. The endorsement, however, fell short of a clear popular majority by nearly 400,000 votes, and so, perhaps, was not overwhelmingly reliable and satisfactory. The outgoing President, in his last annual message, as impressively as possible echoed back upon the people the weight and authority of the endorsement. The Supreme Court met again, did not announce their decision, but ordered a reargument.

The presidential inauguration came, and still no decision of the Court; but the incoming President, in his inaugural address, fervently exhorted the people to abide by the forthcoming decision, whatever it might be. Then, in a few days, came the decision.

The reputed author of the Nebraska Bill finds an early occasion to make a speech at the capital endorsing the Dred Scott decision, and vehemently denouncing all opposition to it. The new President, too, seizes the early occasion of the Silliman letter to endorse and strongly construe that decision, and to express his astonishment that any different view had ever been entertained!

At length a squabble springs up between the President and the author of the Nebraska Bill, on the mere question of *fact*, whether the Lecompton constitution was or was not in any just sense made by the people of Kansas; and in that quarrel the latter declares that all he wants is a fair vote for the people, and that he cares not whether slavery be voted *down* or voted *up*. I do not understand his declaration, that he cares not whether slavery be voted down or voted up, to be intended by him other than as an apt definition of the policy he would impress upon the public mind—the principle for which he declares he has suffered so much and is ready to suffer to the end. And well may he cling to that principle! If he has any parental feeling, well may he cling to it. That principle is the only shred left of his original Nebraska doctrine.

Under the Dred Scott decision, "squatter sovereignty" squatted out of existence, tumbled down like temporary scaffolding; like the mold at the foundry, served through one blast and fell back into loose sand; helped to carry an election and then was kicked to the winds. His late joint struggle with the Republicans against the Lecompton constitution involves nothing of the original Nebraska doctrine. That struggle was made on a point—the right of a people to make their own constitution—upon which he and the Republicans have never differed.

The several points of the Dred Scott decision, in connection with Senator Douglas' "care not" policy, constitute the piece of machinery in its present state of advancement. This was the third point gained. The working points of that machinery are:

First, that no Negro slave, imported as such from Africa, and no descendant of such slave can ever be a citizen of any state in the sense of that term as used in the Constitution of the United States. This point is made in order to deprive the Negro, in every possible event, of the benefit of that provision of the United States Constitution which declares that "the citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states."

Second, that, "subject to the Constitution of the United States," neither Congress nor a territorial legislature can exclude slavery from any United States territory. This point is made in order that individual men may fill up the territories with slaves, without danger of losing them as property, and thus enhance the chances of permanency to the institution through all the future.

Third, that whether the holding a Negro in actual slavery in a free state makes him free, as against the holder, the United States courts will not decide, but will leave to be decided by the courts of any slave state the Negro may be forced into by the master. This point is made, not to be pressed immediately but, if acquiesced in for awhile, and apparently endorsed by the people at an election, then to sustain the logical conclusion that what Dred Scott's master might lawfully do with Dred Scott in the free state of Illinois, every other master may lawfully do with any other one, or 1,000 slaves, in Illinois or in any other free state.

Auxiliary to all this, and working hand in hand with it, the Nebraska doctrine, or what is left of it, is to educate and mold public opinion, at least Northern public opinion, not to care whether slavery is voted down or voted up. This shows exactly where we now are; and partially, also, whither we are tending.

It will throw additional light on the latter to go back and run the mind over the string of historical facts already stated. Several things will now appear less dark and mysterious than they did when they were transpiring. The people were to be left "perfectly free," "subject only to the Constitution." What the Constitution had to do with it, outsiders could not then see. Plainly enough, now, it was an exactly fitted niche for the Dred Scott decision to afterward come in and declare the perfect freedom of the people to be just no freedom at all.

Why was the amendment expressly declaring the right of the people voted down? Plainly enough, now, the adoption of it would have spoiled the niche for the Dred Scott decision. Why was the Court decision held up? Why even a senator's individual opinion withheld till after the presidential election? Plainly enough, now, the speaking out then would have damaged the "perfectly free" argument upon which the election was to be carried. Why the outgoing President's felicitation on the endorsement? Why the delay of a reargument? Why the incoming president's advance exhortation in favor of the decision? These things look like the cautious patting and petting of a spirited horse preparatory to mounting him when it is dreaded that he may give the rider a fall. And why the hasty after-endorsement of the decision by the President and others?

We cannot absolutely know that all these exact adaptations are the result of preconcert. But when we see a lot of framed timbers, different portions of which we know have been gotten out at different times and places and by different workmen—Stephen, Franklin, Roger, and James, for instance—and when we see these timbers joined together and see they exactly make the frame of a house or a mill, all the tenons and mortises exactly fitting, and all the lengths and proportions of the different pieces exactly adapted to their respective places, and not a piece too many or too few, not omitting even scaffolding, or, if a single piece be lacking, we see the place in the frame exactly fitted and prepared yet to bring such piece in—in such a case, we find it impossible not to believe that Stephen and Franklin and Roger and James all understood one another from the beginning, and all worked upon a common plan or draft drawn up before the first blow was struck.

C. Labor Policy: "A National Labor Policy"
by Frances Perkins (1936)

The first female cabinet member, Frances Perkins, served as secretary of labor from 1933 to 1945. In the following excerpt, she sets forth her views about the nation's labor policy.

Labor policy in a democracy is not a program conceived by a government. It is a program of action which the people who earn their living as wage earners and those who employ them in a profit-making enterprise must work out together in a society which develops naturally out of the work that they do and the life that they lead. The function of government is to serve as a stimulating agent to facilitate the formation of such a policy, which will be just and fair to all the people and in the line of human progress.

Hand in hand with the growth of our institutions, a labor policy is developing. It is in somewhat more than a rudimentary stage. It is, like all social institutions, a growing, living thing, subject to such change and revision as the economic and political consciousness of the wage-earning and employing groups, the experiences of life, and a growing sense of justness make possible. It will be realistic, flexible, practical, and based upon the habits of people and the prevailing necessities of production and distribution, rather than upon predetermined conceptions of human relationships.

Among the first items in this growing labor policy of the American government are the following:

1. That the government ought to do everything in its power to establish minimum basic standards for labor, below which competition should not be permitted to force standards of health, wages, or hours.

2. That the government ought to use its influence to bring about arrangements which will make possible peaceful settlements of controversies and relieve labor of the necessity of resorting to strikes to secure equitable conditions and the right to be heard.

3. That the ideal of government should be, through legislation and through cooperation between employers and workers, to make every job the best that the human mind can devise as to physical conditions, human relations, and wages.

4. That government should encourage such organization and development of wage earners as will give status and stability to labor as a recognized important group of citizens having a contribution to make to economic and political thought and to the cultural life of the community.

5. That government ought to arrange that labor play its part in the study and development of any economic policies for the future of the United States.

6. That the government should encourage mutuality between labor and employers in the improvement of production and in the development in both groups of a philosophy of self-government in the public interest. If labor's rights are defined by law and by government, then certain obligations will of course be expected of wage earners, and it is for the public interest that those obligations should be defined by labor itself, and that such discipline as is necessary should be self-imposed and not imposed from without. This is the basis of all professional codes of ethics in modern society. . . .

With the guarantee to labor of the right of free association and the provision of necessary safeguards against abuse of the right, with the establishment of the National Labor Relations Board, with the assistance of such special industrial boards as in textiles, steel, railroad transportation, and bituminous coal, and with the Conciliation Service of the United States Department of Labor, we should be able to look forward confidently to a fairer and more scientific handling of the problems involved in relationships between employers and employees than we have ever had before.

This means not merely that strikes and lockouts may be fewer but that the fundamental causes of such disorders may be intelligently diagnosed and remedies quickly provided through the agency of such boards. Wage earners and employers have shown a growing disposition to avail themselves of the fair and impartial services of these government boards. They are really set up for the purpose of keeping industrial peace for the benefit of employers and workers and in the public interest. These agencies will gather authority as the years go on; and as the spirit of cooperation between employers and employees continues to grow, as they become increasingly aware that it is in their interest and in the interest of the public as well, we will find the good offices of these boards being sought more and more as a voluntary substitute for long and costly strikes and lockouts.

D. Civil Rights: "Letter from Birmingham Jail"

by Martin Luther King, Jr. (1963)

In April 1963, the Reverend Martin Luther King, Jr., was arrested in Birmingham, Alabama, while leading an antisegregation drive against the city. A group of Birmingham clergymen charged that King was in their city as an "outside agitator." King responded in a letter written from his jail cell, which is excerpted below.

My Dear Fellow Clergymen:

While confined here in the Birmingham City Jail, I came across your recent statement calling my present activities "unwise and untimely." Seldom do I pause to answer criticism of my work and ideas. If I sought to answer all the criticisms that cross my desk, my secretaries would have little time for anything other than such correspondence in the course of the day, and I would have no time for constructive work. But since I feel that you are men of genuine goodwill and that your criticisms are sincerely set forth, I want to try to answer your statement in what I hope will be patient and reasonable terms. . . .

You deplore the demonstrations taking place in Birmingham. But your statement, I am sorry to say, fails to express a similar concern for the conditions that brought about the demonstrations. . . . It is unfortunate that demonstrations are taking place in Birmingham, but it is even more unfortunate that the city's white power structure left the Negro community with no alternative. . . .

You may well ask, "Why direct action? Why sit-ins, marches, etc.? Isn't negotiation a better path?" You are quite right in calling for negotiation. Indeed, this is the very purpose of direct action. Nonviolent direct action seeks to foster such a tension that a community which has constantly refused to negotiate is forced to confront the issue. It seeks so to dramatize the issue that it can no longer be ignored. . . . I have earnestly opposed violent tension, but there is a type of constructive, nonviolent tension which is necessary for growth. Just as Socrates felt that it was necessary to create a tension in the mind so that individuals could shake off the bondage of myths and half-truths and rise to the realm of creative analysis and objective appraisal, so must we see the need for nonviolent gadflies to create the kind of tension in society that will help men rise from the dark depths of prejudice and racism to the majestic heights of understanding and brotherhood.

The purpose of our direct-action program is to create a situation so crisis-packed that it will inevitably open the door to negotiation. I therefore concur with you in your call for negotiation. Too long has our beloved Southland been bogged down in a tragic effort to live in monologue rather than dialogue. . . .

We have waited for more than 340 years for our constitutional and God-given rights. The nations of Asia and Africa are moving with jetlike speed toward gaining political independence, but we still creep at horse-and-buggy pace toward gaining a cup of coffee at a lunch counter. Perhaps it is easy for those who have never felt the stinging darts of segregation to say "Wait." But when you have seen vicious mobs lynch your mothers and fathers at will and drown your sisters and brothers at whim; when you have seen hate-filled policemen curse, kick, and even kill your black brothers and sisters with impunity; when you see the vast majority of your 20 million Negro brothers smothering in an air-tight cage of poverty in the midst of an affluent society; when you suddenly find your tongue twisted as you seek to explain to your six-year-old daughter why she can't go to the public amusement park that has just been advertised on television, and see tears welling up when she is told that Funtown is closed to colored children, and see ominous clouds of inferiority beginning to form in her little mental sky, and see her beginning to distort her personality by unconsciously developing a bitterness toward white people; when you have to concoct an answer for a five year-old son asking, "Daddy, why do white people treat colored people so mean?"; when you take a cross-country drive and find it necessary to sleep night after night in the uncomfortable corners of your automobile because no motel will accept you; when you are humiliated day in and day out by nagging signs reading "white" and "colored"; when your first name becomes "nigger," and your middle name becomes "boy" (however old you are), and your last name becomes "John," and your wife and mother are never given the respected title of "Mrs."; when you are harried by day and haunted by night by the fact that you are a Negro, never quite knowing what to expect next, and are plagued with inner fears and outer resentments; when you are forever fighting a degenerating sense of "nobodiness"—then you will understand why we find it difficult to wait. There comes a time when the cup of endurance runs over, and men are no longer willing to be plunged into an abyss of injustice where they experience the bleakness of corroding despair. I hope, sirs, you can understand our legitimate and unavoidable impatience.

You express a great deal of anxiety over our willingness to break laws. This is certainly a legitimate concern. Since we so diligently urge people to obey the Supreme Court's decision of 1954 outlawing segregation in the public schools, at first glance it may seem rather paradoxical for us consciously to break laws. One may well ask, "How can you advocate breaking some laws and obeying others?" The answer lies in the fact that there are two types of laws: just and unjust. I agree with St. Augustine that "an unjust law is no law at all." . . .

Let us consider some of the ways in which a law can be unjust. A law is unjust, for example, if the majority group compels a minority group to obey the statute but does not make it binding on itself. By the same token, a law in all probability is just if the majority is itself willing to obey it. Also, a law is unjust if it is inflicted on a minority that, as a result of being denied the right to vote, had no part in enacting or devising the law. Who can say that the legislature of Alabama which set up that state's segregation laws was democratically elected? Throughout Alabama all sorts of devious methods are used to prevent Negroes from becoming registered voters, and there are some counties in which, even though Negroes constitute a majority of the population, not a single Negro is registered. Can any law enacted under such circumstances be considered democratically structured?

Sometimes a law is just on its face and unjust in its application. For instance, I have been arrested on a charge of parading without a permit. Now there is nothing wrong in having an ordinance which requires a permit for a parade. But such an ordinance becomes unjust when it is used to maintain segregation and to deny citizens the First Amendment privilege of peaceful assembly and protest.

I hope you are able to see the distinction I am trying to point out. In no sense do I advocate evading the law, as would the rabid segregationist. That would lead to anarchy. One who breaks an unjust law must do so *openly, lovingly,* and with a willingness to accept the penalty. I submit that an individual who breaks a law that conscience tells him is unjust and who willingly accepts the penalty of imprisonment in order to arouse the conscience of the community over its injustice is in reality expressing the highest respect for law. . . .

. . . I must confess that over the past few years I have been gravely disappointed with the white moderate. I have almost reached the regrettable conclusion that the Negro's great stumbling block in his stride toward freedom is not the white Citizen's Counciler or the Ku Klux Klanner but the white moderate who is more devoted to "order" than to justice; who prefers a negative peace which is the absence of tension to a positive peace which is the presence of justice; who constantly says "I agree with you in the goal you seek, but I cannot agree with your methods"; who paternalistically believes he can set the timetable for another man's freedom; who lives by a mythical concept of time and who constantly advises the Negro to wait for a "more convenient season." Shallow understanding from people of goodwill is more frustrating than absolute misunderstanding from people of ill will. . . .

You speak of our activity in Birmingham as extreme. At first I was rather disappointed that fellow clergymen would see my nonviolent efforts as those of an extremist. I began thinking about the fact that I stand in the middle of two opposing forces in the Negro community. One is a force of complacency made up of Negroes who, as a result of long years of oppression, are so completely drained of self-respect and a sense of "somebodiness" that they have adjusted to segregation, and of a few middle-class Negroes who, because of a degree of academic and economic security and because in some ways they profit by segregation, have unconsciously become insensitive to the problems of the masses. The other force is one of bitterness and hatred, and it comes perilously close to advocating violence. It is expressed in the various black nationalist groups that are springing up across the nation, the largest and best-known being Elijah Muhammad's Muslim movement. Nourished by the Negro's frustration over the continued existence of racial discrimination, this movement is made up of people who have lost faith in America, who have absolutely repudiated Christianity, and who have concluded that the white man is an incorrigible "devil."

I have tried to stand between these two forces, saying that we need emulate neither the "do-nothingism" of the complacent nor the hatred of the black nationalist. For there is the more excellent way of love and nonviolent protest. I am grateful to God that, through the influence of the Negro church, the way of nonviolence became an integral part of our struggle. . . .

Let me take note of my other major disappointment. Though there are some notable exceptions, I have also been disappointed with the white church and its leadership. I do not say this as one of those negative critics who can always find something wrong with the church. I say this as a minister of the gospel, who loves the church; who was nurtured in its bosom; who has been sustained by its spiritual blessings and who will remain true to it as long as the cord of life shall lengthen.

When I was suddenly catapulted into the leadership of the bus protest in Montgomery, Alabama, a few years ago, I felt we would be supported by the white church. I felt that the white ministers, priests, and rabbis of the South would be among our strongest allies. Instead, some have been outright opponents, refusing to understand the freedom movement and misrepresenting its leaders; all too many others have been more cautious than courageous and have remained silent and secure behind stained-glass windows. . . .

I hope the church as a whole will meet the challenge of this decisive hour. But even if the church does not come to the aid of justice, I have no despair about the future. I have no fear about the outcome of our struggle in Birmingham, even if our motives are at present misunderstood. We will reach the goal of freedom in Birmingham and all over the nation, because the goal of America is freedom. . . .

Reprinted by permission of Joan Daves; © 1963, 1964 by Martin Luther King, Jr.

II. Foreign Policy Issues

A. Isolationism: George Washington's Farewell Address (1796)

George Washington prepared the following address primarily to announce that he would not run for a third term as president, but it also contains his advice for the young nation. The address was never delivered as a speech, but rather printed in the newspapers in September 1796.

Friends and Fellow Citizens:

The alternate domination of one faction over another, sharpened by the spirit of revenge natural to party dissension, which in different ages and countries has perpetrated the most horrid enormities, is itself a frightful despotism. But this leads at length to a more formal and permanent despotism. The disorders and miseries which result gradually incline the minds of men to seek security and repose in the absolute power of an individual; and sooner or later the chief of some prevailing faction, more able or more fortunate than his competitors, turns this disposition to the purposes of his own elevation on the ruins of public liberty.

Without looking forward to an extremity of this kind (which nevertheless ought not to be entirely out of sight), the common and continual mischiefs of the spirit of party are sufficient to make it the interest and duty of a wise people to discourage and restrain it. . . .

There is an opinion that parties in free countries are useful checks upon the administration of the government and serve to keep alive the spirit of liberty. This within certain limits is probably true, and, in governments of a monarchical cast, patriotism may look with indulgence, if not with favor, upon the spirit of party. But in those of the popular character, in governments purely elective, it is a spirit not to be encouraged. . . .

The necessity of reciprocal checks in the exercise of political power, by dividing and distributing it into different depositories, and constituting each the guardian of the public weal against invasions by the others, has been evinced by experiments ancient and modern, some of them in our country and under our own eyes. To preserve them must be as necessary as to institute them. If, in the opinion of the people, the distribution or modification of the constitutional powers be in any particular wrong, let it be corrected by an amendment in the way which the Constitution designates. But let there be no change by usurpation; for, though this, in one instance, may be the instrument of good, it is the customary weapon by which free governments are destroyed. The precedent must always greatly overbalance in permanent evil any partial or transient benefit which the use can at any time yield.

Of all the dispositions and habits which lead to political prosperity, religion and morality are indispensable supports. . . .

It is substantially true that virtue or morality is a necessary spring of popular government. The rule indeed extends with more or less force to every species of free government. Who that is a sincere friend to it can look with indifference upon attempts to shake the foundation of the fabric?

Promote, then, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. In proportion as the structure of a government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened.

As a very important source of strength and security, cherish public credit. One method of preserving it is to use it as sparingly as possible, avoiding occasions of expense by cultivating peace, but remembering also that timely disbursements to prepare for danger frequently prevent much greater disbursements to repel it; avoiding likewise the accumulation of debt, not only by shunning occasions of expense but by vigorous exertions in time of peace to discharge the debts which unavoidable wars may have occasioned, not ungenerously throwing upon posterity the burden which we ourselves ought to bear. The execution of these maxims belongs to your representatives, but it is necessary that public opinion should cooperate. . . .

Observe good faith and justice toward all nations. Cultivate peace and harmony with all. Religion and morality enjoin this conduct; and can it be that good policy does not equally enjoin it? It will be worthy of a free, enlightened, and, at no distant period, a great nation to give to mankind the magnanimous and too novel example of a people always guided by an exalted justice and benevolence. Who can doubt that in the course of time and things the fruits of such a plan would richly repay any temporary advantages which might be lost by a steady adherence to it? . . .

In the execution of such a plan nothing is more essential than that permanent, inveterate antipathies against particular nations and passionate attachments for others should be excluded and that in place of them just and amicable feelings toward all should be cultivated. The nation which indulges toward another an habitual hatred or an habitual fondness is in some degree a slave. It is a slave to its animosity or to its affection, either of which is sufficient to lead it astray from its duty and its interest. Antipathy in one nation against another disposes each more readily to offer insult and injury, to lay hold of slight causes of umbrage, and to be haughty and intractable when accidental or trifling occasions of dispute occur. . . .

So, likewise, a passionate attachment of one nation for another produces a variety of evils. Sympathy for the favorite nation, facilitating the illusion of an imaginary common interest in cases where no real common interest exits, and infusing into one the enmities of the other, betrays the former into a participation in the quarrels and wars of the latter without adequate inducement or justification. It leads also to concessions to the favorite nation of privileges denied to others, which is apt doubly to injure the nation making the concessions, by unnecessarily parting with what ought to have been retained, and by exciting jealousy, ill will, and disposition to retaliate in the parties from whom equal privileges are withheld. . . .

Against the insidious wiles of foreign influence, I conjure you to believe me, fellow citizens, the jealousy of a free people ought to be *constantly* awake, since history and experience prove that foreign influence is one of the most baneful foes of republican government. But that jealousy, to be useful, must be impartial, else it becomes the instrument of the very influence to be avoided instead of a defense against it. Excessive partiality for one foreign nation and excessive dislike of another cause those whom they actuate to see danger only on one side and serve to veil and even second the arts of influence on the other. Real patriots, who may resist the intrigues of the favorite, are liable to become suspected and odious, while its tools and dupes usurp the applause and confidence of the people to surrender their interests.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is in extending our commercial relations to have with them as little political connection as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be filled with perfect good faith. Here let us stop.

Europe has a set of primary interests which to us have none, or a very remote relation. Hence she must be engaged in frequent controversies, the causes of which are essentially foreign to our concerns. Hence, therefore, it must be unwise in us to implicate ourselves, by artificial ties, in the ordinary vicissitudes of her politics or the ordinary combinations and collisions of her friendships or enmities.

Our detached and distant situation invites and enables us to pursue a different course. If we remain one people, under an efficient government, the period is not far off when we may defy material injury from external annoyance; when we may take such an attitude as will cause the neutrality we may at any time resolve upon to be scrupulously respected; when belligerent nations, under the impossibility of making acquisitions upon us, will not lightly hazard the giving us provocation; when we may choose peace or war, as our interest guided by our justice shall counsel.

Why forgo the advantages of so peculiar a situation? Why quit our own to stand upon foreign ground? Why, by interweaving our destiny with that of any part of Europe, entangle our peace and prosperity in the toils of European ambition, rivalship, interest, humor, or caprice?

It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world. So far, I mean, as we are now at liberty to do it, for let me not be understood as capable of patronizing infidelity to existing engagements (I hold the maxim no less applicable to public than to private affairs that honesty is always the best policy). I repeat it, therefore: let those engagements be observed in their genuine sense. But, in my opinion, it is unnecessary and would be unwise to extend them.

Taking care always to keep ourselves, by suitable establishments, on a respectably defensive posture, we may safely trust to temporary alliances for extraordinary emergencies.

Harmony, liberal intercourse with all nations are recommended by policy, humanity, and interest. But even our commercial policy should hold an equal and impartial hand, neither seeking nor granting exclusive favors or preferences; consulting the natural course of things; diffusing and diversifying by gentle means the streams of commerce but forcing nothing; establishing with powers so disposed, in order to give to trade a stable course, to define the rights of our merchants, and to enable the government to support them, conventional rules of intercourse, the best that present circumstances and mutual opinion will permit, but temporary and liable to be from time to time abandoned or varied, as experience and circumstances shall dictate; constantly keeping in view that it is folly in one nation to look for disinterested favors from another; that it must pay with a portion of its independence for whatever it may accept under that character; that, by such acceptance, it may place itself in the condition of having given equivalents for nominal favors and yet of being reproached with ingratitude for not giving more. There can be no greater error than to expect, or calculate, upon real favors from nation to nation. It is an illusion which experience must cure, which a just pride ought to discard. . . .

In relation to the still subsisting war in Europe, my proclamation of the 22nd of April, 1793, is the index to my plan. Sanctioned by your approving voice and by that of your representatives in both houses of Congress, the spirit of that measure has continually governed me—uninfluenced by any attempts to deter or divert me from it.

After deliberate examination with the aid of the best lights I could obtain, I was well satisfied that our country, under all the circumstances of the case, had a right to take, and was bound in duty and interest to take, a neutral position. . . .

The inducements of interest for observing that conduct will best be referred to your own reflections and experience. With me, a predominant motive has been to endeavor to gain time to our country to settle and mature its yet recent institutions, and to progress without interruption to that degree of strength and consistency which is necessary to give it, humanly speaking, the command of its own fortune.

B. World War: Woodrow Wilson's Fourteen Points (1918)

President Woodrow Wilson set forth his plan for peace after World War I, known as the Fourteen Points, in the following address to Congress on January 8, 1918.

It will be our wish and purpose that the processes of peace, when they are begun, shall be absolutely open, and that they shall involve and permit henceforth no secret understandings of any kind. The day of conquest and aggrandizement is gone by; so is also the day of secret covenants entered into in the interest of particular governments and likely at some unlooked-for moment to upset the peace of the world. It is this happy fact, now clear to the view of every public man whose thoughts do not still linger in an age that is dead and gone, which makes it possible for every nation whose purposes are consistent with justice and the peace of the world to avow now or at any other time the objects it has in view.

We entered this war because violations of right had occurred which touched us to the quick and made the life of our own people impossible unless they were corrected and the world secured once for all against their recurrence. What we demand in this war, therefore, is nothing peculiar to ourselves. It is that the world be made fit and safe to live in; and particularly that it be made safe for every peace-loving nation which, like our own, wishes to live its own life, determine its own institutions, be assured of justice and fair dealings by the other peoples of the world, as against force and selfish aggression. All the peoples of the world are in effect partners in this interest, and for our own part we see very clearly that unless justice be done to others it will not be done to us.

The program of the world's peace, therefore, is our program, and that program, the only possible program, as we see it, is this:

I. Open covenants of peace, openly arrived at, after which there shall be no private international understandings of any kind, but diplomacy shall proceed always frankly and in the public view.

II. Absolute freedom of navigation upon the seas, outside territorial waters, alike in peace and in war, except as the seas may be closed in whole or in part by international action for the enforcement of international covenants.

III. The removal, so far as possible, of all economic barriers and the establishment of an equality of trade conditions among all the nations consenting to the peace and associating themselves for its maintenance.

IV. Adequate guarantees given and taken that national armaments will be reduced to the lowest point consistent with domestic safety.

V. A free, open-minded, and absolutely impartial adjustment of all colonial claims, based upon a strict observance of the principle that in determining all such questions of sovereignty the interests of the populations concerned must have equal weight with the equitable claims of the Government whose title is to be determined.

VI. The evacuation of all Russian territory and such a settlement of all questions affecting Russia as will secure the best and freest co-operation of the other nations of the world in obtaining for her an unhampered and unembarrassed opportunity for the independent determination of her own political development and national policy, and assure her of a sincere welcome into the society of free nations under institutions of her own choosing; and, more than a welcome, assistance also of every kind that she may need and may herself desire. The treatment accorded Russia by her sister nations in the months to come will be the acid test of their goodwill, of their comprehension of her needs as distinguished from their own interests, and of their intelligent and unselfish sympathy.

VII. Belgium, the whole world will agree, must be evacuated and restored, without any attempt to limit the sovereignty which she enjoys in common with all other free nations. No other single act will serve as this will serve to restore confidence among the nations in the laws which they have themselves set and determined for the government of their relations with one another. Without this healing act the whole structure and validity of international law is forever impaired.

VIII. All French territory should be freed and the invaded portions restored, and the wrong done to France by Prussia in 1817 in the matter of Alsace-Lorraine, which has unsettled the peace of the world for nearly fifty years, should be righted, in order that peace may once more be made secure in the interest of all.

IX. A readjustment of the frontiers of Italy should be effected along clearly recognizable lines of nationality.

X. The peoples of Austria-Hungary, whose place among the nations we wish to see safeguarded and assured, should be accorded the freest opportunity of autonomous development.

XI. Rumania, Serbia, and Montenegro should be evacuated; occupied territories restored; Serbia accorded free and secure access to the sea; and the relations of the several Balkan States to one another determined by friendly counsel along historically established lines of allegiance and nationality; and international guarantees of the political and economic independence and territorial integrity of the several Balkan States should be entered into.

XII. The Turkish portions of the present Ottoman Empire should be assured a secure sovereignty, but the other nationalities which are now under Turkish rule should be assured an undoubted security of life and an absolutely unmolested opportunity of autonomous development, and the Dardanelles should be permanently opened as a free passage to the ships and commerce of all nations under international guarantees.

XIII. An independent Polish State should be erected which should include the territories inhabited by indisputably Polish populations, which should be assured a free and secure access to the sea, and whose political and economic independence and territorial integrity should be guaranteed by international covenant.

XIV. A general association of nations must be formed under specific covenants for the purpose of affording mutual guarantees of political independence and territorial integrity to great and small states alike.

In regard to these essential rectifications of wrong and assertions of right, we feel ourselves to be intimate partners of all the governments and peoples associated together against the imperialists. We cannot be separated in interest or divided in purpose. We stand together until the end.

For such arrangements and covenants we are willing to fight and to continue to fight until they are achieved; but only because we wish the right to prevail and desire a just and stable peace, such as can be secured only by removing the chief provocations to war, which this program does remove. We have no jealousy of German greatness, and there is nothing in this program that impairs it. We grudge her no achievement or distinction of learning or of pacific enterprise such as have made her record very bright and very enviable. We do not wish to injure her or to block in any way her legitimate influence or power. We do not wish to fight her either with arms or with hostile arrangements of trade, if she is willing to associate herself with us and the other peace-loving nations of the world in covenants of justice and law and fair dealing. We wish her only to accept a place of equality among the peoples of the world—the new world in which we now live—instead of a place of mastery.

Neither do we presume to suggest to her any alteration or modification of her institutions. But it is necessary, we must frankly say, and necessary as a preliminary to any intelligent dealings with her on our part, that we should know whom her spokesmen speak for when they speak to us, whether for the Reichstag majority or for the military party and the men whose creed is imperial domination.

We have spoken, now, surely, in terms too concrete to admit of any further doubt or question. An evident principle runs through the whole program I have outlined. It is the principle of justice to all peoples and nationalities, and their right to live on equal terms of liberty and safety with one another, whether they be strong or weak. Unless this principle be made its foundation, no part of the structure of international justice can stand. The people of the United States could act upon no other principle, and to the vindication of this principle they are ready to devote their lives, their honor, and everything that they possess. The moral climax of this, the culminating and final war for human liberty, has come, and they are ready to put their own strength, their own highest purpose, their own integrity and devotion to the test.

C. Cold War: The Truman Doctrine (1947)

President Harry Truman set forth what became known as the Truman Doctrine in the following address to Congress in March 1947. Truman committed the United States to the defense of Greece and Turkey, because he believed they were in danger of falling under communist rule. Truman advocated a policy of "containment" toward the Soviet Union, limiting the spread of communism.

The gravity of the situation which confronts the world today necessitates my appearance before a joint session of the Congress. The foreign policy and the national security of this country are involved.

One aspect of the present situation which I wish to present to you at this time for your consideration and decision concerns Greece and Turkey. The United States has received from the Greek government an urgent appeal for financial and economic assistance. Preliminary reports from the American economic mission now in Greece and reports from the American ambassador in Greece corroborate the statement of the Greek government that assistance is imperative if Greece is to survive as a free nation.

I do not believe that the American people and the Congress wish to turn a deaf ear to the appeal of the Greek government.

Greece is not a rich country. Lack of sufficient natural resources has always forced the Greek people to work hard to make both ends meet. Since 1940, this industrious and peace-loving country has suffered invasion, four years of cruel enemy occupation, and bitter internal strife.

When forces of liberation entered Greece they found that the retreating Germans had destroyed virtually all the railways, roads, port facilities, communications, and merchant marine. More than a thousand villages had been burned. Eighty-five percent of the children were tubercular. Livestock, poultry, and draft animals had almost disappeared. Inflation had wiped out practically all savings. As a result of these tragic conditions, a militant minority, exploiting human want and misery, was able to create political chaos which, until now, has made economic recovery impossible.

Greece is today without funds to finance the importation of those goods which are essential to bare subsistence. Under these circumstances the people of Greece cannot make progress in solving their problems of reconstruction. Greece is in desperate need of financial and economic assistance to enable it to resume purchases of food, clothing, fuel, and seeds. These are indispensable for the subsistence of its people and are obtainable only from abroad. Greece must have help to import the goods necessary to restore internal order and security so essential for economic and political recovery.

The Greek government has also asked for the assistance of experienced American administrators, economists, and technicians to insure that the financial and other aid given to Greece shall be used effectively in creating a stable and self-sustaining economy and in improving its public administration.

The very existence of the Greek state is today threatened by the terrorist activities of several thousand armed men, led by Communists, who defy the government's authority at a number of points, particularly along the northern boundaries. A commission appointed by the United Nations Security Council is at present investigating disturbed conditions in northern Greece and alleged border violations along the frontier between Greece, on the one hand, and Albania, Bulgaria, and Yugoslavia, on the other. Meanwhile, the Greek government is unable to cope with the situation. The Greek Army is small and poorly equipped. It needs supplies and equipment if it is to restore the authority of the government throughout Greek territory.

Greece must have assistance if it is to become a self-supporting and self-respecting democracy. The United States must supply this assistance. We have already extended to Greece certain types of relief and economic aid but these are inadequate. There is no other country to which democratic Greece can turn. No other nation is willing and able to provide the necessary support for a democratic Greek government. . . .

Greece's neighbor, Turkey, also deserves our attention. The future of Turkey as an independent and economically sound state is clearly no less important to the freedom-loving peoples of the world than the future of Greece. The circumstances in which Turkey finds itself today are considerably different from those of Greece. Turkey has been spared the disasters that have beset Greece. And during the war, the United States and Great Britain furnished Turkey with material aid. Nevertheless, Turkey now needs our support.

Since the war, Turkey has sought financial assistance from Great Britain and the United States for the purpose of effecting that modernization necessary for the maintenance of its national integrity. That integrity is essential to the preservation of order in the Middle East.

The British government has informed us that, owing to its own difficulties, it can no longer extend financial or economic aid to Turkey. As in the case of Greece, if Turkey is to have the assistance it needs, the United States must supply it. We are the only country able to provide that help.

I am fully aware of the broad implications involved if the United States extends assistance to Greece and Turkey, and I shall discuss these implications with you at this time.

One of the primary objectives of the foreign policy of the United States is the creation of conditions in which we and other nations will be able to work out a way of life free from coercion. This was a fundamental issue in the war with Germany and Japan. Our victory was won over countries which sought to impose their will and their way of life upon other nations.

To insure the peaceful development of nations, free from coercion, the United States has taken a leading part in establishing the United Nations. The United Nations is designed to make possible lasting freedom and independence for all its members. We shall not realize our objectives, however, unless we are willing to help free peoples to maintain their free institutions and their national integrity against aggressive movements that seek to impose upon them totalitarian regimes. This is no more than a frank recognition that totalitarian regimes imposed on free peoples, by direct or indirect aggression, undermine the foundations of international peace and hence the security of the United States.

The peoples of a number of countries of the world have recently had totalitarian regimes forced upon them against their will. The government of the United States has made frequent protests against coercion and intimidation, in violation of the Yalta Agreement, in Poland, Rumania, and Bulgaria. I must also state that in a number of other countries there have been similar developments.

At the present moment in world history nearly every nation must choose between alternative ways of life. The choice is too often not a free one.

One way of life is based upon the will of the majority, and is distinguished by free institutions, representative government, free elections, guarantees of individual liberty, freedom of speech and religion, and freedom from political oppression. The second way of life is based upon the will of a minority forcibly imposed upon the majority. It relies upon terror and oppression, a controlled press and radio, fixed elections, and the suppression of personal freedoms.

I believe that it must be the policy of the United States to support free peoples who are resisting attempted subjugation by armed minorities or by outside pressures. I believe that we must assist free peoples to work out their own destinies in their own way. I believe that our help should be primarily economic and financial aid, which is essential to economic stability and orderly political processes.

The world is not static and the status quo is not sacred. But we cannot allow changes in the status quo in violation of the Charter of the United Nations by such methods as coercion or by such subterfuges as political infiltration. In helping free and independent nations to maintain their freedom, the United States will be giving effect to the principles of the Charter of the United Nations.

It is necessary only to glance at a map to realize that the survival and integrity of the Greek nation are of grave importance in a much wider situation. If Greece should fall under the control of an armed minority, the effect upon its neighbor, Turkey, would be immediate and serious. Confusion and disorder might well spread throughout the entire Middle East. Moreover, the disappearance of Greece as an independent state would have a profound effect upon those countries in Europe whose peoples are struggling against great difficulties to maintain their freedoms and their independence while they repair the damages of war.

It would be an unspeakable tragedy if these countries, which have struggled so long against overwhelming odds, should lose that victory for which they sacrificed so much. Collapse of free institutions and loss of independence would be disastrous not only for them but for the world. Discouragement and possibly failure would quickly be the lot of neighboring peoples striving to maintain their freedom and independence.

Should we fail to aid Greece and Turkey in this fateful hour, the effect will be far-reaching to the West as well as to the East. We must take immediate and resolute action.

I therefore ask the Congress to provide authority for assistance to Greece and Turkey in the amount of $400 million for the period ending June 30, 1948. In requesting these funds, I have taken into consideration the maximum amount of relief assistance which would be furnished to Greece out of the $350 million which I recently requested that the Congress authorize for the prevention of starvation and suffering in countries devastated by the war.

In addition to funds, I ask the Congress to authorize the detail of American civilian and military personnel to Greece and Turkey, at the request of those countries, to assist in the tasks of reconstruction, and for the purpose of supervising the use of such financial and material assistance as may be furnished. I recommend that authority also be provided for the instruction and training of selected Greek and Turkish personnel.

Finally, I ask that the Congress provide authority which will permit the speediest and most effective use, in terms of needed commodities, supplies, and equipment, of such funds as may be authorized.

If further funds, or further authority, should be needed for purposes indicated in this message, I shall not hesitate to bring the situation before the Congress. On this subject the executive and legislative branches of the government must work together.

This is a serious course upon which we embark. I would not recommend it except that the alternative is much more serious.

The United States contributed $341 billion toward winning World War II. This is an investment in world freedom and world peace. The assistance that I am recommending for Greece and Turkey amounts to little more than one-tenth of one percent of this investment. It is only common sense that we should safeguard this investment and make sure that it was not in vain.

The seeds of totalitarian regimes are nurtured by misery and want. They spread and grow in the evil soil of poverty and strife. They reach their full growth when the hope of a people for a better life has died. We must keep that hope alive.

The free peoples of the world look to us for support in maintaining their freedoms. If we falter in our leadership, we may endanger the peace of the world—and we shall surely endanger the welfare of our own nation.

Great responsibilities have been placed upon us by the swift movement of events. I am confident that the Congress will face these responsibilities squarely.

D. Arms Control: "Address on the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty"

by John F. Kennedy (1963)

President John F. Kennedy gave the following address in July 1963 to encourage support for the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty, which prohibited the testing of nuclear weapons in the atmosphere, in outer space, or under water. The treaty represented the first step toward mutual nuclear arms reduction since the onset of the cold war.

I speak to you tonight in a spirit of hope. Eighteen years ago the advent of nuclear weapons changed the course of the world as well as the war. Since that time, all mankind has been struggling to escape from the darkening prospect of mass destruction on earth. In an age when both sides have come to possess enough nuclear power to destroy the human race several times over, the world of communism and the world of free choice have been caught up in a vicious circle of conflicting ideology and interest. . . .

. . . Our representatives have met at the summit and at the brink; they have met in Washington and in Moscow; in Geneva and at the United Nations. But too often these meetings have produced only darkness, discord, or disillusion.

Yesterday a shaft of light cut into the darkness. Negotiations were concluded in Moscow on a treaty to ban all nuclear tests in the atmosphere, in outer space, and under water. For the first time, an agreement has been reached on bringing the forces of nuclear destruction under international control. . . .

The treaty initialed yesterday . . . is a limited treaty which permits continued underground testing and prohibits only those tests that we ourselves can police. It requires no control posts, no on-site inspection, no international body.

We should also understand that it has other limits as well. Any nation which signs the treaty will have an opportunity to withdraw if it finds that extraordinary events related to the subject matter of the treaty have jeopardized its supreme interests; and no nation's right of self-defense will in any way be impaired. Nor does this treaty mean an end to the threat of nuclear war. It will not reduce nuclear stockpiles; it will not halt the production of nuclear weapons; it will not restrict their use in time of war.

Nevertheless, this limited treaty will radically reduce the nuclear testing which would otherwise be conducted on both sides; it will prohibit the United States, the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, and all others who sign it, from engaging in the atmospheric tests which have so alarmed mankind; and it offers to all the world a welcome sign of hope.

This treaty is not the millennium. It will not resolve all conflicts, or cause the Communists to forgo their ambitions, or eliminate the dangers of war. It will not reduce our need for arms or allies or programs of assistance to others. But it is an important first step—a step towards peace—a step towards reason—a step away from war.

Here is what this step can mean to you and to your children and your neighbors:

First, this treaty can be a step towards reduced world tension and broader areas of agreement. . . .

Second, this treaty can be a step towards freeing the world from the fears and dangers of radioactive fallout. Our own atmospheric tests last year were conducted under conditions which restricted such fallout to an absolute minimum. But over the years the number and the yield of weapons tested have rapidly increased and so have the radioactive hazards from such testing. Continued unrestricted testing by the nuclear powers, joined in time by other nations which may be less adept in limiting pollution, will increasingly contaminate the air that all of us must breathe. . . .

Third, this treaty can be a step toward preventing the spread of nuclear weapons to nations not now possessing them. . . .

I ask you to stop and think for a moment what it would mean to have nuclear weapons in so many hands, in the hands of countries large and small, stable and unstable, responsible and irresponsible, scattered throughout the world. There would be no rest for anyone then, no stability, no real security, and no chance of effective disarmament. There would only be the increased chance of accidental war, and an increased necessity for the great powers to involve themselves in what otherwise would be local conflicts. . . .

Neither the United States nor the Soviet Union nor the United Kingdom nor France can look forward to that day with equanimity. We have a great obligation, all four nuclear powers have a great obligation, to use whatever time remains to prevent the spread of nuclear weapons, to persuade other countries not to test, transfer, acquire, possess, or produce such weapons.

This treaty can be the opening wedge in that campaign. It provides that none of the parties will assist other nations to test in the forbidden environments. It opens the door for further agreements on the control of nuclear weapons, and it is open for all nations to sign, for it is in the interest of all nations, and already we have heard from a number of countries who wish to join with us promptly.

Fourth and finally, this treaty can limit the nuclear arms race in ways which, on balance, will strengthen our Nation's security far more than the continuation of unrestricted testing. For in today's world, a nation's security does not always increase as its arms increase, when its adversary is doing the same, and unlimited competition in the testing and development of new types of destructive nuclear weapons will not make the world safer for either side. Under this limited treaty, on the other hand, the testing of other nations could never be sufficient to offset the ability of our strategic forces to deter or survive a nuclear attack and to penetrate and destroy an aggressor's homeland. . . .

. . . According to the ancient Chinese proverb, "A journey of a thousand miles must begin with a single step."

My fellow Americans, let us take that first step. Let us, if we can, step back from the shadows of war and seek out the way of peace. And if that journey is a thousand miles, or even more, let history record that we, in this land, at this time, took the first step.

Terms to Know

Note: Glossary terms are coded to indicate where they appear in the text. For instance, the code (3.45) indicates that the term appears in chapter 3, question 45. The code (cap.75) indicates that the term appears in a photo caption on page 75.

abolitionist—advocating the end of slavery (2.66)

aggregate demand—total demand for goods and services in an economy (11.50)

aggregate supply—total supply of goods and services in an economy (11.50)

alloy—mixture of two or more metals (12.56)

appellate jurisdiction—authority of a court to review decisions of lower courts (9.2)

archipelago—large group of islands (12.26)

bill of attainder—legislative act that declares a person or group guilty of a crime and inflicts punishment without a trial (6.24)

bills—proposed laws presented to legislative bodies for enactment (7.64)

birthrate—number of births per year per 1,000 people (12.82)

blacklisting—barring people from employment because they are considered undesirable (5.27)

cardinal point—one of the four main directions on a compass: north, south, east, and west (12.10)

cartogram—map showing the amount of a certain characteristic, such as population or GNP, by sizes of the areas containing the characteristic (12.85)

caucuses—closed meetings of a political party's members to set policy, choose candidates, etc. (7.48)

censure—official condemnation of a member's actions by a legislative body (7.41)

charter colony—British colony in America established by groups of colonists given a charter by the crown and governed largely without interference from the crown (6.2)

class action suit—lawsuit filed by a person or group on behalf of all persons in similar circumstances (cap.132)

collective bargaining—union representation of workers in negotiations with employers (3.44)

company union—labor organization created by management rather than by workers (4.16)

complementary goods—goods for which an increase in the price of one results in a decrease in the demand for the other (11.13)

concurrent powers—powers held by both the national government and the states in the federal system (6.24)

concurrent resolutions—measures passed by both houses of a legislature that do not require the chief executive's approval and do not become law (7.64)

concurring opinion—written explanation of the views of one or more judges that supports the decision of a majority of the court but offers different reasons for reaching that decision (9.10)

confederation—alliance of independent sovereign states creating a central government of very limited power (6.19)

constituents—residents of the territory that an elected officeholder represents (7.30)

consumer price index—measure of the average change in the price over time of a "market basket" of products purchased by urban consumers; most widely used measure of inflation (11.25)

corporation—business organization that receives a government charter and legally has the same rights as a person (3.39)

county manager plan—form of county government in which policies are made by the elected governing body and are executed by a professional manager hired by and responsible to that body (10.62)

craft union—labor organization made up of people who perform the same job; also known as a trade union (3.44)

death rate—number of deaths per year per 1,000 people (12.82)

deflation—decrease in the prices of goods and services (3.58)

delta—sand and soil deposited at the mouth of a river, often in a triangular shape (12.21)

demand deposits—bank deposits against which checks may be written (11.64)

demographic—dealing with the distribution, density, and vital statistics of population (12.81)

dissenting opinion—written explanation of the views of one or more judges that disagrees with the decision reached by a majority of the court (9.10)

division votes—method of voting in legislative bodies in which members in favor and then those opposed to the question stand and are counted by the presiding officer; also called a standing vote (7.75)

elevation—altitude, or height above sea level (12.11)

estuary—arm of the ocean that extends to meet the mouth of a river (12.17)

***ex post facto* law**—retroactive criminal law applied to the disadvantage of the accused (6.24)

exclusionary rule—legal rule prohibiting the use of illegally obtained evidence in the criminal trial of the person from whom it was seized (6.55)

expressed powers—those powers specifically granted to the national government by the Constitution; also called delegated or enumerated powers (6.20)

fascist—advocating a political philosophy that emphasizes nationalism and centralized control by a dictator (cap.64)

felony—serious criminal offense punishable by long imprisonment or by death (9.34)

feminist—believing that equal political, social, and economic rights should be granted to women and men (2.66)

financial capitalism—economic system in which banks own corporations (cap.43)

fossil fuel—fuel such as oil, coal, or natural gas that forms in the earth over millions of years from the remains of animals and plants (12.42)

general strike—strike by all workers in a particular location (3.44)

genocide—systematic destruction of a group of people (4.76)

geyser—natural hot spring that intermittently ejects water and steam (12.94)

grants-in-aid—financial aid given to a state or local government by the national government subject to certain conditions (6.28)

great circle route—circle made on the surface of the globe by a geometric plane that passes through the globe's center; it is always the shortest distance between two points on the earth (12.5)

hinterland—area outside a city that serves it and is served by it (12.65)

horizontal integration—ownership of many companies at the same level of production within an industry (3.39)

imperialism—policy of extending one nation's domination over another (3.89)

implied powers—those powers of the national government implied by the expressed powers; those powers "necessary and proper" to carry out the expressed powers (6.21)

impressment—placing someone in public service by force (2.18)

incumbents—persons who hold office (7.30)

indentured servant—a person who agreed to work for an employer for a specific period of time in return for the cost of passage to America (1.26)

industrial capitalism—economic system in which industrialists own corporations (cap.43)

industrial union—labor organization made up of both skilled and unskilled workers in the same industry (3.44)

infrastructures—basic facilities and installations needed for the operation of organizations or communities (11.87)

initiative—method by which citizens can propose a bill by collecting a certain number of signatures from registered voters (3.61)

injunction—court order requiring or prohibiting a certain action (3.46)

interlocking directorates—arrangement by which one or more directors of a company serve as directors of other companies (3.88)

intermediate direction—one of the directions between the cardinal points: northeast, northwest, southeast, southwest (12.11)

joint resolutions—measures that become law if passed in identical form by both houses of a legislature and signed by the chief executive (7.64)

joint-stock company—type of organization formed to finance business ventures and exploration, pooling the funds of many investors by selling shares in the company (1.19)

judicial activism—philosophy that judges should take an active role in shaping public policy (9.16)

judicial restraint—philosophy that judicial decisions should uphold the actions of elected government officials unless those actions clearly violate the Constitution (9.15)

jurisdiction—authority of a court to hear and decide a case; literally, "to say the law" (9.1)

justiciable—appropriate for court decision (9.8)

labor force—all noninstitutionalized individuals at least 16 years old who are working or looking for work (11.47)

laissez faire—policy of government noninterference in economic activity; French term meaning "let people do as they please" (cap. 148)

lame duck—official who holds office for a period of time after an election at which he or she was not reelected (7.4)

landform—natural feature of the earth's surface, such as a plain or hill (12.12)

latitude—measurement of distance north or south of the equator (12.1)

leeward—direction toward which the wind blows (12.30)

legislative veto—provision in a law reserving to one or both chambers of Congress the power to review and reject an action or regulation of the executive branch; held unconstitutional by the Supreme Court (7.84)

longitude—measurement of distance east or west of the prime meridian, which passes through Greenwich, England (12.1)

loose construction—broad interpretation of the Constitution holding that the national government has implied powers as well as those specifically named in the Constitution (2.9)

majority opinion—written explanation of a decision made by a majority of the judges of a court (9.10)

martial law—rule by military forces (2.109)

megalopolis—continuous urban area, containing a number of different cities (12.72)

mercantilism—economic system in which a nation strengthens its economy by exporting more than it imports, accumulating gold and silver, and acquiring colonies (1.31)

misdemeanor—minor criminal offense punishable by a small fine or short jail term (9.34)

muckrakers—journalists who exposed social problems, unfair business practices, and political corruption (3.68)

municipal corporation—an urban unit of government with the legal rights of a corporation (10.69)

nativist—favoring the interests of native inhabitants over those of immigrants (2.77)

near money—financial assets that are not money but can be readily converted into money (11.64)

nonrenewable resource—natural resource that cannot be replaced once it is used (12.99)

open-market operations—buying and selling of government securities by the Federal Reserve (11.69)

original jurisdiction—authority of a court to hear and decide a case for the first time (9.2)

partnership—agreement in which two or more people share expenses, risks, and profits of a business (3.39)

per capita income—national income divided by the population of the nation (4.15)

plain—extensive area of level land (12.17)

plaintiff—in civil law, the party who initiates legal action in court against another (the defendant) (9.8)

plateau—elevated, fairly level piece of land, also called tableland (12.17)

political action committees (PACs)—organizations set up by special interest groups that raise and spend funds for political purposes (7.31)

political machine—party organization that works to stay in power by exchanging political and economic favors for votes (3.57)

pork barrel—government funds secured to benefit a legislator's home district or state (7.30)

price ceiling—maximum price set by government that is below the equilibrium price (11.19)

price floor—minimum price set by government that is above the equilibrium price (11.20)

price index—index number that shows how the average price of a "market basket" of goods changes over time (11.43)

prior restraint—government censorship of expression before it is made (6.51)

private bills—proposed laws that deal with individual matters rather than those affecting the public in general (7.68)

probable cause—reasonable belief that a crime has been committed (9.38)

propaganda—ideas spread to help or hurt a certain cause (1.57)

proprietary colony—British colony in America governed by the proprietor under a grant from the crown (6.2)

public bills—proposed laws that deal with matters of general public concern (7.68)

pump priming—government spending meant to stimulate economic activity (4.34)

pure speech—expression of thought and opinion by spoken word alone (6.47)

realist—attempting in art or literature to show the world as it is (3.54)

recall—method by which citizens can remove an elected official from office before completion of his or her term (3.76)

referendum—method by which citizens can vote directly to approve or disapprove a bill (3.61)

renewable resource—natural resource that can be replaced once it is used (12.99)

reserve requirement—percentage of its deposits that a bank must not loan but keep on deposit (11.65)

reserved powers—those powers that are not delegated to the national government nor prohibited to the states by the Constitution and that are held by the states in the federal system (6.24)

resolutions—measures passed by one house of a legislature that require neither passage by the other chamber nor approval by the chief executive and that do not have the force of law (7.64)

roll call votes—votes taken in legislative bodies in which each member's stand is individually recorded; also known as record votes (7.75)

royal colony—British colony in America under direct control of the crown (6.2)

senatorial courtesy—custom that the Senate will not confirm executive nominations to serve within a state if a senator of the president's party from that state objects to the appointment (7.89)

settlement house—a neighborhood center providing education, recreation, and other services for the poor (3.69)

socialism—economic and political system based on public control of production and distribution of goods and services (3.83)

specialization—production of one or a few products (11.72)

speech plus—speech in combination with some kind of action, such as demonstrating or picketing (6.47)

stagflation—inflation combined with high unemployment (11.61)

standing—legal concept referring to who is entitled to file a lawsuit, usually requiring a plaintiff show direct and significant personal harm (9.8)

stare decisis—rule of precedent; practice of basing judicial decisions on similar cases decided in the past; literally, (Latin) "let the decision stand" (9.18)

strict construction—narrow interpretation of the Constitution holding that the national government has only those powers explicitly named in the Constitution (2.9)

substitute goods—goods for which an increase in the price of one results in an increase in the demand for the other (11.13)

Sunbelt—region of economic and population growth in the South and Southwest (12.89)

supply-side economics—economic theory that emphasizes incentives, especially tax cuts, to encourage work, saving, investment, and an increase in production, or supply (5.104)

symbolic speech—the expression of ideas and beliefs through symbols or conduct rather than words (6.47)

teller votes—method of voting in legislative bodies in which members are counted for or against a measure as they file past designated tellers (7.75)

temperature inversion—weather condition in which warmer air above traps cooler air below it (12.71)

Third World—developing nations in Africa, Asia, and Latin America that are not aligned with the United States or the Soviet Union (5.7)

time and motion studies—systematic analyses to determine the most efficient method of doing a job (4.16)

time deposits—funds held in banks that may be withdrawn without penalty only at the end of a previously agreed upon period of time (11.64)

tornado—destructive rotating column of air, formed when cold air collides with warm air (12.32)

trade union—labor organization made up of people who perform the same job; also known as a craft union (2.78)

transcendentalist—believing that human beings can transcend or rise above reason through faith, intuition, and imagination (2.60)

transfer payments—payments that are not made in return for products currently supplied (11.36)

tundra—treeless plains between the tree line of arctic regions and the ice cap, with a permanently frozen subsoil supporting growth of mosses, lichens, and low shrubs (12.17)

underground economy—unreported economic activity in a nation; it includes both illegal activities (such as the narcotics trade) and legal activities that are not reported in order to evade taxes (11.47)

unitary government—form of government in which the central government has complete authority over all political subdivisions (6.19)

vertical integration—ownership of all levels of production and distribution within an industry, from raw materials to the shipping of the finished product (3.39)

voice votes—method of voting in legislative bodies in which the presiding officer calls for the "ayes" and then for the "noes," the members shout in response to each question, and the chair determines the outcome (7.75)

windward—direction from which the wind blows (12.30)

writ of *certiorari*—order issued by a higher court directing a lower court to send up the record of a case for review; literally, (Latin) "to be made more certain" (9.7)

writ of *habeas corpus*—court order directing an officer who has custody of a prisoner to show cause why the prisoner should not be released; designed to prevent illegal arrests and unlawful imprisonments (6.25)

writ of *mandamus*—court order directing an individual, corporation, or public official to perform a nondiscretionary act as required by law; literally, (Latin) "we command" (9.12)

yellow journalism—newspaper reporting that distorts or exaggerates facts and emphasizes sensational stories to increase circulation (3.91)

yellow-dog contracts—contracts that workers are required to sign with their employers stating that they will not join labor unions (11.27)

Selected Bibliography

Adler, Mortimer J., ed. *Annals of America.* Chicago, IL: Encyclopaedia Britannica, 1976.

Bartholemew, Paul C., and Joseph F. Menez. *Summaries of Leading Cases on the Constitution.* 12th ed. Totowa, NJ: Rowman & Allanheld, 1983.

Blum, John M., Edmund S. Morgan, Willie Lee Rose, Arthur M. Schlesinger, Jr., Kenneth M. Stampp, and C. Vann Woodward. *The National Experience.* 5th ed. New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1981.

Burns, James MacGregor, J. W. Peltason, and Thomas E. Cronin. *Government by the People.* 13th alternate ed. (national, state, and local version). Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1989.

Congress A to Z: C Q's Ready Reference Encyclopedia. Washington, DC: Congressional Quarterly, 1988.

Congressional Quarterly's Guide to Congress. 3rd ed. Washington, DC: Congressional Quarterly, 1982.

Davidson, James West, and Mark H. Lytle. *The United States: A History of the Republic.* 4th ed. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1988.

Divine, Robert A., T. H. Breen, George M. Fredrickson, and R. Hal Williams. *America Past and Present.* Glenview, IL: Scott, Foresman and Company, 1984.

Exploring Your World: The Adventure of Geography. Washington, DC: National Geographic Society, 1989.

Goldsmith, Edward, and Nicholas Hildyard, eds. *Earth Report: The Essential Guide to Global Ecological Issues.* Los Angeles, CA: Price Stern Sloan, 1988.

Hardy, Richard J. *Government in America.* Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1988.

Henretta, James A., W. Elliot Brownlee, David Brody, and Susan Ware. *America's History.* Chicago, IL: Dorsey, 1987.

Historical Atlas of the United States. Washington, DC: National Geographic Society, 1988.

Hofstadter, Richard, ed. *Great Issues in American History.* 3 vols. New York: Vintage, 1969.

Kestler, Darryl, ed. *Essentials of Geography.* New York: Random House, 1989.

Kolevzon, Edward R., and John A. Heine. *Our World and Its Peoples.* Boston, MA: Allyn and Bacon, 1981.

Low, W. Augustus, and Virgil A. Clift, eds. *Encyclopedia of Black America.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 1981.

McClenaghan, William A. *Magruder's American Government.* Needham Heights, MA: Prentice Hall, 1989.

McConnell, Campbell R., and Stanley L. Brue. *Economics: Principles, Problems, and Policies.* 11th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1990.

McMahon, Edward T., Lee P. Arbetman, and Edward L. O'Brien. *Street Law: A Course in Practical Law.* 3rd ed. St. Paul, MN: West, 1986.

Morris, Richard B., ed. *Encyclopedia of American History.* 6th ed. New York: Harper & Row, 1982.

Nelson, Michael, ed. *Congressional Quarterly's Guide to the Presidency.* Washington, DC: Congressional Quarterly, 1989.

Norton, Mary Beth, David M. Katzman, Paul D. Escott, Howard P. Chudacoff, Thomas G. Paterson, and William M. Tuttle, Jr. *A People and a Nation.* 2nd ed. Boston, MA: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1986.

O'Connor, David E. *Economics: Free Enterprise in Action.* Orlando, FL: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1988.

Samuelson, Paul A., and William D. Nordhaus. *Economics.* 13th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1989.

Schlesinger, Arthur M., Jr., ed. *Almanac of American History.* New York: Bramhall House, 1986.

Smith, Allen W. *Understanding Economics.* New York: Random House, 1986.

Todd, Lewis Paul, and Merle Curti. *Triumph of the American Nation.* Orlando, FL: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich, 1986.

Wheeler, Jesse H., Jr., and J. Trenton Kostbade. *World Regional Geography.* Philadelphia, PA: Saunders College Publishing, 1990.

Wilson, James Q. *American Government: Institutions and Policies.* 4th ed. Lexington, MA: D. C. Heath and Company, 1989.

Witt, Elder. *The Supreme Court and Individual Rights.* 2nd ed. Washington, DC: Congressional Quarterly, 1988.

Photo Credits

Alaska State Library/Arctic Arts and Illustrations Collection, p. 52(b)

AP/Wide World Photos, pp. 64(t), 81(t), 180

Bettmann Archive, pp. 98(b), 162

Brown Brothers, p. 57(t)

California Section, California State Library, p. 23

City of Chicago, Graphics and Reproduction Center, p. 145(b)

Chicago Historical Society, pp. 34(t), 122

Chrysler Corporation, p. 177

Close Up Foundation, pp. 78, 83(t), 84(b), 86(b), 97(b), 105(t), 115(b), 120, 129(t), 139, 178

Connecticut Historical Society, Hartford, p. 14(t)

Culver Pictures, pp. 35(b), 54(b), 58(b)

Environmental Protection Agency-Documerica
- Wil Blanche, p. 175
- Dan McCoy, p. 176
- Gary Miller, p. 182

Field Museum of Natural History, Chicago, p. 24(b)

Franklin D. Roosevelt Library, p. 60(b)

Gerald R. Ford Library, p. 118

Granger Collection, New York, p. 30

Harry Hamburg, *New York Daily News*, p. 71(b)

Henry Ford Museum and Greenfield Village, neg. no. 51079, p. 42(b)

Honolulu Academy of Arts, Gift of Mrs. Walter F. Dillingham, in memory of Alice Perry Grew, p. 28

Kansas State Historical Society, Topeka, pp. 31(t), 36(b), 39(t), 61

Library Company of Philadelphia, p. 24(t)

Library of Congress, pp. 1(b), 3(t), 4, 5, 6 (t & b), 7, 8(t & b), 9, 10, 11(l & r), 12(t & b), 13, 14(b), 16(t), 18, 21, 26(t & b), 27, 32, 35(t), 37, 38, 41, 42(t), 43, 44, 45, 46, 47(t & b), 49(t), 50, 51, 52(t), 53, 55(b), 56, 57(b), 58(t), 59, 62, 65, 66, 70(t), 71(t), 82, 88, 89(b), 90(t), 92, 96, 101, 104, 106(t & b), 107, 108, 114, 116(t), 126(t & b), 127(b), 128, 134, 135, 136(t), 137, 148, 157, 163(b), 172(t), 173, 181

Lyndon Baines Johnson Library, p. 79(t)

Maryland Historical Society, Baltimore, p. 16(b)

Massachusetts Archives, p. 140

David Metzler, *St. Louis Globe Democrat*, p. 75

Missouri Historical Society, p. 19

Montana Historical Society, Helena, p. 39(b)

Museum of Fine Arts Boston, *Mrs. James Warren (Mercy Otis)*, John Singleton Copley, Bequest of Winslow Warren, p. 17

National Aeronautics and Space Administration, p. 163(t)

National Archives, pp. 2, 54(t), 60(t), 70(b), 133(b)

National Portrait Gallery, Smithsonian Institution, pp. 22, 25, 29, 31, 33, 34(b)

Nebraska Unicameral Information Office, p. 142

Newberry Library, Chicago, p. 36(t)

New York Public Library, Astor, Lenox and Tilden Foundations
- Rare Books and Manuscripts Division, p. 15(b)
- General Research Division, p. 49(b)
- Lewis W. Hine Collection, United States History, Local History & Genealogy Division, p. 48

New York State Museum, p. 2

Nixon Project, National Archives, p. 79(b)

Office of the Governor of Nebraska, p. 143(t)

Office of the Governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia, p. 143(b)

Eugene Payne, *Charlotte Observer*, p. 90(br)

Peale Museum/Baltimore City Life Museums, p. 20

Pierpont Morgan Library, New York. M.801.f122v, p. 3

Port Authority of New York and New Jersey, p. 93

Smithsonian Institution, pp. 67, 81(b)

Smithsonian Institution, Division of Political Science, p. 138(b)

Supreme Court Historical Society, pp. 129(b), 136(b), 138(t)

Time-Life, Inc., Reproduced from the Margaret Bourke-White Collection, George Arents Research Library, Syracuse University, p. 55(t)

Tribune Media Services, reprinted by permission, p. 90(bl)

UPI/Bettmann Newsphotos, pp. 64(b), 68, 72, 73, 76(t & b), 77, 80, 86(t), 97(t), 100(t), 102(b), 116(b), 132(b), 133(t)

U.S. Army, p. 100(b)

U.S. Capitol Historical Society, p. 89(t)

U.S. Department of Agriculture, p. 166

U.S. Department of Agriculture Soil Conservation Service by Erwin Cole, p. 172(b)

U.S. Department of Energy, pp. 127(t), 174

U.S. Department of State, Technical Services, p. 15(t)

U.S. House of Representatives, pp. 102(t), 112(t & b)

Washington Post; Reprinted by permission of the D.C. Public Library, pp. 74, 83(b), 85, 158

White House, pp. 84(t), 115(t)
Susan Biddle, p. 123

CLOSE UP

Close Up Foundation
1235 Jefferson Davis Highway
Arlington, Virginia 22202

222

The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies

Third Edition

Student Answer Key

The Citizen Bee is a civic education program of the Close Up Foundation

BEST COPY AVAILABLE

The Citizen Bee is endorsed by the
American Federation of Teachers
American Legion
National Association of Attorneys General
National Association of Secretaries of State
National Education Association
National School Boards Association

The National Association of Secondary School Principals has placed this program on the National Advisory List of Contests and Activities for 1990/91.

CLOSE UP
FOUNDATION

Copyright 1990
Close Up Foundation
Printed in the United States of America

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any information and storage retrieval system, without written permission from the Close Up Foundation.

The Citizen Bee is a registered trademark of the Close Up Foundation.

Correspondence about the Citizen Bee should be addressed to:

Citizen Bee
Close Up Foundation
1235 Jefferson Davis Highway
Arlington, Virginia 22202

Cover Photo:
Grant V. Faint, The Image Bank

Some Important Information for You to Know

This answer key will help you learn the material in *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition). The answer key contains some blanks for you to complete. To check your answers, consult with the teacher in your school who has *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies Teacher's Answer Key* (third edition).

The Citizen Bee at a Glance

	School level	**Regional level**	**State level**	**National level**
Registration Deadline	December 15, 1990	N/A	N/A	N/A
Time	January 1991 (Names of three finalists and one alternate must be submitted by January 31, 1991.)	Late February-March 1991	April 1991	June 22-26, 1991
Format	Determined by school coordinator	Oral	Oral	Oral and written
Fee	$65 per school (includes six copies of *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* [third edition], five student answer keys, and one *Coordinator's and Teacher's Guide*.)	None	None	None
Source of Questions	*The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition) and current events	*The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition) and current events	*The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition) and current events	*The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition) and current events
Competition Administered by	School Citizen Bee coordinator	State organizing group	State organizing group	Close Up Foundation
Participants	Open to all high school students in grades nine through twelve	Up to three from each participating school	Top students from each region, depending on number of participating schools in the state	Minimum of two per state. Additional participation proportional to number of participating schools in each state
Location of Competition	Determined by school	Determined by state organizing group	Determined by state organizing group	Washington, D.C.
Prizes	Citizen Bee provides certificates for all participants. Other awards determined by the school and the state organizing group	Determined by state organizing group	All-expense-paid trip to national final, plus participation in an educational program in Washington, D.C., conducted by the Close Up Foundation. Additional prizes determined by state organizing group.	First prize— $7,000 scholarship Second prize— $5,000 scholarship Third prize— $3,000 scholarship

Rules of Competition

1. High school students in grades nine through twelve are eligible, with the exception of relatives of competition officials and children of Close Up Foundation employees.

2. Students can compete beyond the school level only if their school is officially registered with the Citizen Bee office of the Close Up Foundation. The principal must approve the participation of the school. A student who has been the first-place winner in a national Citizen Bee competition cannot participate in subsequent Citizen Bee competitions.

3. Questions at the regional, state, and national competitions are derived from:

- *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition). This includes all questions, introductions, maps, charts, graphs, illustrations, cartoons, and captions, as well as appendices and the glossary. Most questions in the competition will not be worded the same as they are in the book.

- Coverage of national and international events reported by newspapers, newsmagazines, and electronic media.

4. *School Level*—Each school conducts its own activities. Citizen Bee coordinators may use any activity to determine school representatives to the regional competition. Each participating school may send up to three students to the regional competition. The names of the three students, and the name of one alternate, **must** be forwarded to the Close Up Foundation or to the state organizing group.

5. *Regional Level*—A regional round follows the school competition. The Close Up Foundation and the Citizen Bee organizing group in each state determine the regions and assign schools to their regional competition.

6. *State Level*—The competition at the state level involves the top-ranked contestants from the regional competitions held throughout the state. The Close Up Foundation and the Citizen Bee organizing group in each state determine the number of regional contestants who compete at the state level.

7. Competitions at the regional and state levels are oral. The first part of the competition consists of three rounds of questions. After the third round of questions, all students who have answered at least two questions correctly advance to the second part of the competition. In the second part of the competition, a single incorrect answer results in elimination.

The format for elimination changes again only if a round begins with two students and **only if first place is being determined.** In this format, a student who misses a question will be eliminated only if the other student correctly answers the same question plus an additional question. (See special competition procedures on p. 4.)

At the national final, alternate methods of determining winners, including written formats, will be used.

8. *National Level*—Top-ranked contestants from each state final participate in the national final in Washington, D.C., as well as in an educational program on history and government conducted by the Close Up Foundation. The Close Up Foundation determines the number of finalists from each state who compete at the national final.

9. Challenges concerning any answers contained in *The Citizen Bee Guide to American Studies* (third edition) must be filed with the Close Up Foundation prior to the competition.

During the competition, only a student participant can lodge an appeal and only on an answer he or she has given. Appeals concerning answers given at the competition must be filed with the judges before the contestant affected would receive his or her next question in the following round of competition. (See special competition procedures on p. 4.)

10. Contestants have sixty seconds to begin to answer each question, the clock starting at the completion of the question being asked for the first time. Contestants may request to have questions repeated and may request the spelling of words in a question.

11. Judges for the regional and state competitions are selected by the state Citizen Bee organizing group. The Close Up Foundation selects the judges for the national competition. The judges' decisions are final.

12. If, at any point, a student is disruptive, exhibits unsportsmanlike conduct, or is coached from the audience, that student will be disqualified from the competition by the competition coordinator.

Revised June 1990

Special Competition Procedures

Rule 8: Procedure for Determining First Place When a Round Begins with Two Students Remaining

This format requires the first-place winner to answer consecutively a missed question correctly and an additional question correctly.

- If Contestant A answers a question incorrectly, Contestant B is asked Contestant A's missed question. If Contestant B answers the missed question correctly, Contestant B is then asked an additional question. If Contestant B answers the additional question correctly, Contestant B wins the competition.

- If, however, Contestant B answers the additional question incorrectly, Contestant A must answer the question that Contestant B just missed. If Contestant A answers that question plus one additional question correctly, Contestant A wins the competition.

- If Contestant A answers his or her additional question incorrectly, then Contestant B is asked the same question. If Contestant B answers correctly, then he or she must answer an additional question correctly to win the competition.

- If both contestants answer the same question incorrectly, the question is thrown out and both contestants remain in the competition. A new question would be given to the contestant who first gave the incorrect answer.

Rule 9: Appeal Procedure

- Contestants who choose to appeal the judges' decision on their answers to questions must do so before they would have received their next question in the following round.

- Contestants must not discuss the judges' decision or the question with anyone prior to their appeal. Conversation with anyone prior to the appeal invalidates a contestant's right to appeal.

- To file an appeal, contestants must go directly to a designated appeal area. Contestants forfeit their right to appeal if they first sit in the audience before proceeding to the appeal area.

- Contestants must complete a written appeal form and give it to the competition coordinator, who takes it to the appeal judge. The appealing contestant must remain in the appeal area while the decision is deliberated.

- The appeal judge decides whether the appeal warrants review by the panel of three voting judges.

- If the appeal does not warrant review, the form is returned to the contestant with an explanation.

- If the appeal warrants review, it is presented to the panel of voting judges. The judges will call a "time out" from the competition to review the appeal.

- The judges will decide the outcome of the appeal before the affected contestant's next turn in the following round.

CHAPTER 1

HISTORY: A NEW WORLD, A NEW NATION

1. a land bridge now submerged beneath the Bering Strait
2. Pueblo; Southwest
3. ____________
4. ____________
5. Great Basin
6. ____________
7. Plateau
8. ____________
9. California
10. Eastern Woodlands
11. ____________
12. A. ____________
    B. They hoped to circumvent Muslim traders who controlled the land routes to the Far East and to end the monopoly of Venetians and Genoans on routes between the Mediterranean and the rest of Europe.
13. A. 4; B. 3; C. 5; D. 2; E. 1; F. 6; G. 7
14. making conquests for Spain, converting the native peoples to Christianity, and becoming wealthy
15. A. ____________
    B. ____________
16. ____________
17. French settlers were primarily fur traders, so their livelihoods often depended on cooperation with Native Americans. French settlers tended to be transient rather than permanent residents of the areas they inhabited and, therefore, did not take much land away from the Native Americans.
18. ____________
19. the Virginia Company, or the London Company
20. ____________
21. ____________
22. A. Pilgrims or Separatists
    B. Puritans
23. A. ____________
    B. ____________
24. B. the diary of a girl who accused a person of being a witch
25. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
26. A. Chesapeake
    B. New England
    C. New England
    D. Chesapeake
27. to make a profit
28. New England
29. New York (Dutch), Delaware (Swedish), and New Jersey (Dutch and Swedish) were first settled by non-English people.
30. A. ____________
    B. ____________
31. (1) Colonial merchants could ship goods only on colonial or English ships. (2) Certain valuable items, called enumerated goods, could only be exported to England.
    (3) Imports from other nations to the colonies had to pass through England first, so that the English could collect import taxes.
    (4) Vice-admiralty courts, special courts with no juries, were created to try violations of the Navigation Acts, and customs officials were given greater power.
32. ____________
33. ____________
34. rum, slaves, molasses; Rum from America was traded for slaves in West Africa. Slaves were traded for molasses in the West Indies. The molasses was brought to America and made into rum.
35. ____________
36. African, free and slave (20%); Scotch-Irish (8%); German (7%)
37. domestic servants; agricultural laborers
38. The British government chartered the Royal African Company to transport slaves to sell in the British colonies, thereby making slaves more readily available to the colonists.
39. ____________
40. Anne Bradstreet
41. ____________
42. Enlightenment
43. ____________
44. ____________
45. Ohio River Valley
46. The Albany Plan of Union met with disapproval from colonial legislators because it gave too much control to a central government.
47. B. The British agreed to reimburse colonial assemblies for their military expenditures.
48. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
49. ____________
50. ____________
51. B. whether he had written the truth
52. ____________
53. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
54. Stamp tax collectors were harassed and their warehouses were destroyed. The Stamp Act Congress met and petitioned the king and Parliament, saying that while Parliament had the right to regulate colonial trade, only the colonial assemblies had the right to tax colonists. The Congress asked for the repeal of both the Sugar Act and the Stamp Act. Colonial merchants engaged in a boycott of English goods, and colonial women made cloth at home to avoid buying English textiles.
55. to reassert Parliament's power to tax the colonies by denying the claims of the Stamp Act Congress
56. The Townshend Acts (or Duties) took away the traditional power of the assemblies to provide salaries for colonial officials.
57. A. ____________
    B. (1) The Townshend Acts led Boston customs officials to request extra British troops to enforce compliance; and (2) the Quartering Act required colonists to provide housing and supplies for British troops stationed in the colonies, which led to close contact between colonists and troops.
    C. The colonists were not innocent in the matter. They taunted the British troops and threw snowballs and sticks at them.
    D. Crispus Attucks, a member of the Sons of Liberty whose father was black and whose mother was a Native American
58. the Regulators, a group of North Carolina backcountry farmers, who revolted against their colonial assembly and demanded greater representation
59. ____________
60. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
61. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________

62. the repeal of the Townshend Acts after the Boston Massacre
63. Imports from Britain plummeted and remained almost nonexistent throughout the period of the Revolution.
64. ______
65. The Congress adopted John Dickinson's Olive Branch Petition, expressing the desire of the colonies for reconciliation with Great Britain.
66. ______
67. ______
68. ______
69. ______
70. Joseph and Mary Brant
71. Ethan Allen and his Green Mountain Boys
72. ______
73. ______
74. A. Trenton, New Jersey
    B. ______
    C. Saratoga, New York
    D. Savannah, Georgia
    E. Charleston, South Carolina
75. The Battle of Saratoga
76. ______
77. ______
78. ______

CHAPTER 2

HISTORY: NATIONALISM AND SECTIONALISM

1. The Articles were submitted to the 13 states for ratification in November 1777, but were not ratified by all the state legislatures, as required, until February 1781. They took effect on March 1, 1781.
2. Maryland objected to the fact that states with large western land claims were allowed to retain them, putting states with definite western boundaries at a disadvantage. Maryland ratified the Articles after Virginia agreed to cede its western lands to the national government. These lands became known as the Northwest Territory.
3. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______
    E. ______
    F. ______
    G. ______
4. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
5. ______
6. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______
7. (1) restoring the public credit by paying off the debts incurred by the national government during the Revolution and having the federal government assume the war debts of the states; (2) creating a national bank that would issue U.S. currency and hold the deposits of the federal government; (3) encouraging domestic industry through a protective tariff
8. The plans to restore public credit and create a national bank were enacted. The protective tariff was rejected.
9. ______
10. Hamilton cited the necessary and proper clause (or "elastic" clause) in Article I, section 8, clause 18, which authorizes Congress to make all laws "necessary and proper" to carry out its enumerated powers. Since Congress had the power to tax, borrow money, regulate commerce, and issue currency, a national bank would be a "necessary and proper" way to carry out these functions.
11. ______
12. ______
13. A. ______
    B. ______
14. A. ______
    B. The federal government was created by a compact among the states; therefore, the states had the right to declare unconstitutional—and refuse to enforce—federal laws.
15. The Twelfth Amendment was proposed in 1803 and ratified in 1804, providing separate balloting for president and vice president.
16. It reduced the number of Supreme Court justices from six to five, added 16 new circuit courts and judgeships, and increased the number of marshals, attorneys, and clerks.
17. A. The number of Supreme Court justices was restored to six, one term per year was fixed for the Court, and six circuit courts, each headed by a Supreme Court justice, were established.
    B. *Marbury v. Madison* (1803)
18. A. Great Britain agreed to remove its troops from posts in the Northwest Territory in return for a U.S. promise to negotiate for payment of pre-Revolution debts to British creditors. Restrictions were also eased for U.S. merchants trading with Great Britain and the West Indies.
    B. The treaty ignored this issue, angering many Americans.
19. ______
20. Jefferson first blockaded, then sent marines to attack the Barbary state of Tripoli (present-day Libya), which had demanded the increase in tribute. After the war, the United States continued to pay tribute to other Barbary states.
21. ______
22. According to a strict constructionist view, acquiring this territory was illegal because the Constitution did not explicitly give the government power to acquire territory.
23. A. the *Chesapeake-Leopard* affair (after the names of the ships involved—the USS *Chesapeake* and the HMS *Leopard*)
    B. (1) the Embargo Act of 1807, which forbade virtually all foreign trade; and (2) the Non-Intercourse Act of 1809, which repealed the Embargo Act and outlawed trade with only Britain and France
24. ______
25. ______
26. A. ______
    B. Queenston Heights, Canada
    C. ______
    D. ______
    E. ______
27. ______
28. Some delegates to the Hartford Convention favored secession from the United States. However, the majority supported constitutional amendments to protect New England's interests, which were threatened by the expansion of the South and West. The war ended before any action could be taken.
29. ______
30. ______
31. A. ______
    B. ______
32. ______
33. ______

34. A. The House chose John Quincy Adams.
    B. Many believed that Clay, who was influential in the House, threw his support to Adams in return for the position of secretary of state.
35. ____________________
36. ____________________
37. Tariff of Abominations; Manufacturers in New England were protected from foreign competition by the tariff on imported manufactured goods. The southern states exported cotton and imported most manufactured goods, so they were hurt by the higher duties.
38. ____________________
39. ____________________
40. Jackson declared that the federal government was supreme, that no state could refuse to obey federal laws, and that no state could leave the Union.
41. A compromise tariff that lowered duties significantly was formulated by Henry Clay and passed by Congress. Calhoun and other South Carolinians supported the compromise and rescinded their ordinance of nullification.
42. A. Jackson vetoed the bill.
    B. Biddle made borrowing money difficult and demanded payment of all outstanding loans. The lack of adequate credit hurt businesses, leading to a rise in unemployment.
43. A. gold or silver coins (specie), or in some cases, Virginia land scrip
    B. to curb runaway inflation and land speculation that had resulted because state banks had issued too much paper money
    C. It reduced public land sales, led the public to hoard gold and silver, and weakened public confidence in state banks. These developments, along with a sharp drop in the price of cotton, contributed to the Panic of 1837 and the five-year depression that followed.
44. Tyler opposed Whig programs, vetoing protective tariffs, internal improvements, and the revival of the national bank. In September 1841, all members of Tyler's cabinet except Secretary of State Daniel Webster resigned, and most Whigs abandoned Tyler.
45. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
46. A. Stephen Austin
    B. In 1836, fewer than 200 Texans defended a small garrison at the Alamo (in present-day San Antonio) against more than 3,000 Mexican troops. The battle was lost and all the defenders died, but the heroism of leaders like Jim Bowie and former Tennessee congressman Davy Crockett inspired Texans to fight for their independence.
    C. ____________________
47. Mexico broke diplomatic ties with the United States because the United States insisted that the Rio Grande marked Texas's southern border, while the Mexicans considered the Nueces River, much farther north, to be the proper boundary.
48. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
49. ____________________
50. ____________________
51. ____________________
52. ____________________
53. ____________________
54. ____________________
55. ____________________
56. The Gadsden Purchase was negotiated by James Gadsden in 1853. The U.S. paid Mexico $10 million for the area, planning to use it as a southern railroad route to the Pacific.
57. ____________________
58. A. to abstain from drinking alcoholic beverages
    B. laws prohibiting the manufacture and sale of alcoholic beverages
59. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
60. A. New Lebanon, New York
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
    D. Deseret (present-day Utah)
61. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
    D. ____________________
    E. ____________________
62. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
63. ____________________
64. George Caleb Bingham
65. American Colonization Society
66. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
    D. ____________________
67. Common law considered a husband and his wife to be one, and that one was the husband. A husband legally controlled his wife's property, wages, and children.
68. ____________________
69. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
70. ____________________
71. A. Samuel Slater
    B. (1) all manufacturing processes to transform raw cotton into finished cloth were combined under one roof; (2) most of the workers were young women who lived in company-owned dormitories; (3) large capital investment
72. The embargo on British imports and the War of 1812 meant that Americans had to buy most of their thread and cloth from domestic sources.
73. ____________________
74. Cooper's locomotive, Morse's telegraph, Hoe's printing press, Pullman's sleeping car
75. Railroads made it possible to move both raw materials and manufactured goods more cheaply and quickly. They also encouraged the growth of industries related to railroads, such as the manufacture of iron and locomotives.
76. The Irish fled a massive famine caused by a blighted potato crop, often arriving in the United States penniless. German immigrants, however, often came with enough money to purchase land or open businesses.
77. ____________________
78. ____________________
79. Sarah Bagley
80. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
81. Monroe urged that the Native Americans remaining in the southern states be removed to lands west of the Mississippi River.
82. Cherokee, Creek, Choctaw, Chickasaw, and Seminole tribes; they had adopted many customs from American settlers, even becoming wealthy farmers and slaveholders.

83. A. The Cherokee adopted a written constitution modeled on that of the United States and defined themselves as an independent nation. In 1828, the state of Georgia annulled the Cherokee constitution and reaffirmed sovereignty over the Cherokee.
    B. The Court ruled that a Native American tribe could not be considered a foreign nation or a state, but it also affirmed that tribes were "domestic dependent nations," had rights to the lands they had traditionally inhabited, and could lose those lands only by voluntarily giving them up.
84. Indian Removal Act of 1830
85. ________________
86. ________________
87. ________________
88. ________________
89. About 25 percent owned at least one slave. Less than one percent owned more than 50 slaves.
90. A. ________________
    B. ________________
91. A. ________________
    B. ________________
    C. ________________
    D. ________________
92. Alleged fugitives were denied a trial by jury and had no right to testify or cross-examine witnesses.
93. The Ostend Manifesto, a report issued by a group of U.S. diplomats, recommended that the United States make efforts to buy Cuba from Spain, or seize it by force. Abolitionists feared that Pierce intended to extend U.S. slave territory to the island.
94. The Court declared that Scott remained a slave and that blacks were not and could not become citizens of the United States. Declaring that Congress had no right to deprive slaveowners of their property without due process, the Court also ruled the Missouri Compromise unconstitutional.
95. In ruling against the Missouri Compromise, the Court decided that Congress did not have the right to prohibit slavery, so Congress also could not delegate that power to a territorial legislature.
96. Douglas asserted that a territory could still exclude slavery by refusing to pass the slave codes and regulations that were needed to keep slaves in bondage. Slaveholders believed Douglas had betrayed their interests by outlining ways that settlers could stop slavery from spreading.
97. John Breckenridge, a proslavery Southern Democrat, captured most of the southern states as well as the border states of Delaware and Maryland. Northern Democrat Stephen Douglas won electors only in Missouri and New Jersey. John Bell of the Constitutional Union party, which opposed sectionalism, captured the states of Kentucky, Tennessee, and Virginia. Lincoln won in the northern states and in California and Oregon.
98. ________________
99. ________________
100. ________________
101. A. ________________
     B. ________________
     C. ________________
102. A. The Union could transport troops and supplies more easily than the Confederacy. (The Union had more railroads.)
103. The Confederacy had far fewer people available to serve in the military.
104. A. ________________
     B. ________________
     C. ________________
     D. ________________
105. ________________
106. First Battle of Bull Run (near Manassas, Virginia)
107. A. ________________
     B. ________________
     C. ________________
     D. ________________
108. A. Shenandoah Valley
     B. Bull Run Creek, near Manassas (Second Battle of Bull Run)
     C. Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg
109. A. Both
     B. Union
     C. Both
     D. Both
110. ________________
111. ________________
112. ________________
113. A. northerners, mainly Democrats, who strongly opposed the war (also called "Peace Democrats")
     B. Union General George McClellan; the Democratic platform called for an immediate cessation of the war (although McClellan rejected this plank)
     C. the fall of Atlanta to General William Tecumseh Sherman in September 1864
114. Sherman's March to the Sea
115. A. ________________
     B. ________________
116. Davis was captured in May 1865. He was indicted for treason and imprisoned for two years. After he was released on bail in 1867, the trial was dropped. He later retired to his native state of Mississippi.
117. ________________
118. ________________

CHAPTER 3

HISTORY: INDUSTRIALIZING AMERICA

1. (1) Southerners (except some high-ranking Confederate officials) who took an oath of loyalty to the federal government would be given amnesty; (2) a state could form a government and return to the Union when it recognized the emancipation of slaves and when 10 percent of the state's 1860 electorate took the oath of loyalty.
2. ________________
3. A. Johnson's plan added wealthy planters to the list of those who were not automatically allowed to take the loyalty oath. State governments also had to disavow their secession, repudiate their war debts, and ratify the Thirteenth Amendment.
   B. Republicans were angered that Johnson readmitted southern states, even though many did not live up to Johnson's own requirements and would not recognize the citizenship of freed slaves. Congress, refusing to seat representatives from these states, set up a Joint Committee on Reconstruction.

4. A. ____________
   B. ____________
   C. ____________
   D. ____________
5. A. The Freedmen's Bureau was intended to (1) provide food, medical supplies, clothing, education, and employment assistance to freed slaves; and (2) manage abandoned lands in the South.
   B. It granted citizenship to black Americans.
   C. It drafted the Fourteenth Amendment.
6. ____________
7. (1) adopt a new state constitution that disqualified former Confederate officials (those barred from federal office by the Fourteenth Amendment) from voting or holding state office; (2) grant suffrage to blacks; (3) ratify the Fourteenth Amendment
8. A. It prohibited the president from removing officials approved by the Senate without senatorial approval.
   B. The House voted to impeach Johnson because he dismissed Secretary of War Edwin Stanton without the Senate's approval. The House presented articles of impeachment to the Senate, which failed by one vote to remove Johnson from office.
9. The National Woman Suffrage Association, led by Susan B. Anthony and Elizabeth Cady Stanton, refused to support the Fifteenth Amendment and concentrated on passage of another amendment to enfranchise women. The American Woman Suffrage Association, led by Lucy Stone and Julia Ward Howe, supported the Fifteenth Amendment and lobbied for suffrage laws at the state level.
10. A. ____________
    B. ____________
11. ____________
12. ____________
13. Amnesty Act, which pardoned most former Confederates who had been excluded from political power by the Fourteenth Amendment
14. A. The commission, made up of eight Republicans and seven Democrats, voted along party lines and declared Hayes the winner of the election.
    B. The Republicans agreed to formally end Reconstruction by withdrawing federal troops from the South, appointing southerners to political offices, and appropriating funds for southern internal improvements.
15. ____________
16. ____________
17. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
18. A. Since most southern blacks were poor, they could not pay the poll taxes imposed on all voters.
    B. Most southern blacks did not have enough education to pass the literacy tests, which were often administered unfairly to blacks.
    C. These clauses, added to state constitutions, declared that a man could vote if he, his father, or his grandfather had been eligible to vote on January 1, 1867. This allowed poor whites, often disqualified by poll taxes and literacy tests, to vote.
19. In 1851, the government began a policy of "concentration." This policy limited tribes to certain areas west of the Mississippi, within which they could continue their traditional ways of life. In 1867, all tribes were required to move to reservations, where they had to abandon their traditional ways of life.
20. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
21. ____________
22. ____________
23. They believed that the whites would disappear, the buffalo herds would return, and all Native Americans, both dead and living, would be reunited in a renewed land.
24. A. Denver, Colorado
    B. Virginia City, Nevada
    C. Deadwood, South Dakota
    D. Tombstone, Arizona
25. Cattle shipping; all the cities lie at the intersections of cattle trails and railroads.
26. ____________
27. The Homestead Act offered 160-acre plots to heads of households who agreed to occupy and cultivate the land for five years, and who paid a small registration fee.
28. Until the 1880s, cattle ranchers had been able to winter their cattle on unclaimed, unfenced land (open range), but farmers began claiming and fencing the land.
29. ____________
30. ____________
31. A. ____________
    B. ____________
32. ____________
33. It divided the continental United States into four time zones: Eastern, Central, Mountain, and Pacific.
34. land grants totaling more than 130 million acres and loans of some $65 million
35. A. They successfully lobbied for state laws regulating railroads.
    B. The Court upheld the right of regulation, saying that when private property is affected with a public interest, it "must submit to be controlled by the public for the common good."
36. (1) All railroad charges had to be reasonable and just; (2) pooling operations, discriminatory rates, and rebates were prohibited; (3) it became illegal to charge more for a short haul than for a long haul; (4) railroads had to publish their rates; (5) the Interstate Commerce Commission (ICC), the first federal regulatory commission, was created to investigate railroad management.
37. A. ____________
    B. ____________
38. The economy was prone to sharp fluctuations between prosperity and depression.
39. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
40. ____________
41. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
42. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
43. ____________
44. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. International Ladies Garment Workers
    D. Industrial Workers of the World, also called the Wobblies

45. Known as the Haymarket Riot, it occurred in Chicago at a protest against a police attack on strikers. A bomb was thrown into the crowd, killing several people. Anarchist leaders were tried and convicted of the crime, despite a lack of convincing evidence.
46. A. Railroad Strikes of 1877
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
47. ____________
48. 1920
49. A. electric trolleys
    B. skyscrapers
50. Frederick Law Olmsted
51. ____________
52. ____________
53. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
54. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
55. A. b. Mary Cassatt
    B. a. Thomas Eakins
    C. c. Winslow Homer
56. A. A group of Union Pacific officials created Crédit Mobilier, a fraudulent company that took government subsidies for railroad construction. They bribed members of Congress to avoid an investigation.
    B. Congress voted itself a 50 percent raise in salary, but the public was so outraged that the act was quickly repealed.
    C. A group of distillers bribed federal officials to avoid paying taxes on whiskey.
57. A. Ward and precinct politicians provided food, shelter, education, and employment assistance to their constituents in return for voter loyalty.
    B. ____________
    C. They demanded bribes and kickbacks from people who wanted city jobs or companies that sought city contracts.
    D. ____________
58. ____________
59. ____________
60. A. Omaha, Nebraska, in July 1892
    B. James B. Weaver; the Populists received more than one million popular votes and 22 electoral votes, as well as capturing several governorships and congressional seats.
61. ____________
62. A. Previously, both gold and silver had backed U.S. currency. The Coinage Act abolished the coinage of silver and declared that only gold would be used to back paper money.
    B. The Greenback Labor party, supported chiefly by farmers, favored an increase in the money supply.
    C. In 1878, Congress passed the Bland-Allison Act, requiring the government to buy a certain dollar amount of silver to be minted into coins. In 1890, Congress passed the Sherman Silver Purchase Act, which required the government to purchase 4.5 million ounces of silver each month and pay for it in notes redeemable for gold or silver.
    D. By 1893, U.S. gold reserves were rapidly declining. Cleveland and "sound money" interests hoped that they could halt the decline by ending the use of silver to back currency.
63. ____________
64. agriculture, because without farms, cities could not survive
65. The Populists joined the Democrats in nominating Bryan for president.
66. Republican William McKinley, who was supported by big business, won the election. In effect, Bryan's defeat marked the end of the Populist movement.
67. ____________
68. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
69. ____________
70. In his approach to relations between blacks and whites, Washington favored a slow, conciliatory approach by blacks, opposing aggressive efforts to gain civil rights.
71. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
72. ____________
73. John Dewey
74. A. *Muller v. Oregon* (1908)
    B. Louis Brandeis (his method of arguing a case became known as the "Brandeis brief")
75. National Consumers League
76. A. ____________
    B. ____________
77. Only those wealthy enough to bribe state legislatures can be elected to the Senate.
78. ____________
79. The Court held that the Northern Securities Company, a holding company organized by J. P. Morgan, was a combination in restraint of trade and therefore illegal under the Sherman Antitrust Act.
80. Square Deal
81. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
82. A. Payne-Aldrich Tariff
    B. Speaker of the House Joseph Cannon
    C. Gifford Pinchot, chief of the U.S. Forest Service (This act branded Taft an anti-conservationist.)
83. ____________
84. ____________
85. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
86. New Freedom
87. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
88. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
    E. ____________
    F. ____________
89. A. *The Influence of Sea Power upon History* (1890) by Captain Alfred Mahan
    B. *Our Country* (1885) by Josiah Strong
90. The 1890 McKinley Tariff reduced U.S. imports of Hawaiian sugar, leading American sugar planters in Hawaii to plot its annexation by the United States to avoid the tariff. The 1894 Wilson-Gorman Tariff reduced U.S. imports of Cuban sugar, contributing to economic tensions and a rebellion against Spanish rule in 1895.
91. A. the *New York Journal*, published by William Randolph Hearst, and the *New York World*, published by Joseph Pulitzer
    B. William Randolph Hearst
92. ____________
93. A. ____________
    B. ____________

94. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________
    E. ____________
95. Hay set forth the Open Door policy, asserting the right of the United States to trade freely with China.
96. ____________
97. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
98. President Roosevelt supported the Panamanians because Colombia rejected a U.S. proposal to build a canal through the Isthmus of Panama. Roosevelt perceived that if the Panamanians gained their independence, they would allow the United States to build the canal.
99. ____________
100. A. ____________
     B. ____________
     C. ____________
101. A. ____________
     B. ____________
     C. ____________
102. A. The British blockaded not only the Central Powers, but also neutral nations, which were trading partners of the United States. The British also forced U.S. ships to stop at British ports to be searched for war materials.
     B. According to international law, warring nations could stop a neutral ship, search it, and destroy it if war materials were found. Submarines were not able to defend themselves once they surfaced, so they torpedoed without warning any ships—neutral or enemy—suspected of carrying war materials.
103. 1. ____________
     2. ____________
     3. ____________
     4. ____________
     5. ____________
104. A. Carrie Chapman Catt and Jane Addams
     B. The Espionage Act punished those who aided the enemy or obstructed military recruitment and gave the postmaster general power to confiscate antiwar materials. The Sedition Act punished those who criticized the U.S. government, flag, or military uniforms.
     C. Eugene Debs
105. A. ____________
     B. ____________
     C. ____________
     D. ____________
     E. ____________
     F. ____________
106. ____________
107. A. Belleau Wood, France
     B. the Meuse-Argonne offensive, which took place between the Meuse River and the Argonne Forest in France
     C. November 11, 1918
108. D. All European nations should maintain large military forces to deter a future war.
109. ____________
110. They opposed the creation of the League of Nations because, under Article 10 of the League's charter, member nations would be required to protect one another against attack. This group of senators argued that only Congress should make decisions that would require the United States to intervene in the affairs of other nations.

* * *

CHAPTER 4

HISTORY: DEMOCRACY AND ADVERSITY

1. A. ____________
   B. ____________
   C. ____________
2. C. The House Committee on Un-American Activities interrogated members of the government suspected of being communists.
3. By using quotas, these acts severely limited the number of immigrants allowed into the country, particularly those from Asia and southern and eastern Europe. No quotas were placed on immigrants from the Western Hemisphere.
4. ____________
5. blacks, immigrants, Jews, and Catholics
6. ____________
7. A. Passed over President Wilson's veto, the act (1) placed enforcement of Prohibition under the Bureau of Internal Revenue and (2) defined intoxicating liquor as containing more than one-half of one percent alcohol.
   B. ____________
   C. ____________
8. ____________
9. A. The act (1) created the Bureau of the Budget within the Treasury Department, with a director appointed by the president; (2) required that the president submit an estimated budget to Congress for approval each year; (3) created the General Accounting Office (GAO).
   B. the Fordney-McCumber Tariff Act
10. In the Teapot Dome scandal, Secretary of the Interior Albert Fall leased naval oil reserves in Teapot Dome, Wyoming, and Elk Hills, California, to speculators in return for bribes.
11. ____________
12. Those who favored more government regulation of business and aid to farmers formed the Progressive party, nominating Senator Robert M. La Follette for president. Coolidge won the election by a landslide.
13. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
14. ____________
15. ____________
16. ____________
17. ____________
18. ____________
19. They feared that it would revoke legal protections like minimum wage and maximum hours laws for women.
20. A. Margaret Sanger
    B. Comstock Act of 1873, which prohibited any dissemination of birth control information
21. ____________
22. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
23. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
24. A. It was the first major motion picture to feature talking.
    B. KDKA was founded in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, in 1920.
25. A. ____________
    B. ____________
    C. ____________
    D. ____________

26. A. As stock prices dropped, brokers and banks called for immediate repayment of their loans to investors, leading more investors to sell their stocks, and causing further drops in stock prices.
    B. Mass production created more goods, but wages did not rise enough for workers to buy all these goods. As unsold stockpiles increased, factories laid off workers, who in turn bought fewer goods. Farmers lost purchasing power because their own overproduction led to falling agricultural prices.
    C. In 1929, a small percent of Americans held a very large percent of the nation's wealth, so many Americans could not afford to purchase consumer goods, resulting in underconsumption.
27. High protective tariffs made it difficult for European countries to sell their goods in the United States and, consequently, to repay World War I debts. In response to U.S. tariffs, European nations raised their own tariffs, making it hard for the United States to sell its goods abroad.
28. ________________
29. A. Agricultural Marketing Act of 1929; inconsistent, because the speech criticized a Democratic plan to buy farm products
    B. Relief and Construction Act of 1932; inconsistent, because the speech criticized a Democratic plan to fund hydroelectric plants
30. The RFC provided government loans to banks, railroads, and insurance companies. Its rationale was that when the problems of America's businesses were solved, benefits would trickle down to ordinary citizens in need.
31. ________________
32. ________________
33. Relief legislation provided aid directly to people who were suffering from economic hardships. Recovery legislation was aimed at increasing economic activity. Reform legislation was intended to prevent future economic catastrophes.
34. A. ________________
    B. ________________
    C. ________________
    D. ________________
    E. ________________
    F. ________________
    G. ________________
35. ________________
36. The Court held that Congress's power to tax did not extend to regulating agriculture.
37. ________________
38. ________________
39. A. The codes of fair practices were rules drawn up by industries which, once approved by the president, became binding. They limited production and provided for control of prices and sales practices.
    B. antitrust laws
    C. It guaranteed workers the right to bargain collectively with their employers.
40. ________________
41. A. Works Progress Administration (WPA), changed to Works Projects Administration in 1939
    B. ________________
    C. National Youth Administration (NYA)
    D. ________________
    E. ________________
    F. ________________
    G. ________________
    H. Agricultural Adjustment Act of 1938
42. (1) It guaranteed workers' rights to organize and bargain collectively; (2) it outlawed discrimination against unionized workers; (3) it set up the National Labor Relations Board (NLRB) with the power to oversee union elections and issue cease-and-desist orders against employers.
43. A. ________________
    B. ________________
    C. ________________
44. Roosevelt asked Congress for power to appoint a new justice for each one who did not retire at age 70. Public outcry and congressional opposition to Roosevelt's "court-packing" scheme led to its defeat.
45. ________________
46. In order to balance the federal budget, Roosevelt and Congress drastically decreased government spending on relief projects in 1937. Private businesses failed to provide enough jobs for those thrown out of work by the cuts.
47. ________________
48. Lewis reorganized his group as an independent labor union, called the Congress of Industrial Organizations (CIO).
49. Because strikers remained in the factories, at their machines, it was impossible for management to bring in strikebreakers.
50. A. (1) decreased the legal maximum workweek to 40 hours; (2) increased the minimum wage to 40 cents per hour; (3) prohibited employment of children under 16
    B. workers in industries engaged in interstate commerce
51. ________________
52. ________________
53. ________________
54. ________________
55. ________________
56. A. It sought to end a naval arms race among Japan, Great Britain, and the United States through treaties that limited the number of warships each nation could have.
    B. The German economy was collapsing under the strain of high reparations payments demanded by the Treaty of Versailles. Germany halted its payments in 1923, and France responded by sending troops into Germany. Under the Dawes Plan, German currency was stabilized, the United States made loans to Germany, and an easier schedule of reparations payments was devised.
    C. The treaty outlawed war in all cases except self-defense, but had no provisions for enforcement.
57. Clark Memorandum
58. ________________
59. Montevideo Conference (in Montevideo, Uruguay)
60. 1. ________________
    2. ________________
    3. ________________
    4. ________________
    5. ________________
    6. ________________
    7. ________________
61. A. ________________
    B. ________________
    C. ________________
    D. ________________
    E. ________________
62. ________________

63. by refusing to declare the existence of a war between Japan and China

64. A. ______

    B. ______

65. ______

66. A. The United States announced the Stimson Doctrine, refusing to recognize any Japanese territorial gains in China, but taking no concrete action.

    B. The United States demanded and accepted an official apology and payments for damage incurred.

    C. The United States placed an embargo on the export of scrap metal and airplane fuel to Japan.

    D. The United States froze all Japanese accounts in U.S. banks, bringing all trade with Japan to a halt.

    E. The United States declared war on Japan.

67. A. (1) a promise of complete cooperation in the war effort; (2) endorsement of the principles of the Atlantic Charter; (3) a promise not to make a separate peace with the Axis nations

    B. The Soviets urged that a second front be opened in western Europe to remove pressure from the eastern front, where the Germans were concentrating their forces against the Soviet army. Instead, U.S. and British troops chose to attack North Africa and Italy first.

68. A. ______

    B. ______

    C. ______

    D. ______

69. Taxes were raised to a high level, financing more than one-third of the war's cost. The government borrowed the rest of the money, chiefly through the sale of war bonds.

70. Randolph agreed to cancel the march when Roosevelt issued Executive Order 8802, banning discrimination in all government agencies and in companies doing business with the federal government. It also established the Fair Employment Practices Commission (FEPC), to guarantee equality for blacks in war industries.

71. ______

72. A. False, more than half of those interned were U.S. citizens.

    B. True

    C. False, thousands of Japanese-Americans served in the U.S. armed forces.

    D. False, the government sometimes allowed people as little as 48 hours after notification of their internment to sell their property and settle their estates.

73. A. Battle of El Alamein

    B. General Dwight D. Eisenhower

74. A. Sicily, Italy

    B. Normandy, France

    C. Ardennes Forest, Belgium (the Battle of the Bulge)

    D. west of Berlin, at the Elbe River

    E. In pursuing the German army, the Soviet army had occupied most of eastern Europe.

75. ______

76. ______

77. A. ______

    B. ______

    C. ______

78. They used the "island-hopping" tactic, in which they invaded only a few strategically placed islands, hoping that the islands that were bypassed would surrender once their supply routes were cut off.

79. They transmitted messages about Allied military plans using the Navaho language, a code the Japanese never broke.

80. ______

81. A. ______

    B. ______

    C. ______

CHAPTER 5

HISTORY: EMERGENCE AS A WORLD POWER

1. B. The Soviet Union refused to allow American soldiers who had fought with the Red Army in eastern Europe to return home.

2. A. ______

   B. ______

3. The Soviet Union tested its first atomic bomb in 1949.

4. ______

5. Truman fired Wallace.

6. A. Truman Doctrine

   B. George Kennan, an American diplomat who had served in the Soviet Union

   C. Congress approved $400 million in aid to Greece and Turkey.

7. A. ______

   B. ______

   C. ______

   D. ______

8. ______

9. A. ______

   B. ______

10. ______

11. A. ______

    B. ______

    C. After supporting a failed attempt at a coalition government, Truman supported the nationalist forces but refused to involve U.S. troops in the fighting. By 1949, the communists had won, and the nationalist government fled to the island of Formosa, or Taiwan.

12. A. In June 1950, North Korean troops invaded South Korea in an attempt to reunify the country under communist rule.

    B. When the vote was taken, the Soviets were boycotting the Security Council, protesting the fact that it would not seat the communist Chinese delegate.

    C. ______

    D. Chinese troops attacked the UN forces and pushed them back into South Korea.

13. Truman wanted a limited war to maintain the territory of South Korea, but MacArthur wanted to gain total victory over North Korea. After MacArthur publicly criticized Truman's policies, the general was relieved of his command in April 1951.

14. The 38th parallel remained the boundary between North and South Korea, and a demilitarized zone (DMZ) was declared along that boundary.

15. A. Ho Chi Minh and the Viet Minh ruled North Vietnam. Ngo Dinh Diem ruled South Vietnam. The United States supported Diem and began sending military advisors to South Vietnam in 1955.

B. Diem resisted holding elections because he feared he would lose to Ho Chi Minh.
C. ______________________
D. ______________________

16. The United States and the Soviet Union condemned the Europeans and Israelis for their invasion. The Soviets threatened to intervene in the crisis to aid Egypt. Under pressure from the United States, the Soviet Union, and the UN, the invaders withdrew their forces.
17. ______________________
18. President Eisenhower first cut U.S. purchases of Cuban sugar and then embargoed U.S. trade with Cuba. After the Soviet Union began supporting Castro's regime, the United States broke off diplomatic relations with Cuba. Eisenhower also agreed to a CIA plan to train Cuban exiles to fight the Castro regime.
19. An American U-2 spy plane was shot down over the Soviet Union. The pilot, Gary Powers, had been photographing Soviet military bases. Khrushchev demanded an apology, which Eisenhower refused to give, and the summit was canceled.
20. Eisenhower worried that the close cooperation of the military and the arms industry could lead to bigger government and too much power for the industries involved in national defense.
21. ______________________
22. When workers and management failed to settle a railroad strike, Truman addressed Congress, saying that he wanted the right to draft "workers who are on strike against their government" into the military.
23. It (1) prohibited the "closed shop," in which only union members may work; (2) forbade union contributions to political campaigns; (3) required union leaders to pledge that they were not members of the Communist party; (4) allowed the government to impose an 80-day "cooling off" period on strikes endangering public health or safety.
24. A new Progressive party nominated Henry Wallace, criticizing Truman's containment policy and advocating negotiation with the Soviet Union. The States' Rights Democratic party, or "Dixiecrats," nominated Governor Strom Thurmond of South Carolina, objecting to the Democrats' support for civil rights laws.
25. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
C. ______________________
D. ______________________
26. A. The report, *To Secure These Rights,* called for an end to lynching, segregation, poll taxes, and discrimination in employment.
B. armed forces
27. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
C. ______________________
D. ______________________
28. A. McCarthy's practice of making sensational accusations of subversion without sufficient evidence
B. In 1954, McCarthy investigated alleged communist activity within the U.S. military. In the televised Army-McCarthy hearings, the public was outraged by McCarthy's bullying tactics, to which army counsel Joseph Welch responded, "Have you no sense of decency, sir?" The Senate officially censured McCarthy in December 1954.
29. ______________________
30. the interstate highway system, authorized under the Highway Act of 1956
31. ______________________
32. ______________________
33. The act provided federal aid to schools and colleges for the improvement of math and science courses.
34. ______________________
35. termination
36. ______________________
37. ______________________
38. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
39. ______________________
40. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
41. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
42. abstract expressionism, or the New York School
43. ______________________
44. Castro's forces were prepared for the invasion, which ended in the death or capture of most of the forces trained by the CIA.
45. A. Kennedy ordered a naval blockade to prevent more shipments of offensive weapons to Cuba.
B. Khrushchev withdrew the missiles from Cuba after Kennedy's assurance that the United States would not invade Cuba.
C. (1) The "hot line," a direct teletype link between U.S. and Soviet leaders was established; (2) negotiations were begun to limit testing of nuclear weapons.
46. ______________________
47. Declaring his solidarity with Berlin's inhabitants, Kennedy went there in 1963 to show U.S. resistance to the Berlin Wall, erected in 1961 to keep people from fleeing from communist East Berlin to West Berlin.
48. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
49. A. ______________________
B. ______________________
50. Kennedy increased U.S. aid to South Vietnam. By the end of 1963, there were more than 15,000 American military advisors stationed there.
51. In 1963, with tacit U.S. approval, South Vietnamese military leaders took over the government. Diem was assassinated.
52. If the South Vietnamese wanted to stop supplies from reaching the Viet Cong, they would have to extend their forces into the neighboring nations of Laos and Cambodia.
53. Gulf of Tonkin; the president ordered retaliatory air strikes against North Vietnam and asked Congress for authority to take all necessary steps to prevent further aggression. Congress granted the president this far-reaching power in the Tonkin Gulf Resolution.
54. A. Although their offensive was ultimately defeated, the North Vietnamese demonstrated that they could easily move into the south, devastate large cities, and gain support in rural areas.
B. the area near the demilitarized zone (DMZ)
55. Through "Vietnamization," the United States attempted to train and equip the South Vietnamese to take over the majority of the combat in the war.

56. In 1969, Nixon ordered secret bombing missions over Cambodia, and in 1970, U.S. and South Vietnamese forces invaded it.

57. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. The Pentagon Papers, a secret government study of the war leaked by defense official Daniel Ellsberg, showed that the government had lied to the public throughout the war.

58. (1) continued presence of North Vietnamese forces in South Vietnam; (2) assurance that South Vietnam would have its own elected government; (3) U.S. agreement to continue economic and military aid to South Vietnam; (4) release of American prisoners of war

59. ________

60. ________

61. The Arabs were trying to end U.S. support for Israel in the 1973 Arab-Israeli war. Kissinger engaged in "shuttle diplomacy," flying back and forth between countries in the Middle East to negotiate a settlement. The Arabs lifted the embargo in 1974. Israel signed a peace agreement with Syria in 1974 and with Egypt in 1975.

62. ________

63. A. voluntary wage and price guideposts
    B. U.S. steelworkers agreed to take only modest wage increases if steel companies would not raise the price of steel and contribute to inflation. When some steel producers did raise prices, Kennedy refused to allow the government to buy steel from companies that raised their prices.

64. A. Congress of Racial Equality (CORE)
    B. Student Nonviolent Coordinating Committee (SNCC)
    C. The police attacked the demonstrators with dogs, cattle prods, and firehoses.

65. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________

66. A. Lee Harvey Oswald; while under police escort, Oswald was himself murdered by Jack Ruby.
    B. Chief Justice Earl Warren; the Warren Commission found that Oswald had acted alone and that there was no conspiracy to kill the president, despite public opinion otherwise.

67. The Civil Rights Act: (1) outlawed discrimination in employment on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin; (2) barred discrimination in public accommodations; (3) authorized the attorney general to file suits to desegregate schools and other public facilities. The Voting Rights Act: (1) suspended literacy tests and other voter tests and (2) authorized federal supervision of voter registration.

68. ________

69. ________

70. The study concluded that despite progress in desegregation and voting rights, blacks still faced discrimination and economic hardships. It asserted that "our nation is moving toward two societies, one black, one white—separate and unequal."

71. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________

72. A. Huey Newton and Bobby Seale
    B. The Black Panthers urged blacks to fight for their rights not just with words, but with weapons.

73. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________

74. ________

75. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________

76. ________

77. ________

78. ________

79. 65

80. A. Wounded Knee, South Dakota
    B. Nixon abandoned the policy of "termination," favoring continued federal support for housing and job training.
    C. Dee Brown

81. ________

82. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________

83. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________

84. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD)

85. A. James Earl Ray assassinated Martin Luther King, Jr., in Memphis, Tennessee.
    B. Robert F. Kennedy was assassinated in Los Angeles, California, by Sirhan Sirhan, a Palestinian nationalist who resented Kennedy's support of Israel.
    C. Chicago, Illinois

86. Wallace promised to restore law and order to the nation and end protest demonstrations.

87. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________

88. A. attempted burglary of Democratic National Committee offices at the Watergate building in Washington, D.C.
    B. Congress set up the Select Committee on Presidential Campaign Activities, or the Watergate Committee, to investigate the burglary.
    C. Judge John Sirica ordered Nixon to turn over recordings of White House conversations to the Watergate Committee. Nixon refused, claiming executive privilege, but the Supreme Court ordered him to turn over the tapes.
    D. (1) obstruction of justice, (2) abuse of presidential power, (3) contempt of Congress

89. Agnew resigned after pleading no contest to a charge of income tax evasion.

90. A. ________
    B. ________

91. He gave Nixon a full pardon for all federal crimes committed while he was president.

92. ________

93. ________

94. ________

95. ________

96. banking, airline, trucking, and railroad industries

97. The Three Mile Island nuclear power plant near Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, accidentally released dangerous radiation.

98. In 1980, Congress established a "superfund" of more than one billion dollars to clean up toxic waste dumps.

99. A. It placed limits on the numbers of nuclear missiles and long-range bombers each nation could have.

B. Carter withdrew SALT II from congressional consideration, embargoed shipments of U.S. grain and technical equipment to the Soviet Union, and organized a boycott of the Olympic games to be held in Moscow in 1980. The Soviets withdrew from Afghanistan in February 1989.
C. Carter declared that the United States would fight any Soviet aggression in the Persian Gulf, the key gateway to Middle Eastern oil nations.

100. ____________________
101. A. In 1953, the CIA had helped put the shah of Iran in power.
B. The shah was allowed into the United States for medical treatment. The Iranians demanded the return of the shah to Iran.
102. ____________________
103. ____________________
104. ____________________
105. ____________________
106. A. Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act, or Gramm-Rudman-Hollings Act
B. interest payments on the deficit
C. defense spending
107. Reagan believed that the Soviet Union had supported Poland's crackdown on the Solidarity trade union and the imposition of martial law in that nation.
108. A terrorist attack on marine barracks killed more than 200 U.S. soldiers.
109. The constructive engagement policy favored the use of diplomacy over economic sanctions, which Reagan believed would hurt blacks in South Africa more than whites. The congressional bill banned new investments in South Africa and imports of a variety of South African products. It also prohibited South African Airways planes from landing in the United States.
110. ____________________
111. ____________________
112. A. because Congress had banned U.S. military aid to the *contras* since 1982
B. North's group sold military weapons to the Iranian government, and some of the money received was sent to the *contras*.
113. A. The Soviets wanted limits placed on development of a space-based defensive system called the Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI), or "Star Wars," but the United States refused.
B. The two nations agreed to destroy hundreds of intermediate-range nuclear weapons and provided for on-site inspection teams to verify compliance with the treaty.
114. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
C. ____________________

CHAPTER 6

GOVERNMENT: THE LIVING CONSTITUTION

1. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
C. ____________________
2. The charter colony was the most democratic because the colonists elected the governor and the members of both houses of the colonial legislature. In the royal colony, the British monarch appointed the governor and upper legislative house. These officials were appointed by the proprietors in the proprietary colony.
3. ____________________
4. three branches of government, a weak executive, a bicameral legislature, a bill of rights
5. (1) Congress lacked the power to tax. (2) Congress lacked the power to regulate commerce. (3) There was no national court system to handle offenses against the central government's laws and to settle interstate disputes. (4) There was no separate executive branch to enforce acts of Congress. (5) Each state had one vote in Congress, regardless of population. (6) Delegates, who were appointed and paid by their respective state legislatures, focused on protecting their state's interests rather than on solving national problems. (7) The votes of nine states, rather than a simple majority, were needed to pass any law, making it difficult to legislate. (8) The Articles were almost impossible to amend because the approval of all 13 states was needed. (9) The Articles created only a "firm league of friendship," not a union.
6. ____________________
7. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
C. ____________________
8. A. The framers devised the Three-fifths Compromise, which established that three-fifths of the total number of slaves would be counted for representation and direct taxation.
B. The framers granted Congress authority to regulate interstate and foreign commerce, but forbade export taxes and prohibition of the slave trade before 1808.
9. Delegates were aware that there was little chance of securing the approval of all the state legislatures; some also believed that the Constitution should be ratified by a higher authority than the state legislatures—the people.
10. the Constitution's lack of a bill of rights and the increase in the powers of the central government
11. First published in New York newspapers as letters to the people, the *Federalist* papers were written to persuade New York to ratify the Constitution. New York's support of the Constitution was essential because of its wealth, large population, and central geographic location.
12. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
C. ____________________
D. ____________________
E. ____________________
13. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
14. Each branch has different powers, serves different terms of office, and is chosen by different methods.
15. ____________________
16. A. ____________________
B. ____________________
C. ____________________
D. ____________________
17. ____________________

18. A republic is a system of government in which citizens determine policies and laws through elected officials and representatives; a democracy is a system in which citizens themselves determine policies and laws.
19. C. government is cheap and efficient
20. ______________________
21. ______________________
22. ______________________
23. ______________________
24. A. b. a reserved power of the state governments.
    B. a. an exclusive power of the federal government.
    C. c. a concurrent power.
    D. a. an exclusive power of the federal government.
    E. b. a reserved power of the state governments.
    F. d. a power prohibited to both the federal and state governments.
    G. a. an exclusive power of the federal government.
    H. d. a power prohibited to both the federal and state governments.
    I. a. an exclusive power of the federal government.
    J. c. a concurrent power.
    K. c. a concurrent power.
    L. d. a power prohibited to both the federal and state governments.
    M. b. a reserved power of the state governments.
25. in cases of rebellion or invasion
26. ______________________
27. B. maintaining a system of interstate highways
28. Categorical grants, which are given for specific purposes and set certain conditions that the state must meet to receive them, give the national government the most control. Block grants provide money to states for general purposes, such as law enforcement or education.
29. A. The full faith and credit clause in Article IV of the Constitution requires other states to honor your marriage certificate.
30. In *Kentucky v. Dennison* (1861), the Supreme Court ruled that governors cannot be forced to honor extradition requests. However, in *Puerto Rico v. Branstad* (1987), the court reversed that ruling, holding that a federal court can order an unwilling governor to return a fugitive.
31. All amendments to date have been proposed by a two-thirds vote in both houses of Congress. Amendments can also be proposed at a constitutional convention called by Congress at the request of two-thirds of the state legislatures.
32. The most common method is ratification by the state legislatures in three-fourths of the states. The Twenty-first Amendment was ratified by special ratifying conventions held in three-fourths of the states.
33. ______________________
34. ______________________
35. Amendments are proposed at the national level and ratified at the state level.
36. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
    E. ______________________
37. Several states had refused to ratify the Constitution unless assured that a bill of rights would be added to it.
38. The Fourteenth Amendment specifically declares that "no *state* shall make or enforce any law," whereas the First Amendment, for example, says that "*Congress* shall make no law."
39. because it found the aid to be a safety measure intended to benefit children, not the school or religion
40. Government involvement in religious activities is constitutional if (1) it has a secular purpose; (2) its primary effect neither advances nor inhibits religion; and (3) it does not foster an "excessive entanglement" of government with religion.
41. The law's specific reference to "meditation or voluntary prayer" made it a government endorsement of religion.
42. The Court noted that this practice is a deeply rooted tradition; it also observed that the legislators, as adults, are not "susceptible to religious indoctrination or peer pressure."
43. No; in *Lynch v. Donnelly* (1984), the Court upheld, 5-4, the display of a nativity scene along with secular symbols of the Christmas holiday.
44. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
    E. ______________________
45. ______________________
46. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
47. ______________________
48. *Tinker v. Des Moines School District* (1969). The Supreme Court ruled that school officials improperly suspended students for wearing black armbands in symbolic protest of the Vietnam War.
49. ______________________
50. A. *Schenck v. United States* (1919)
    B. *Dennis v. United States* (1951)
    C. The Court held that advocacy of forcible overthrow as an abstract doctrine is a protected activity. The government must prove a defendant advocated action to overthrow a government, an unlawful action.
51. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
52. A. *New York Times Co. v. Sullivan* (1964)
    B. If citizens could be sued for good faith criticisms of public officials, they might be afraid to voice their opinions.
53. A. allows local judges and juries to apply contemporary community standards to determine whether material is obscene.
54. *Miller v. California* (1973); material is obscene if (1) "the average person, applying contemporary [local] community standards," finds that the work, taken as a whole, appeals "to the prurient interest"; (2) the work depicts or describes, "in a patently offensive way," a form of sexual conduct specifically dealt with in an antiobscenity law; and (3) the work, taken as a whole, lacks "serious literary, artistic, political, or scientific value."
55. ______________________
56. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
57. ______________________

58. A. *Escobedo v. Illinois* (1964)
    B. *Miranda* required police to advise suspects of their constitutional rights before custodial questioning. Under the *Miranda* rule, police must inform suspects of their right to remain silent; that any statement they do make may be used as evidence against them; that they have a right to the presence of an attorney, either retained or appointed; and that they may end police questioning at any time.
59. A. ________
    B. ________
60. A. ________
    B. ________
61. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
62. the due process clause of the Fifth Amendment (which applies to the federal government) and the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment (which applies to the states)
63. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________

CHAPTER 7

GOVERNMENT: THE LEGISLATIVE BRANCH

1. D. The Continental Congress and the Congress under the Articles of Confederation were bicameral.
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. ________
6. ________
7. ________
8. that a member of Congress must live in the district that he or she represents
9. ________
10. ________
11. Congress sets the size of the House of Representatives, as long as each state has at least one representative and the remaining representatives are distributed according to population.
12. ________
13. ________
14. The Court ruled that congressional districts should be of nearly equal populations, saying "as nearly as is practicable, one man's vote in a congressional election is to be worth as much as another's" (the one person, one vote principle).
15. ________
16. C. State X has a total population of more than 3 million persons.
17. ________
18. They may serve on committees and participate in House debates, but they are not permitted to vote on the House floor.
19. ________
20. ________
21. ________
22. because only one-third of its members are up for election at the same time
23. ________
24. They are elected at large, by the voters of the state as a whole.
25. ________
26. ________
27. ________
28. ________
29. It produces legislators closely tied to local concerns and ensures that party leaders in Congress have relatively weak influence over members.
30. A. a greater share of federal matching funds for their campaigns
31. B. Congressional elections are publicly financed.
32. The "average" member of Congress is a well-educated, middle-aged, married, white male Protestant with a background in law or business.
33. B. *Congress A to Z,* published by Congressional Quarterly
34. ________
35. ________
36. Members of Congress are given immunity from arrest for civil (noncriminal) offenses while doing congressional business, and they cannot be sued or prosecuted for anything they say or write in connection with their legislative duties.
37. ________
38. A. Every member of Congress must file an annual financial disclosure statement.
39. no; because the Constitution makes each house the judge of the elections of its members
40. The Court ruled that Congress could not exclude members-elect who met the constitutional requirements for office.
41. Each house of Congress may censure a member by a majority vote of that house, but expulsion of a member requires a two-thirds vote.
42. ________
43. The Speaker is nominated at the beginning of each Congress by the majority party and then formally elected by the House.
44. E. select chairmen of standing committees
45. The majority party in the Senate usually selects its most senior member to serve as president *pro tempore*, and the Senate formally ratifies this choice.
46. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
47. ________
48. A. work for passage of the party's legislative program
    B. serve as liaisons between party leadership and rank-and-file members and ensure that party members are present for key votes
49. A. Personal staff are assigned to individual members of Congress. Committee staff work for the various congressional committees and subcommittees.
    B. constituent service ("casework"), such as answering letters from constituents and handling their problems with the federal bureaucracy
50. A. supervises overall operations, including casework
    B. manages the member's legislative responsibilities, such as committee action and floor votes
    C. promotes favorable media coverage of the member's activities
51. Congressional staff tends to increase Congress's independence from the executive branch by providing unbiased information and advice on existing programs and legislative proposals.
52. D. Congressional staff helps members of Congress perform their legislative duties.
53. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________

54. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
55. Most of the work in Congress is done by committees.
56. A. House Ways and Means Committee
    B. Senate Appropriations Committee, House Appropriations Committee
    C. House Education and Labor Committee
    D. House Interior and Insular Affairs Committee
    E. Senate Foreign Relations Committee
    F. Senate Judiciary Committee
    G. House Budget Committee, Senate Budget Committee
    H. House Energy and Commerce Committee, Senate Energy and Natural Resources Committee
57. ________
58. All of these changes reduced the power of committee chairmen.
59. *Possible answers:* (1) scheduling and chairing committee meetings; (2) determining the committee's agenda; (3) hiring committee staff; (4) arranging and chairing hearings; (5) acting as floor managers for bills reported by the committee
60. In the House, the Democratic Steering and Policy Committee appoints Democrats; the Republican Committee on Committees appoints Republicans. In the Senate, the Democratic Steering Committee appoints Democrats; the Republican Committee on Committees appoints Republicans.
61. ________
62. ________
63. (a) by dropping it in the "hopper," a large box on the House clerk's desk
    (b) by announcing its introduction following recognition from the Senate's presiding officer
64. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
65. (1) report favorably; (2) report an amended ("marked up") bill; (3) report a substitute bill; (4) report unfavorably; (5) refuse to report
66. ________
67. A majority of the House membership can move the bill from the committee onto the House floor by signing a discharge petition and voting to discharge the committee.
68. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
    E. ________
69. A. how much money should be appropriated for new programs
70. by unanimous consent of the Senate (the prior agreement of all the senators)
71. The House of Representatives sits as a large committee of itself—the Committee of the Whole—which requires 100 members for a quorum.
72. ________
73. Sixteen senators must petition for its application and at least three-fifths of the entire Senate must vote to approve the petition.
74. D. The Supreme Court routinely strikes down such amendments as unconstitutional.
75. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
76. The alternative is usually no bill at all, at least for that Congress.
77. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
78. ________
79. (1) Taxes must be levied for public purposes; (2) Congress may not tax exports; (3) direct taxes must be apportioned among the states according to their population; (4) all indirect taxes must be levied at the same rate throughout the country.
80. ________
81. ________
82. (1) Congress could not ban the importation of slaves until 1808; (2) Congress may not tax exports; (3) Congress may not favor the ports of one state over those of another; (4) Congress may not require vessels bound to or from one state [illegible] enter, clear, or pay duties in another.
83. ________
84. Legislative vetoes violate the principle of separation of powers because they eliminate the president's veto power by using simple and concurrent resolutions, which do not require the president's signature, to review or cancel executive branch actions.
85. (1) Congress oversees the counting of electoral votes. (2) If no presidential candidate receives a majority of electoral votes, the House chooses the president. (3) If no vice-presidential candidate wins a majority of the electoral votes, the Senate chooses the vice president. (4) Congress, by a majority vote, must approve the appointment of a vice president if the office is vacant.
86. A joint resolution to amend the Constitution requires the votes of two-thirds of both houses, instead of a simple majority. It does not go to the president for his signature, but directly to the states for ratification.
87. ________
88. ________
89. those within a state, such as U.S. district judges, U.S. attorneys, and federal marshals
90. ________

CHAPTER 8

GOVERNMENT: THE EXECUTIVE BRANCH

1. ________
2. ________
3. ________
4. ________
5. No, because he served more than two years after assuming Richard Nixon's presidency, and the Twenty-second Amendment states that "no person who has held the office of President . . . for more than two years of a term to which some other person was elected President shall be elected to the office of the President more than once."
6. Congress
7. to make the president independent of financial pressure from Congress
8. ________
9. A. to act as the president's chief foreign emissary
10. ________
11. D. Walter Mondale
12. ________

13. the vice president and a majority of the principal officers of the executive departments (the cabinet) or "such other body as Congress may by law provide"
14. ____________________
15. It was undemocratic because party leaders, rather than the people, chose presidential candidates.
16. Each party uses a complex formula that awards delegates on the basis of the state's electoral votes and past support of the party ticket.
17. ____________________
18. ____________________
19. a presidential primary in which delegates are pledged to observe the voters' preference
20. Any qualified voter may take part in an open primary; in a closed primary, only declared members of a certain political party may vote in that party's primary.
21. In winner-take-all contests, the candidate who wins the preference vote automatically wins the votes of all the delegates chosen at the primary; in proportional primaries, candidates win delegate votes in proportion to their popular vote totals.
22. A. Primaries make the delegate selection process more democratic by allowing public participation in the nomination process.
23. All have been white males; virtually all have been Protestants; most have had experience in the military and in high public office, particularly as senators, vice president, or governor (usually of a large state).
24. Taxpayers, by checking a box on their federal income tax forms, may elect to contribute $1 to this fund.
25. by raising $5,000 in each of at least 20 states in contributions of no more than $250
26. by having won at least 5 percent of the popular vote in the last presidential election or winning at least that much of the vote in the current presidential election
27. They can spend no more than the amount of the subsidy for the general election campaign, and they cannot accept campaign funds from any other source.
28. ____________________
29. ____________________
30. A. advances in telecommunications
31. The president and vice president could belong to different political parties, with different agendas for the nation. Also, a political party had no way of distinguishing its presidential candidate from its vice-presidential candidate.
32. ____________________
33. ____________________
34. ____________________
35. ____________________
36. ____________________
37. Tuesday after the first Monday in November every fourth year since 1788
38. ____________________
39. in their respective state capitals on the first Monday after the second Wednesday in December during an election year
40. ____________________
41. A. Presidential aspirants tend to focus their efforts on large states, because a candidate could be elected president by carrying only the most populous states.
    B. The smallest states tend to be overrepresented, because each state, no matter how small its population, is guaranteed three electoral votes.
42. The framers expected electors to exercise their best judgment and vote for the candidates they felt were most qualified.
43. A. proportional plan
    B. district plan
    C. direct popular vote plan
    D. national bonus plan
44. C. The presidential election system should not be reformed.
45. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
    D. ____________________
46. ____________________
47. ____________________
48. ____________________
49. Many laws that Congress passes are written in fairly broad terms. The specific details are left to the executive branch to work out.
50. Executive orders are rules issued by the president or executive branch to help enforce a treaty, a law, a court ruling, or the Constitution. They do not require congressional approval but have the force of law.
51. because a president needs loyal subordinates to carry out his or her administration's policies
52. ____________________
53. ____________________
54. (1) There are few positions available for presidential appointment because of the expansion of the civil service; (2) most appointments require Senate approval; (3) the practice of senatorial courtesy gives senators effective control over the selection of candidates for state-level positions.
55. ____________________
56. The Court ruled that members of independent regulatory commissions, because their duties are not purely executive, can be removed only for reasons specified by Congress.
57. ____________________
58. The Court ruled that executive privilege is not absolute. Presidents may not withhold evidence needed in criminal proceedings.
59. The president may suggest, approve, and veto legislation, may call special sessions of Congress, and may adjourn (prorogue) Congress if the two houses cannot agree on an adjournment date.
60. the power to adjourn (prorogue) Congress if the two houses cannot agree on an adjournment date
61. It can kill a bill or force Congress to alter a bill to make it acceptable to the president.
62. An item veto would allow the president to cancel parts of a bill while signing the rest into law.
63. ____________________
64. ____________________
65. An amnesty is a general or blanket pardon of a group of people.
66. Executive agreements, which are pacts between the president and the heads of foreign states or their subordinates, do not require Senate consent; treaties require the approval of two-thirds of senators present to become effective.
67. the power of diplomatic recognition, acknowledging the legal existence of a foreign government
68. C. order the National Guard (state militias) and U.S. military forces into combat against the attackers
69. ____________________
70. Congress created the Executive Office of the President in 1939 to help the president manage the expansion of government under the New Deal.

71. The chief of staff, who is one of the most influential presidential aides, supervises the presidential staff.

72. the president, who chairs the NSC, and the vice president, and the secretaries of state and defense

73. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______
    E. ______
    F. ______

74. ______

75. As advisers to the president they are supposed to implement his or her policies, but as administrators of executive departments they are advocates for their departments.

76. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______
    E. ______

77. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______

78. A. heads the Department of Justice
    B. represents the United States in the Supreme Court
    C. represent the United States in federal district courts

79. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______

80. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______
    D. ______

81. ______

82. Independent executive agencies do not have cabinet status.

83. (1) Commissions are bipartisan; (2) commissioners are named by the president with Senate consent; (3) commissioners' terms are staggered; (4) commissioners may be removed only for the reasons specified by Congress; (5) commissioners serve longer terms than the president.

84. They exercise legislative, executive, and judicial powers, because they make rules that have the force of law, enforce them, and settle disputes in their areas of authority.

85. ______

86. (1) Congress decides the purposes for which they exist and the function they may perform; (2) their officers are public officials chosen by the president with Senate consent; (3) they are financed by public monies appropriated by Congress, rather than capitalized by the sale of stock to shareholders.

87. Jefferson dismissed several hundred Federalists and replaced them with qualified Democratic-Republicans.

88. C. The spoils system produces a highly qualified federal workforce.

89. A. the assassination of President James Garfield by a disgruntled office-seeker
    B. to make merit, rather than political affiliation, the basis for hiring and promoting federal workers

90. ______

91. A. ______
    B. ______

92. The Hatch Act prohibits federal workers from taking an active role in partisan politics.

* * *

CHAPTER 9

GOVERNMENT: THE JUDICIAL BRANCH

1. (1) subject matter of the case or (2) parties involved in the case

2. A. U.S. Tax Court; U.S. Court of Appeals; U.S. Supreme Court
   B. U.S. Court of International Trade; U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit; U.S. Supreme Court
   C. territorial courts; U.S. Court of Appeals; U.S. Supreme Court
   D. U.S. Claims Court; U.S. Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit; U.S. Supreme Court
   E. U.S. District Courts; U.S. Court of Appeals; U.S. Supreme Court
   F. Military Courts; U.S. Court of Military Appeals; U.S. Supreme Court

3. A. ______
   B. ______
   C. ______
   D. ______
   E. ______

4. A. clerk of the court
   B. bankruptcy judge
   C. U.S. magistrate
   D. U.S. marshal

5. It is the final interpreter of the Constitution and highest appellate court.

6. ______

7. (1) Either party in a lower court case petitions the Supreme Court for *certiorari*; (2) the petitions are screened by law clerks; (3) a "discuss list" is compiled by the chief justice for the justices to study; (4) if four justices approve the petition (the "rule of four"), a writ asking for the record of the case is sent to the lower court.

8. F. Is the plaintiff an adult?

9. ______

10. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______

11. ______

12. It said that Congress had violated the Constitution in granting the Supreme Court the power to issue these writs as part of its original jurisdiction. Speaking for the unanimous Court, Chief Justice John Marshall declared, "It is emphatically the province and duty of the judicial department to say what the law is."

13. ______

14. ______

15. ______

16. ______

17. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______

18. Decisions tend to be fairer and more uniform and the law becomes more predictable.

19. A. ______
    B. ______
    C. ______

20. ______

21. A. prepares a list of top candidates
    B. nominates federal judges
    C. rates nominees on a scale ranging from "exceptionally well qualified" to "not qualified"
    D. recommends confirmation or rejection of nominees
    E. votes to confirm or reject nominations

22. It allows a senator of the president's party to veto the appointment of a federal district judge who is to sit in his or her state.

23. Constitutional court judges serve "during good behavior," that is they serve for life unless they die, resign, or are removed from office. Legislative court judges serve fixed terms that vary according to the court.

24.
25. to make the federal judiciary independent from the legislative branch
26. All of these statements about federal judges are true.
27.
28. Equity can prevent wrongs from being committed.
29.
30. the U.S. Constitution and subsequent U.S. Supreme Court decisions
31.
32.
33. A. formal legal agreements between two or more parties
    B. relationships among family members
    C. ownership and use of property
    D. wrongful acts that injure people or damage their property
34. A. felony
    B. misdemeanor
    C. felony
    D. misdemeanor
    E. felony
    F. misdemeanor
    G. misdemeanor
35.
36.
37.
38. preliminary hearing
39.
40. arraignment
41. bench trial
42. subpoenas
43. discovery
44.
45. venue
46. *voir dire*
47. peremptory challenge
48.
49.
50.
51. The prosecutor, overburdened with cases, disposes of a case without a costly trial. The defendant receives a lighter sentence.

CHAPTER 10

GOVERNMENT: STATE AND LOCAL GOVERNMENTS

1. The supremacy clause in Article VI of the U.S. Constitution states that the U.S. Constitution, federal laws, and national treaties are "the supreme law of the land." No provision in a state constitution may conflict with them.
2.
3. C. The state bill of rights protects individuals against the national government, its officers, and agencies.
4. Because a constitution is an expression of the time in which it was made, a constitution—or parts of it—inevitably becomes outdated as times, circumstances, and attitudes change.
5. A.
   B.
   C.
6.
7. Unlike the U.S. Constitution, state constitutions have many detailed provisions and provide more than just the fundamental framework of government.
8. Detailed state constitutions limit the discretion of public officials and are less adaptable, requiring frequent formal amendment and remaining current for shorter periods of time.
9. A.
   B.
10. (1) Many legislatures failed to reapportion themselves; (2) the frequent use of geographic area as well as (or instead of) population as a basis for reapportionment.
11. The Court held for the first time that federal courts have jurisdiction over cases in which voters claim that the apportionment of a state legislature violates the equal protection clause of the Fourteenth Amendment.
12.
13.
14. minimum age, U.S. citizenship, and residence in the state and district the legislator represents
15.
16.
17.
18.
19.
20. They may assign members to committees and appoint committee chairpersons.
21.
22. They study particular problems and then report their findings and offer their recommendations at the next session.
23. a process that allows qualified voters to propose by petition laws and/or constitutional amendments, which are then placed on the ballot for voter approval
24. If the direct initiative is used, the measure goes directly on the ballot and, if approved by the voters, becomes law. When the indirect initiative is used, the proposal goes to the legislature first; if that body does not pass it, the measure then goes to the voters.
25. A.
    B.
    C.
26. U.S. citizenship, minimum age, and residency in the state (usually for at least five years)
27.
28.
29.
30.
31. It gives the governor extensive control over state administration and plays an important role in policy making because the budget sets the priorities for the state.
32.
33.
34. the power to show mercy toward those convicted of crimes—for example, by granting reprieves and pardons to state offenders
35. A. He or she is elected by the voters.
    B. He or she presides over the state senate and succeeds to the governorship if the office becomes vacant.
36. to prevent the election of officials from two different parties
37. A. attorney general
    B. secretary of state
    C. treasurer
38.
39. Minor courts hear misdemeanor cases (such as traffic cases) and civil suits involving relatively small amounts of money.
40. minor civil and criminal cases (misdemeanors)
41. They are popularly elected for short terms by the voters of the area in which they serve.

42. Many justices of the peace lack formal legal training and are paid out of the fines they collect, which can lead to abuses.
43. ________
44. A. to settle family disputes, such as divorce
    B. to try cases involving minors as offenders
    C. to verify the validity of wills
    D. to hear civil cases involving small amounts of money
45. yes; usually a trial *de novo* (a new trial, as though the case had not been heard before) is held
46. felonies and civil cases involving larger amounts of money
47. ________
48. whether the lower court applied the law correctly, rather than the specific facts of the case
49. ________
50. if it involves a substantial federal question, such as a federal law or the U.S. Constitution
51. ________
52. ________
53. Judges should be directly accountable to the people.
54. unitary—the local governments are created and abolished by the state and exercise only those powers delegated to them by the state
55. Connecticut; Rhode Island
56. Alaska: boroughs; Louisiana: parishes
57. ________
58. A. ________
    B. ________
59. ________
60. They have both legislative and executive powers.
61. A. sets the value of taxable property in the county
    B. records proceedings of the county board, supervises county elections
    C. investigates suspicious deaths
    D. operates the county jail, maintains law and order
62. C. Increase the number of elected county officials.
63. consolidation of counties with other counties or cities
64. ________
65. because qualified town voters meet to debate and decide the town's policies themselves
66. board of selectmen
67. ________
68. D. to provide services that other local governments handle
69. Municipal governments are created at the request of the community to provide services; county governments are created without resident approval largely to serve the administrative needs of the states.
70. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
71. ________
72. They are usually elected from the city at large on a nonpartisan basis.
73. In a strong-mayor form, the mayor proposes the budget, vetoes council ordinances, and appoints and removes department heads. In a weak-mayor form, the mayor lacks these powers.
74. ________
75. Collectively, they constitute the city council; individually, they head the departments of the city government.
76. legislative and executive powers are centered in one body
77. The council determines city policies (legislative function); the mayor's duties are ceremonial; and the city manager oversees city operations (executive function).

* * *

CHAPTER 11

ECONOMICS: DOLLARS AND SENSE

1. A. ________
   B. ________
   C. ________
2. These are all functions of the entrepreneur.
3. ________
4. A. consumer goods
   B. capital goods, because they increase society's capital resources, which can then be used to create more consumer goods and services
5. ________
6. Producers seek to produce those goods that will give them the greatest profit.
7. As the price of a product increases, quantity demanded decreases; as the price of a product decreases, quantity demanded increases.
8. A. ________
   B. ________
   C. ________
   D. ________
   E. ________
9. An individual demand curve shows the relationship between price and quantity demanded for a particular individual.
10. A. ________
    B. ________
11. A. False; demand often is more elastic in the long run than in the short run because overtime consumers are more able to change their buying habits.
    B. true
    C. true
    D. true
12. (1) consumer tastes and preferences; (2) number of consumers in the market; (3) money income of consumers; (4) prices of related goods (substitute and complementary goods); (5) consumers' expectations
13. A. ________
    B. ________
    C. ________
    D. ________
14. ________
15. If the supply is inelastic, quantity supplied is relatively unresponsive to changes in prices. If supply is elastic, small changes in prices produce large changes in quantity supplied.
16. The longer the time period under consideration, the more elastic is supply because over time producers can shift resources from or to other uses.
17. These are all determinants of supply.
18. $2.00; 3,000,000
19. 2,000,000
20. 4,000,000
21. A. The equilibrium price would decrease and equilibrium quantity would increase because a decrease in the costs of production increased supply.
    B. The equilibrium price and quantity would increase because a change in consumer tastes and preferences increased demand.
    C. The equilibrium price would increase and equilibrium quantity would decrease because a decrease in the number of sellers in the market decreased supply.

D. The equilibrium price would increase and equilibrium quantity would decrease because an increase in the costs of production decreased supply.

22. Prices ration goods and services because as the price of a product increases, fewer buyers are willing and able to purchase the product.
23. ______________________
24. ______________________
25. D. Working full time at the national minimum wage would yield an annual income in excess of the poverty level for a family of four.
26. A. In a closed shop only union members may be employed. In union shops, employers may hire nonunion workers, who must join the union within a specified period of time to keep their jobs. In an open shop both union and nonunion members may be employed.
    B. right-to-work laws
27. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
    E. ______________________
28. ______________________
29. A. The mediator listens to the arguments of both sides and suggests ways in which agreement may be reached. The arbitrator offers specific terms in the settlement of the contract.
    B. In advisory arbitration, one or both sides may reject the arbitrator's settlement. In binding arbitration, both sides are required to accept the arbitrator's decisions.
30. A primary boycott directly pressures a firm engaged in a labor dispute. A secondary boycott puts pressure on a third party not immediately involved in the dispute—for example, by refusing to buy products or services of any firm that does business with a company whose employees are on strike.
31. ______________________
32. ______________________
33. A. A sole proprietorship is a business that is owned and controlled by one person. A partnership is a business that is owned and controlled by two or more people. A corporation is a business that, although owned by one or more individuals (the stockholders), legally has the rights and responsibilities of a person.
    B. partnership
    C. sole proprietorship
34. A. *Possible answers:* (1) These types of businesses are easy to establish; (2) decisions can be made quickly; (3) profits are not shared with a large group; (4) the owners experience personal satisfaction.
    B. *Possible answers:* (1) The owners (stockholders) have limited liability—their liability is limited to the amount of money they invested in the business; (2) capital is easier to raise; (3) corporations have unlimited life—they continue to exist and function despite the death or departure of individual owners.
35. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
36. (1) Public goods can be used by everyone—an individual's use of a public good does not reduce another person's enjoyment of it; (2) those who do not pay for public goods cannot be kept from using them.
37. A. Those individuals with the greatest income or wealth would pay the most taxes.
    B. Those who benefit from a government expenditure would help finance it.
38. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
39. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
40. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
41. A. would not be included because the electronic parts are not final goods and only final goods and services are included in GNP
    B. would not be included because GNP includes goods and services only when they are sold for the first time
    C. would not be included because the television was not produced for sale during this year
    D. would be included because the television is a final good produced for sale this year
42. (1) personal consumption expenditures—consumer spending; (2) gross private domestic investment—investment spending by U.S. firms; (3) government purchases of goods and services—government spending; (4) net exports—the difference between spending on products exported from the United States and spending on products imported into the United States
43. A. Money GNP measures each year's output valued in terms of the prices prevailing in that year.
    B. Real GNP measures each year's output valued in terms of the prices that prevailed in a selected base year. Because it is adjusted for price level changes, real GNP measures the level of productive activity.
    C. GNP deflator
44. All of these factors would contribute to an increase in the rate of economic growth.
45. ______________________
46. A. Lagging indicators
    B. Leading indicators
    C. Coincident indicators
47. ______________________
48. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
49. ______________________
50. A. demand-pull inflation
    B. cost-push inflation
51. Real income measures the amount of goods and services that one's money income will purchase.
52. Her money income has increased; her real income has decreased.
53. A. ______________________
    B. ______________________
    C. ______________________
    D. ______________________
54. Anticipating inflation, creditors increase interest rates to guarantee their money will not lose purchasing power.
55. Discretionary fiscal policy is the deliberate manipulation of taxing and spending by Congress to achieve economic objectives. Nondiscretionary fiscal policy

does not require explicit action by policymakers. Instead, the appropriate changes in government expenditures and taxes occur automatically during the various phases of the business cycle.

56. Transfer payments and tax revenues increase during economic expansions and decrease during economic contractions.

57. An expansionary fiscal policy is the increase in government spending and/or decrease in taxes in order to stimulate aggregate demand. A contractionary fiscal policy is the decrease in government spending and/or increase in taxes in order to diminish aggregate demand.

58. A. expansionary fiscal policy, to increase aggregate demand
    B. contractionary fiscal policy, to decrease aggregate demand

59. These are all limitations on the use of fiscal policy.

60. Because the federal government is competing with private borrowers for a limited amount of money, interest rates increase, pricing many private borrowers out of the market for funds.

61. ____________________

62. (1) a medium of exchange (an item that sellers will accept as payment for products); (2) a unit of account (a way to measure and compare the worth of products); and (3) a store of value (it can be saved for later use)

63. (1) durability—it can be used over and over; (2) portability—it can be carried; (3) stability in value—it retains its purchasing power over time; (4) acceptability—it is accepted as payment for goods and services; and (5) divisibility—it can be divided into smaller units

64. A. b. demand deposits
    B. a. currency
    C. c. near money

65. Bank A—$100,000; $10,000; $90,000
    Bank B—$90,000; $9,000; $81,000
    Bank C—$81,000; $8,100; $72,900
    Bank D—$72,900; $7,290; $65,610
    Total money created by initial deposit—$309,510 ($90,000 + $81,000 + $72,900 + $65,610)

66. ____________________

67. currency and checkable deposits (deposits upon which checks can be drawn)

68. A. easy-money policy, to increase aggregate demand
    B. tight-money policy, to reduce aggregate demand

69. A. To contract the money supply, the Fed raises the discount rate, which discourages banks from borrowing money and gives them less money to lend to customers. Conversely, to expand the money supply, the Fed lowers the discount rate, making it easier for banks to borrow and giving them more funds to lend to customers.
    B. To contract the money supply, the Fed sells bonds. It receives checks in exchange for these bonds, and money is then transferred to the Fed from the banks that issue the checks. Conversely, to expand the money supply, the Fed buys bonds, sending money back into the banks.
    C. To contract the money supply, the Fed raises the reserve requirement, leaving banks with less money to lend. Conversely, to expand the money supply, the Fed lowers the reserve requirement, giving banks more money to lend.

70. ____________________

71. ____________________

72. ____________________

73. A. four shirts
    B. two shirts
    C. Even though Portugal has an absolute advantage in producing both wine and shirts, it should specialize in wine production because it has a lower opportunity cost for wine.
    D. England should specialize in shirt production because it has a lower opportunity cost for shirts.

74. Specialization and international trade increase total world output because world resources are allocated most efficiently when each good is produced by the country which has the lowest opportunity cost. Specializing in this way results in greater outputs of goods available to nations than if they were self-sufficient.

75. A revenue tariff is used to raise money for a government. A protective tariff is designed to protect a domestic industry from foreign competition.

76. ____________________

77. ____________________

78. When the United States lowers tariffs with one partner granted "most favored nation" status, the tariff reduction applies to all nations with "most favored nation" status.

79. These are all proposals supported by the United States at the Uruguay Round.

80. ____________________

81. fixed

82. by the demand for and supply of foreign currencies

83. because rates are generally set by market forces, although the central banks of many nations periodically intervene (buy and sell currencies) in foreign exchange markets to alter exchange rates

84. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________
    D. ____________________
    E. ____________________

85. democratic socialism

86. A. ____________________
    B. ____________________
    C. ____________________

87. ____________________

88. A. United Nations (UN)
    B. World Bank

* * *

CHAPTER 12

GEOGRAPHY: AMERICA'S LAND AND PEOPLE

1. A. ____________________
   B. 160° east longitude and 20° west longitude
   C. ____________________
   D. The Prime Meridian runs through Greenwich, England. It is 0° longitude, so places west of it are in west longitude and places east of it are in east longitude until reaching 180°, which is measured as either east or west. The Prime Meridian is the point from which all the time zones of the world are measured.

2. A. ________
B. ________
3. A. the area within the Antarctic Circle, or 66° 30' south latitude, is in sunlight; the area within the Arctic Circle, or 66° 30' north latitude, is in darkness
B. the area within the Arctic Circle is in sunlight; the area within the Antarctic Circle is in darkness
4. ________
5. A. equal-area projection
B. Mercator projection
C. conic projection
D. polar gnomonic projection
6. Absolute location pinpoints the exact position of a place using the intersection of lines of latitude and longitude or some other grid pattern on a globe or map. For example, Urbana, Illinois, lies at 40° north latitude, 88° west longitude. Relative location refers to the relationship of one place to another using a variety of characteristics. For example, politically, Alaska is part of the United States, but climatically, it is much closer to Siberia.
7. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
8. ________
9. A. the intersection of lines B and 3
B. the intersection of lines C and 1
C. 40° north latitude; 104° west longitude
D. 37°-38° north latitude; 95°-99° west longitude
10. ________
11. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
12. ________
13. ________
14. ________
15. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
16. A. Rock crumbles due to the forces of ice, plant roots, or chemicals in water.
B. Weathered material is moved from one place to another by wind, water, ice, or gravity.
C. Huge sheets of ice crush the land beneath them and carry away soil and rock, which are eventually deposited somewhere else.
17. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
D. ________
E. ________
F. ________
G. ________
H. ________
I. ________
J. ________
18. Alaska would be more than twice as large as it is shown. Hawaii would be only about half as large.
19. The Red Rivers; one forms the boundary between North Dakota and Minnesota and is also called the Red River of the North; the other forms part of the boundary between Texas and Oklahoma, and between Texas and Arkansas.
20. ________
21. A. ________
B. ________
22. A. ________
B. ________
23. ________
24. A. The Continental Divide is the line separating rivers that flow west from those that flow east. It generally follows the crest of the Rockies.
B. Wasatch Mountains
C. Bitterroot Mountains
25. ________
26. ________
27. Weather is the condition of the atmosphere at a certain time and place. Climate is the average weather over a long period of time.
28. A. ________
B. Subarctic, or Taiga
C. ________
D. ________
E. ________
F. ________
G. ________
H. ________
I. ________
J. ________
K. Highland, or Vertical
29. Graph A: b. western Washington (Marine); Graph B: c. southern Arizona (Desert)
30. ________
31. A. Orographic precipitation occurs when warm, moist ocean air moves inland and rises up the windward side of a mountain, then condenses, causing precipitation.
B. Rain shadows occur on the leeward sides of mountains. Air loses most of its moisture as it rises up the windward side of the mountain, so the leeward side rarely receives precipitation.
32. Texas
33. ________
34. ________
35. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
D. ________
36. potatoes
37. A. cotton and woolen textiles
B. iron industry
38. C. influx of cheap labor from the western United States
39. A. Sea Islands, off the coast of South Carolina and Georgia
B. ________
40. Arkansas, Georgia, Alabama
41. A. ________
B. ________
C. ________
D. ________
E. ________
42. A. ________
B. ________
43. Texas, Louisiana, Oklahoma
44. ________
45. A. bauxite
B. Arkansas
C. Extracting aluminum from bauxite requires a large amount of electricity, and this site has large hydroelectric power plants.
46. ________
47. U.S. Government Printing Office, in Washington, D.C.
48. ________
49. ________
50. ________
51. ________
52. iron ore
53. B. warmer climate to attract a more skilled labor force
54. gold: Nevada and South Dakota; silver: Idaho and Nevada
55. ________
56. It is used in hardening steel.
57. ________
58. ________
59. Grand Coulee Dam
60. aircraft manufacturing
61. ________
62. ________
63. apples and sweet cherries
64. ________
65. A. Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania
B. Jamestown, Virginia
C. Hartford, Connecticut
D. Indianapolis, Indiana
E. Orlando, Florida

66. It was useful to locate cities along the Fall Line because the falls often marked the point where navigation of the river to the ocean could begin, and the falls could also supply waterpower.

67. ______

68. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

D. ______

69. ______

70. ______

71. The temperature inversion traps pollutants created by automobile emissions and industry in the atmosphere over the city. Because the city is surrounded on three sides by mountain ranges, the air cannot move out of the area easily.

72. A. Boston, Massachusetts and Washington, D.C.

B. southern California, including the metropolitan areas of Los Angeles and San Diego

73. A. Erie Canal, now called the New York State Barge Canal

B. clothing industry

74. ______

75. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

D. ______

76. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

77. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

78. Los Angeles and San Diego, California

79. D. Manufacturing of computer chips is concentrated in its "Silicon Valley" suburb. (Silicon Valley is near San Francisco.)

80. ______

81. Article I, section 2 provides that an "enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of 10 years." The first census was taken in 1790.

82. A. ______

B. ______

83. To find natural increase, subtract the number of deaths from the number of births. To find net increase, add net immigration to natural increase.

84. ______

85. ______

86. ______

87. A. gained

B. gained

C. lost

D. gained

E. lost

88. The Northeast and Midwest are likely to lose representatives, and the South and West are likely to gain representatives.

89. ______

90. A. a quota system in which the number of immigrants accepted into the United States from each foreign nation was based on the percentage of that nationality already living in the United States

B. It (1) limited immigration from the Eastern Hemisphere to 170,000 per year, with a maximum of 20,000 from a single country; (2) limited immigration from the Western Hemisphere to 120,000 per year, with no maximum for a single country; (3) gave preference to immigrants with refugee status, relatives in the United States, or special skills.

C. It (1) gave illegal aliens who had entered the United States before January 1, 1982, amnesty and the right to apply for legal citizenship; (2) imposed heavy penalties on employers who hired illegal aliens.

91. highest: B. 1901-1910 (10.4 immigrants per 1,000 U.S. population); lowest: C. 1931-1940 (.4 immigrants per 1,000 U.S. population)

92. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

D. ______

93. ______

94. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

D. ______

95. ______

96. ______

97. A. Air Quality Act of 1967

B. Clean Air Act of 1970

C. Water Quality Improvement Act of 1970

D. Federal Water Pollution Control Act Amendments of 1972

98. ______

99. A. ______

B. ______

C. ______

D. ______

100. ______

101. In March 1989, the tanker *Exxon Valdez* spilled its cargo in Prince William Sound near the port of Valdez, in southern Alaska.

102. ______

103. Sulfur dioxide and nitrogen oxides emitted by industries and automobiles form toxic acids in the atmosphere, which are washed onto the earth by precipitation.

104. (1) With less vegetation to take in carbon dioxide, more of that gas remains in the air, increasing global warming. (2) Without forest cover, land erodes quickly in rainy areas. (3) Rainforests house 50-80 percent of the world's plant and animal species. Without this habitat, many species may become extinct.

105. ______

251

CLOSE UP
FOUNDATION

Close Up Foundation
1235 Jefferson Davis Highway
Arlington, Virginia 22202

798-010

BEST COPY AVAILABLE